

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01306797 0

ABBOTT'S

LATIN BOOK

3/8

E. Cochrane.

Mar. 1888.



VIA LATINA:


A First Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES,
VOCABULARIES,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

A LATINA:

A First Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES,
VOCABULARIES,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

BY

EDWIN A. ABBOTT, D.D.,

Head Master of the City of London School.

SEVENTH THOUSAND.

LONDON:

SEELEY, JACKSON, AND HALLIDAY, FLEET STREET.

1882.

LONDON :
E. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.

2801
—
3/5/1890

6

PREFACE.

ALTHOUGH two or three very fair Latin "First Books" are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the sentence "*Oppida magna boni agricolae habent*": and not one in five has been able to construe these few simple words correctly. The Examiner would have been well content with the translation "They have the great towns of the good husbandman": but almost all have succumbed to the temptation of treating "*oppida*" as Nominative, and have then "plunged" to the rendering "Great towns have good husbandmen"—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that, at present (1880), a private school may be "kept" by any

one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on *parsing before construing*. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can *construe* without the trouble of *parsing*; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of “plunging” at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the *Via Latina*. From the very first page the pupil is taught to parse as well as to construe, and not to construe till he has parsed; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the *dictum* of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered *vivâ voce*. This want he has

attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that "*amemus*" means *we may love*, and "*amaremus*" *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of *idiom* than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally

modified: and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the *Public School Grammar*. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly *parse before construing*. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater

evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THIS Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillpotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Pronunciation	xvi
The Cases of Nouns	1—4
The First Declension	6
The Second Declension	8
Ablative of Instrument and Agent	11
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	13—16
The Third Declension (Consonant Branch)	18
Adj. governing Dative ; dignus , g. Ablative	19
The Abl. answering to <i>When?</i> and <i>Within what time?</i>	21
The Acc. answering to <i>How long?</i> or <i>During what time?</i>	21
Multi , <i>many (men)</i> ; multa , <i>many (things)</i>	23
Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension (Consonant Branch)	24
Third Declension, continued (the -i Nouns)	25
Adjectives of the Third Declension	27
The Fourth Declension	31
The Fifth Declension	33
The Comparison of Adjectives ; quam , or Ablative	34—5

	PAGE
Irregular Comparison	37—8
Numeral Adjectives	39—42
The Dative of Possession with est	42
Ūnus, ullus, sōlus, ālius, &c.	43—4
Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives	45
A Verb agrees with its Nom. Case in Number and Person .	46
Direct Questions	48
Demonstrative and Emphatic Pronouns	49—50
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	51—2
The First Conjugation (Active)	53—5
The Second „ „	56—8
The Third „ „	58—60
The Fourth „ „	60—2
The Latin and English Tenses ; Apposition	63—4
A Verb agrees with the First Person , rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third . . .	65
The Infinitive as a Subject or Object	66
The Imperative ; the use of nē in Prohibition	67
The Subjunctive expressing Purpose	67
The Subjunctive expressing a Dependent Question . . .	69
The Sequence of Tenses	70
Quīdem, vēro, ētiam, vēl	70—2
Verbs signifying <i>pleasing, obeying, &c.</i> , take the Dative .	72
Verbs of <i>asking, commanding, advising, and striving</i> are followed by ut , or nē , with the Subjunctive	74
Verbs of <i>preventing</i> are followed by quōmīnus and the Subjunctive ; nōn est dūbīum quīn	75
Cum , with the Subjunctive Mood	77

Vēnio, vinco, vincio, rēpērio	78
The Verb sum	79—81
The Active Participles	81
The Dependent Future Interrogative; quando	82
The First Conjugation (Passive)	83—6
The Second „ „	86—8
The Third „ „	88—91
The Fourth „ „	91—3
The Passive Participle	94
An Adjective agreeing with Nouns of different Genders	95
Impersonal Use of the Passive	96
An Active Verb that governs the Dative retains the Dative in the Passive	97
The Gerundive Construction with the Dative of the Agent	99
Capio , Conjugation of	100—1
Ūtrum—ān; -nē—ān	102
The Prepositions	104—9
The Ablative of Manner	106
Ād with the Gerund and the Gerundive	108
Verbs compounded with Prepositions	110—1
Mīnimum ābest quīn , &c.	111
The Ablative Absolute	112—4
Deponent Verbs	115—7
Obliviscor, mīserēor , &c.; fungor, fruor, ūtor , &c.	119
The Accusative and Infinitive; its Tenses	120—2
Fōre ūt; sē, suus	122—3
Impersonal Verbs	124—5
Possum, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fēro	126—22

Indirect Questions after Verbs of <i>knowing, discovering, &c.</i>	133
The Verb eo	135
Supines; captum īri	137—8
The Gerund and Gerundive	139
The Verb fiō ; The Complementary Subject	141
Cases; The Accusative of Extension	142
The Locative Case	143
The Dative of Equivalence or Purpose	144
The Ablative; of <i>Definite Price</i> ; of <i>Quality</i> ; <i>Plenty</i> or <i>Want</i>	145—6
The Genitive of <i>Quality</i> ; <i>Value</i> ; <i>Indefinite Price</i> ; <i>Plenty</i> or <i>Want</i> ; to express “it is the <i>mark</i> of”; after Adjectives used as Nouns; after Adjectives of <i>knowledge, desire, &c.</i>	147—8
The Subjunctive used to express <i>result</i> or <i>consequence</i> ; <i>optatively</i> ; <i>hortatively</i> ; <i>concessively</i> ; in Conditional Sentences; after qui	149—52
Sī quīs ; nē quīs	151
Ūt nōn , when used for nē	152
Vēreor ūt ; nescio ān	153
Quo with Comparative; suis, sē, ipsē	154—5
Quisquam, ālīquīs, quīlibet, quīdam	156
Irregular Verbs and Genders of Nouns	{ Irregular Nouns 157 { Cēlo, dōceo ; Adverbial antē and post 158 { Distrib. Numerals; cum...tum . . 159—60 { Quam quī ; Historical Infinitive . 161—2 { Quamquam and quamvīs ; jamprīdem 163—4 { Quam with Superl.; intērest, rēfert 166—7

CONTENTS.

XV

PAGE

Elementary Rules on Oratio Obliqua	168—71
Easy and Recapitulatory Exercises	172—183

APPENDICES.

I.—Irregular Verbs in Order of Formation	189
II.— „ „ „ Alphabetical Order	200
III.—Hints on Construing	216
IV.—A Parsing Table	224
V.—A Table of Genders	226
VI.—On the Latin Days of the Month	229
VII.—Elementary Rules on Quantity	230
VIII.—Glossary of Grammatical Terms	232
IX.—Vocabularies for the Earlier Exercises	240
X.—Latin-English Vocabulary	248
XI.—English-Latin Vocabulary	284

SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.¹

Based on the nearest English Approximations.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	\bar{a} ²	=	English	<i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .
"	\tilde{a}	=	"	<i>first a</i> in <i>away</i> , or <i>a</i> in <i>villa</i>
"	\bar{e}	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	<i>ae</i>	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	<i>oe</i>	=	"	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
"	\bar{e}	=	"	<i>e</i> in <i>men</i> .
"	\bar{i}	=	"	<i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
"	\bar{i}	=	"	<i>i</i> in <i>pity</i> .
"	\bar{o}	=	"	<i>o</i> in <i>home</i> .
"	\bar{o}	=	"	<i>o</i> in <i>top</i> .
"	\bar{u}	=	"	<i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .
"	\bar{u}	=	"	<i>u</i> in <i>full</i> .
"	<i>au</i>	=	"	<i>ow</i> in <i>power</i> .
"	<i>ui</i>	=	"	<i>we</i> , e.g. in Lat. qui, cui .
"	<i>cu</i>	=	"	{ Latin \bar{e} followed quickly by Latin \bar{u} (differs little from present pronunciation).
"	<i>ci</i>	=	"	{ Latin \bar{e} followed quickly by Latin \bar{i} (differs little from <i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i>).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	<i>c, ch</i>	=	English	<i>k</i> .
"	<i>g</i>	=	"	<i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
"	<i>s</i>	=	"	<i>s</i> in <i>s.n.</i>
"	<i>t</i> (<i>răţio</i>)	=	"	<i>t</i> in <i>cat</i> , not <i>sh</i> , as in <i>nation</i> .
"	<i>j</i>	=	"	<i>y</i> in <i>yard</i> .
"	<i>v</i>	=	"	<i>v</i> .
"	<i>z, ph, th</i>	=	"	<i>z, ph, th</i> .

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in *rose*, e.g. "*roza*."

¹ Taken from the *Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation*, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by *r*. Consequently the Latin *o* is represented by the English *o*. The Professors give the option of pronouncing *v* as *v* or as *w*.

² Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (˘), a long one by this (—). A few elementary rules about the *quantity*, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.

VIA LATINA.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.¹

THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Ăquīl-ă, (*an*) eagle. **Fēmīn-ă**, (*a*) woman. **Filī-ă**, (*a*) daughter.

Ăqu-ă, water. **Dextr-ă**, (*a*) right hand. **Pēcūnī-ă**, money.

Ămă-t, (*he*) loves. **Dă-t**, (*he*) gives. **Lăvă-t**, (*he*) washes.

Līberă-t, (*he*) frees. **Monstră-t**, (*he*) points out.

Sūpěră-t, (*he*) overcomes. **Vōră-t**, (*he*) devours.²

- 1 English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the Possessive is indicated by the affix 's: "*John's* book;" "*the sun's* light;" "*men's* clothes."

Latin Nouns have six Cases.

- 2 1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Who?* or *What?* before a Verb (i.e. when it is the Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case, which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -a short, -ă:

The woman loves.

Fēmīn-ă *ămăt.*

The eagle devours.

Ăquīl-ă *vōrăt.*

¹ For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.

² A vowel before t final is always short: the quantity of a-t (") will therefore not be marked for the future.

Who loves?—Ans., the *woman*, **fēmin-ă**. *What devours?*
—Ans., the *eagle*, **ăquīl-ă**.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as follows: Why is **fēmină** Nominative?—Ans., *because it is the Subject of* (or *Nominative to*) **ămăt**.

- 3 2. THE VOCATIVE CASE.—When a person or thing is addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is the same as the Nominative :

O woman, **Fēmīn-ă**.

O eagle, **Ăquīl-ă**.

Why is **fēmīnă** (or **ăquīla**) Vocative?—Ans., *because it is a person* (or *thing*) *addressed*.

- 4 3. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* after a Verb (i.e. when it is the Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case, which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termination **-am** :

The daughter loves the woman.

Fili-ă fēmīn-am ămăt.

The woman points out the eagle.

Fēmīn-ă ăquīl-am monstră-t.

Loves whom?—Ans., the *woman*. *Points out what?*—Ans., the *eagle*.

Why is **fēmīnam** the Accusative?—Ans., *because it is the Direct Object of* (or *Accusative governed by*) **ămăt**.

- 5 N.B. Note here that the order of the words is not the same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

- 5a But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be discovered, not by the order, *but by examining the Case*.

Thus, in the last example, **-am** is the Accusative termination, and **-ă** is the Nominative termination. Therefore

fēmin-ă is the Nominative, and the Subject of **monstrăt**; and **ăquīl-am** is the Accusative, and the Object of **monstrăt**.

- 6** 4. THE GENITIVE CASE.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in **-ae**:

The woman's daughter.

Fēmīn-ae *filiă*, or (*less commonly*) *filiă* **fēmīn-ae**.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations besides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is *governed* by the latter.

Why is **fēmīnae** Genitive?—Ans., *Because it is governed by the Noun filiă*.

In English the Possessive Case *always* precedes the Noun which it qualifies.¹ In Latin the Genitive generally precedes, but *not always*.

- 7** 5. THE DATIVE CASE.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) *to whom* a thing is *given*, or (2) *for whom* a thing is done, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. *Giving*) Case, which, in the First Declension, is expressed by the termination **-ae**:

(1) *The daughter gives an eagle to the woman.* **Filī-a** **ăquīl-am** **fēmīn-ae** **dă-t**.

(2) *The woman points out the eagle to, or for, (her) daughter.* **Fēmīn-ă** **ăquīl-am** **filiă-ae** **monstra-t**.

(1) Why is **fēmīnae** Dative?—Ans., *After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of dat*.

In answer to the question (2) Why is **filiăe** Dative? it is usual to say *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

¹ Distinguish the English Possessive Case "sun's" from "of the sun," which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.

8 6. THE ABLATIVE CASE, besides (1) *sometimes* expressing separation, or motion from, i.e. *ablation*, also (2) *always* expresses the *instrument with* or *by* which an action is performed. In the First Declension, the Ablative is denoted by *-a* long, *-ā*:

(1) *The woman frees the daughter from blame.* Fēmīn-a fili-am culpā libēra-t.

He hastens from Capua. Prōpērā-t Cāpū-ā.

(2) *The woman washes the daughter with water.* Fēmīn-ā fili-am āqu-ā lāva-t.

The daughter gives money with (her) right hand. Filī-ā pēcūnī-am dextr-ā da-t.

(1) Why is *culp-ā* the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of Separation*.¹

(2) Why is *āquā* the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of the Means or Instrument*.

FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom. *Insŭl-ā*, (*an* or *the*) *island* (Subject).

Voc. *Insŭl-ā*, *O island*.

Acc. *Insŭl-am*, (*an* or *the*) *island* (Object).

Gen. *Insŭl-ae*, (*an* or *the*) *island's*, or *of* (*an* or *the*) *island*.

Dat. *Insŭl-ae*, *to* or *for* (*an* or *the*) *island*.

Abl. *Insŭl-ā*, *from*, *with*, or *by* (*an* or *the*) *island*.¹

9 THE ARTICLE.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called “the Article” in English (i.e. *a* or *the*) does not exist in Latin. *Insŭl-ā* must be rendered “*an* island” or “*the* island,” according to the sense.

EXERCISE I.

(*Learn Vocabulary I.*)

1. ² Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. ² Femin-ā. 5. Reginam. 6. Aqu-ā. 7. ² Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ā.²

¹ The Ablative is only *sometimes* used to express separation. Most frequently it cannot be so used *without a Preposition*. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a Preposition, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that *insŭlā*, *without an accompanying Preposition*, very seldom means *from an island*.

9a ² These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.

1. *Of a sailor.* 2. *To a sailor.* 3. *Money (object).* 4. *Water (subject).* 5. *For a girl.* 6. *By water.* 7. *With money.* 8. *O sailor.*

EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.

1. *Femină naut-am aqu-ă lava-t.* 2. *Naut-ae sapienti-ă procell-am supra-t.* 3. *Naut-ae sapienti-ă procell-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 4. *Regină insul-am fili-ae da-t.* 5. *Fili-ă pecuni-am dextr-ă dat.* 6. *Femin-ă pecuni-am naut-ae dextr-ă da-t.* 7. *Femin-ae patienti-ă naut-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 8. *Femin-ă patienti-ă naut-am supra-t.* 9. *Patienti-ă, O femin-ă, violenti-am supra-t.* 10. *Experienti-ă sapienti-am regin-ae dat.* 11. *Naut-ae dextr-ă fēmin-am violenti-ă (9a) liber-a-t.*¹

[Words in brackets, thus (*her*), are not to be translated.]

1. *The queen gives an island to (her) daughter.*² 2. *The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.* 3. *The sailor washes (his) daughter with (his) right hand (5a).* 4. *The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.* 5. *The woman by (her) patience overcomes the sailor's violence.* 6. *The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.* 7. *(Thy) daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.* 8. *Experience gives (to) the sailor wisdom.* 9. *The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.*

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of *insul-ă* are thus declined :

¹ The Pupil should parse this Exercise *before construing it*. He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.

10 ² The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) *at the end*.

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. *her* in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Insŭl-ă , <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ae , <i>islands.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Insŭl-ă , <i>O island.</i>	Insŭl-ae , <i>O islands.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Insŭl-am , <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ăs , <i>islands.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Insŭl-ae , <i>of an island.</i>	Insŭl-ărŭm , <i>of islands.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Insŭl-ae , <i>to or for an island.</i>	Insŭl-is , <i>to or for islands.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Insŭl-ă , <i>from, with, or by an island.</i>	Insŭl-is , <i>from, with, or by islands.</i>

EXERCISE III.

1. Puell-īs.¹ 2. Femin-ărŭm. 3. Femin-ă.¹ 4. Naut-ae.¹
5. Violenti-ă. 6. Aquil-ae.¹ 7. Aquil-īs.¹ 8. Aquil-ăs.
9. Patienti-am. 10. Naut-ărŭm.
1. *To women.* 2. *From blame.* 3. *Eagles (object).* 4. *By patience.*
5. *Of eagles.* 6. *O women.* 7. *To eagles.*
8. *Women (subject).* 9. *From an eagle.* 10. *To sailors.*

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also :

<i>The woman loves.</i>	Fēmīn-ă <i>ămă-t.</i>
<i>The women love.</i>	Fēmīn-ae <i>ăma-nt.</i>
<i>The eagle devours.</i>	Ăquīl-a <i>vōră-t.</i>
<i>The eagles devour.</i>	Ăquīl-ae <i>vōra-nt.</i>

The Plural of all Verbs ending in **-ă-t** is formed by inserting **n** between **a** and **t** :

Sŭpĕra-nt, *they overcome*, **monstra-nt**, *they point out*,
da-nt, *they give.*

EXERCISE IV.

A.—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following :

1. Naut-ă ama-t. 2. Regin-ă monstra-t. 3. Fili-ă lava-t.
4. Femin-ă da-t. 5. Naut-ă supera-t. 6. Puell-ă libera-t.

B.—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following :

1. Nautae da-nt. 2. Regin-ae supera-nt. 3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.
4. Fili-ae ama-nt. 5. Dextr-ae libera-nt. 6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

¹ The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.

EXERCISE V.

1. Naut-ā procell-am supera-t. 2. Naut-ae procell-am supera-nt.
 3. Regin-ā pecuni-am puell-ae da-t. 4. Reginae pecuni-am
 puell-ae dant (9a). 5. Naut-arum patienti-ā procell-as supera-t.¹
 6. Naut-ae patienti-ā procellam supera-nt. 7. Femin-ā naut-
 ārum fili-ās lavat. 8. Femin-ā naut-ārum fili-ās aqu-ā lava-t.
 9. Patienti-ā, O naut-ae, violenti-am super-at. 10. Naut-ae, O
 regin-ā, patienti-ā procell-ārum violenti-am supera-nt. 11.
 Naut-arum dextr-ae regin-am procell-ae violenti-ā libera-nt.²

1. *The sailor overcomes the storm.* 2. *The sailors overcome the storm.* 3. *The women love the girl.* 4. *The woman loves the girl.* 5. *The queen gives money to the sailors.* 6. *The eagles devour the sailor.* 7. *By patience the sailor overcomes the storms.* 8. *The sailor's daughter points out the eagle.* 9. *The sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their) right hands.* 10. *The queen's wisdom frees the woman from blame.* 11. *The daughters of the sailors wash the women with water (5a).*

EXERCISE VI.

- 11 After the verb "give," *to* is often not used in English, but the Dative must be retained in Latin :

*The queen gives the sailors
money.*

Rēgina pēcūniam nautis
dāt.

- 12 Et, (which means *both* or *and*,) is sometimes repeated to couple together two Nouns in the same case :

*Experience gives both
patience and wisdom.*

Expērientiā et pātientiam
et sāpientiam dat.

Sometimes the former *et* (*both*) is omitted :

*The stars point out the way
for (both) the sailors and
the women.*

Stellae viam (et) nautis et
fēmīnis monstrant.

¹ Sūpērat is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. pātientī-a, and is not affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive nautārum. What overcomes?—Ans., *patience*.

² This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily repeat them when the English is given.

For filiabus, dēabus, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 158, and foll.

1. Fili-ă aqu-am naut-ae dat. 2. Sapienti-ă, o nautae, regin-ă violenti-am supera-t. 3. Regin-ă fili-ae pecuni-am dextr-ă dat. 4. Stell-ae vi-am naut-is monstra-nt. 5. Experienti-ă naut-is sapienti-am da-t. 6. Stell-ă naut-ae fili-ae vi-am monstra-t. 7. Regin-ae fili-ae naut-as aqu-ă lava-nt. 8. Experienti-ă et sapienti-ă naut-ae procell-as supera-nt. 9. Regin-ă nautis et aquam et pecuni-am da-t. 10. Sapientiă regin-am ir-ă et intemperanti-ă libera-t.
1. *By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm.*
 2. *The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women.*
 3. *The women give to the sailors water and money.* 4. *Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen.* 5. *The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor.* 6. *The queen's daughter washes the woman with water.* 7. *The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm.* 8. *The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm.* 9. *The queen's daughters give the (11) sailor water.* 10. *By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.*

THE SECOND OR O- DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in :

(1)
-ūs(2)
-r(3)
-um

1.—NOUNS IN -ūs.

Singular.

Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, a lord.¹
 Voc. Dōmīn-ē, O lord.
 Acc. Dōmīn-um, a lord.
 Gen. Dōmīn-ī, of a lord.²
 Dat. Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord.
 Abl. Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.³

Plural.

Dōmīn-ī, lords.
 Dōmīn-ī, O lords.
 Dōmīn-ōs, lords.
 Dōmīn-ōrum, of lords.
 Dōmīn-īs, to or for lords.
 Dōmīn-īs, by, with, or from lords.

- 13** The Voc. Sing. of fili-ūs, a son, and of proper names in -iūs, contracts -iē into -ī: fili, O son; Mercūrī, O

¹ Dōmīnūs means lord in the sense of owner, master.

² The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -iūs, -ium, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ii.

³ N.B. A noun denoting a living thing is never used with by without the Latin Preposition ā or āb. The pupil should remember that by a spear may be translated hastā, but by a lord is ā dōmīno.

Mercury. The termination *-īe* was avoided even in common nouns in *-īus*, e.g. *nuntī-us*, a messenger. The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of *Deus*, *God*, is the same as the Nominative.

2.—a. NOUNS IN *-ēr* (gen. *-rī*).¹

Nom.	Măgistěr , a master.	Măgistr-ī , masters.
Voc.	Măgistěr , O master.	Măgistr-ī , O masters.
Acc.	Măgistr-um , a master.	Măgistr-ōs , masters.
Gen.	Măgistr-ī , of a master.	Măgistr-ōrum , of masters.
Dat.	Măgistr-ō , to or for a master.	Măgistr-is , to or for masters.
Abl.	Măgistr-ō , by (13a), with, or from a master.	Măgistr-is , by, with, or from masters.

2.—b. NOUNS IN *-ēr* (gen. *-ērī*).²

Nom.	Pűěr , a boy.	Pűěr-ī , boys.
Voc.	Pűěr , O boy.	Pűěr-ī , O boys.
Acc.	Pűěr-um , a boy.	Pűěr-ōs , boys.
Gen.	Pűěr-ī , of a boy.	Pűěr-ōrum , of boys.
Dat.	Pűěr-o , to or for a boy.	Pűěr-is , to or for boys.
Abl.	Pűěr-o , by (13a), with, or from a boy.	Pűěr-is , by, with, or from boys. ³

Vīr, a man, is declined like *pűěr*, except that *ī* is written for *ě*: *vīr-um*, *vīr-i*, *vīr-o*, and *vīr-i*, *vīr-os*, *vīr-ōrum*, *vīr-is*.

Nouns in *-ri* and *-ērī*. The best way to remember which Nouns make *-ri* and which make *-eri*, is to remember that

- 14 1. The *only* Nouns declined like *pűěr* are *vīr*, man; *gěněr*, son-in-law; *sőcěr*, father-in-law; *vespěr*, evening; *Līběr*, the god of wine (called by the Greeks *Bacchus*); also *liběr-i*, children (used only in the plural).³

- 15 ¹ Nouns in *-er* once ended in *-ērus*, like *nűměr-us*, a number. The Voc. *pűěr-ě* is found in Old Latin.

² Final *-i*, *-o* are always long. Also final *-is*, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final *-us* in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.

- 16 ³ The Adjective *ădultēr* (used as a Noun to mean an adulterer) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in *-fer* and *-gěr* used as Nouns, e.g. *signīfer*, standard-bearer, *armīger*, armour-bearer or squire.

2. All other Nouns in *ēr* are declined like *măgister* e.g. *ăger*, *căper*, &c.

3.—NOUNS IN -um.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Regn-um , a kingdom	Regn-ă , kingdoms.
Voc.	Regn-um , O kingdom.	Regn-ă , O kingdoms.
Acc.	Regn-um , a kingdom.	Regn-ă , kingdoms.
Gen.	Regn-ī , of a kingdom.	Regn-ōrum , of kingdoms.
Dat.	Regn-ō , to or for a kingdom.	Regn-īs , to or for kingdoms.
Abl.	Regn-ō , by, with, or from a kingdom.	Regn-īs , by, with, or from kingdoms.

EXERCISE VII.

Hăbē-t , (<i>he</i>) <i>has</i> .	Hăbe-nt , (<i>they</i>) <i>have</i> .
Terrē-t , (<i>he</i>) <i>terrifies</i> .	Terre-nt , (<i>they</i>) <i>terrify</i> .
Ţimē-t , (<i>he</i>) <i>fears</i> .	Time-nt , (<i>they</i>) <i>fear</i> .

- Hortos habent.¹
- Dominus filio hortum dat.
- Domino-rum filii hortum habent.
- Filii hortum dominus servo dat.
- Servo equum dat.
- Filii servorum equos habent.
- Domini equum gladio terret.
- Nauta servos experi-entiā superat.
- Servorum patientiā dominum superat.
- Fluvius aquam habet.
- Servi, domine, minas timent.
- Minae, O fili (13), servos terrent.

- The lord has a garden.
- The lord's son has gardens.
- The lord's sons have gardens.
- The lord gives a garden to (his) son.
- The master gives the slave a horse.²
- The slave has a sword.
- The lord's sword terrifies the slave.
- The slaves fear the master's sword.
- The master terrifies the men with (his) sword.
- The slaves overcome the man by patience.
- Experience, O son, gives men patience.
- The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence (5a).

EXERCISE VIII.—NOUNS LIKE *măgistēr*.

An Active Verb in -at, -ant, or -et, -ent, can be made Passive by adding -ur; but the *ā* or *ē* of the Verb, which was shortened before *t* (*supĕră-t*, *terrĕ-t*), is long before -ur.

¹ Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, *he* or *they* must be supplied. Here *hăbent* must be translated *they have*.

² "The slave" here stands for "to the slave," and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where "to" is omitted after the word "give."

sūpērā-tur, he is (being) overcome; **sūpērant-ur**, they are (being) overcome.

terrē-tur, he is (being) terrified; **terrent-ur**, they are (being) terrified.

- 17** RULE.—(1) The *instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the *agent* (whether a *man* or *other animal*) requires, before the Ablative, the Preposition **ā** (**āb**, before a vowel or **h**).

The girl is terrified (1) *with* (or *by*) *a spear* (2) *by the sailor*. Puella (1) **hastā** (2) **ā nautā** terrētur.

1. Minister librum habet. 2. Magister agros fabris dat. 3. Aper caprum terret. 4. Minister caprum cultro terret. 5. Ager colubros habet. 6. Cancer colubros timet. 7. Cancris colubrorum violentiam timent. 8. Fabri minister Austrum timet. 9. Domini ministros arbiter sapientiā superat. 10. Pueri a colubris et ab apris terrentur. 11. Apri servorum hastis et gladiis superantur. 12. Feminas (16a) terrent.

EXERCISE IX.

CAUTION.—Distinguish between :

Lībr-os, books.

Lībr-um, a book.

Libēr-os, children.

Libēr-um, Liber, the god of wine.

- A. 1. *Of snakes*. 2. *To a son-in-law*. 3. *To a crab*. 4. *To Liber*. 5. *By* (17) *goats*. 6. *Children* (Abl.). 7. *Of boys*. 8. *Of wild-boars*. 9. *Artificers* (Abl.). 10. *To books*. 11. *To children*. 12. *Attendants* (Abl.). 13. *For sons-in-law*. 14. *Of a father-in-law*. 15. *Of the South Wind*. 16. *To a field*. 17. *To a man*. 18. *To crabs*. 19. *To Liber*. 20. *Of children*. 21. *By* (17) *children*. 22. *By books*. 23. *By goats*. 24. *By wild-boars*.

- B. 1. *The master terrifies the servants*. 2. *The servant fears the master's violence*. 3. *The crab fears the snakes of the field*. 4. *The goat fears the servant's knife*. 5. *The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by (his) patience*. 6. *The artificer gives the servant a field*. 7. *The servant gives (his) master a knife*. 8. *The servants are terrified by the lord's threats*. 9. *The lord is overcome by the slaves*.

EXERCISE X.—NOUNS LIKE **pŭēr**.

1. Hortum puero dant. 2. Vesperum puer timet. 3. Agricola Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

feminam terret. 6. Virorum soceri feminae generum terrent. 7. Puerorum violentiā virorum patientiam superat. 8. Gener a socero gladio terretur. 9. Regina procellae violentiā nautarum experiētiā liberatur.

1. *The boy loves Liber.* 2. *The woman's son-in-law fears the father-in-law.* 3. *The women fear the man's son-in-law.* 4. *The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys.* 5. *The woman's patience overcomes the violence of the children.* 6. *Experience gives men wisdom.* 7. *By patience children overcome the father-in-law's violence.* 8. *The wild-boars are overcome by the spears of the lords.* 9. *The queen is delivered (8) from the envy of the servants (5a).*

EXERCISE XI.—NOUNS LIKE **māgistr** AND **pūēr**.

18

Nōn, *not*.¹**Lauda-t**, *praises*.**Nēquē**, *and not*.**Culpa-t**, *blames*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>The lord does not blame the woman.</i> | 1. Dōmīnus fēmīnam nōn culpāt. |
| 2. <i>The lord praises the man, and does not blame the woman.</i> | 2. Dōmīnus vīrum laudat nēquē fēmīnam culpāt. |
1. Capri puerum timent. 2. Caper puerorum cultros timet. 3. Liberi minister librum non laudat. 4. Puer virum timet neque feminam amat. 5. Feminae generos culpant neque soceros laudant. 6. Colubri fabri ministros terrent. 7. Fabrorum generi arbitri patientiam culpant neque sapientiam laudant. 8. Liberi ministris caprum agricola dat. 9. Aper servos non timet neque domini hastā superatur. 10. Puella a capris non terretur.
 1. *The book praises Liber.* 2. *The servants of Liber do not praise books.* 3. *The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the snakes.* 4. *The boy terrifies the goat with a knife.* 5. *The man praises (his) father-in-law's field.* 6. *The snakes terrify the artificer's son-in-law.* 7. *The man fears (his) father-in-law, and does not love (his) son-in-law.* 8. *The husbandmen give Liber a goat.* 9. *The queen is not delivered from the storm by the sailors (5a).*

19

¹ **Nōn** always means *not*; but *not* is not always to be translated **nōn**. In commands and some other sentences, **nē** is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But *not* may always be translated by **nōn** in statements and direct questions; and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for the present.

EXERCISE XII.—NOUNS IN -um AND -ēr.

20 RULE.—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural :

Patience and constancy overcome violence. *Pătientia et constantia violen-
tiam sup̄erant.*

1. Agricola Liberi dona laudat neque libros amat. 2. Magister argentum ministro dat. 3. Argentum, non aurum, dominus servis dat. 4. Pueri diligentiae praemiis delectantur. 5. Puerorum praemia viri non amant. 6. Tempia Liber et Neptunus habent. 7. Liberi templa argentum habent. 8. Liberi templa argentum, non libros, habent. 9. Liberi templis agricolae aurum dant. 10. Diligentia et constantia praemia habent. 11. Oppida muros et templa habent. 12. Horti et arva ab agricolis laudantur.

1. The master gives the attendants gold. 2. The master's gifts are not praised by the boys. 3. The boy and the girl love rewards. 4. The master gives the boy the reward of diligence. 5. The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town. 6. The temples of the town have silver and gold. 7. The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns. 8. The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy. 9. The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields. 10. The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

ADJECTIVES IN -ūs, -ā, -um.

Adjectives in Latin agree in Number and Case with the Nouns which they qualify :

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	Bōnus dōmīnus.	<i>The good lord.</i>
<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	Bōni dōmīni.	<i>Of the good lord.</i>
<i>Nom. Plur.</i>	Bōni dōmīni.	<i>The good lords.</i>
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	Bōnōrum dōmī- nōrum.	<i>Of the good lords.</i>

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) dōmīnus, (2) fēmīna, (3) regnum.

Nom. Sing. Bōnus dōmīnus, bōna fēmīna, bōnum regnum.

Gen. Sing. Bōnī dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōni regni.

Nom. Plur. Bōni dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōna regna.

Gen. Plur. Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum, bōnārum fēmīnārum, bōnōrum regnōrum.

These three forms of the Adjective are called its *Genders*.

(1) The form in **-ūs** is called the Masculine Gender, (2) the form in **-ā** the Feminine, (3) the form in **-um** the Neuter.

21 RULE.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

<i>Singular.</i>				1.	<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn- us	bōn- ā	bōn- um		Bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn- ē	bōn- ā	bōn- um		Bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn- um	bōn- am	bōn- um		Bōn- ōs	bōn- ās	bōn- ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn- ī	bōn- ae	bōn- ī		Bōn- ōrum	bōn- ārum	bōn- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn- ō	bōn- ae	bōn- ō		Bōn- īs	bōn- īs	bōn- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn- ō	bōn- ā	bōn- ō		Bōn- īs	bōn- īs	bōn- īs

				2.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.V.</i>	Nigr- ēr	nigr- ā	nigr- um		Nigr- ī	nigr- ae	nigr- ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr- um	nigr- am	nigr- um		Nigr- ōs	nigr- ās	nigr- ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr- ī	nigr- ae	nigr- ī		Nigr- ōrum	nigr- ārum	nigr- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr- ō	nigr- ae	nigr- ō		Nigr- īs	nigr- īs	nigr- īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr- ō	nigr- ā	nigr- ō		Nigr- īs	nigr- īs	nigr- īs

22 GENDER OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: *nauta*, a sailor, *aurīga*, a charioteer, and other words denoting the occupations of men, are Masculine.

23 GENDER OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—(1) Nouns in **-ūs** and **-ēr** are Masculine, (2) Nouns in **-um** are Neuter.

Exceptions.—*Dōmus*, house, and *hūmus*, ground, are Feminine; *pēlāgus*, the sea, *vīrus*, poison, and *vulgus*, the common folk, are Neuter.¹

¹ The exceptional Masculine use of **vulgus** is not to be imitated.

For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226.

A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or

SINGULAR NUMBER.

	Feminine.		Masculine.		Neuter.	
	<i>A good woman.</i>		<i>A good lord.</i>		<i>A good gift.</i>	
Nom.	Bŏn-ă	fēmīn-ă	Bŏn-us	dŏmīn-us	Bŏn-um	dŏn-um
Voc.	" -a	" -a	" -ĕ	" -ĕ	" -um	" -um
Acc.	" -am	" -am	" -um	" -um	" -um	" -um
Gen.	" -ae	" -ae	" -i	" -i	" -i	" -i
Dat.	" -ae	" -ae	" -o	" -o	" -o	" -o
Abl.	" -ă	" -ă	" -o	" -o	" -o	" -o

PLURAL NUMBER.

	<i>Good women.</i>		<i>Good lords.</i>		<i>Good gifts.</i>	
Nom.	Bŏn-ae	femin-ae	Bŏn-i	domin-i	Bŏn-a	dŏn-a
Voc.	" -ae	" -ae	" -i	" -i	" -ă	" -ă
Acc.	" -as	" -as	" -os	" -os	" -ă	" -ă
Gen.	" -arum	" -arum	" -orum	" -orum	" -orum	" -orum
Dat.	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is
Abl.	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is	" -is

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances :

SINGULAR.

	<i>A great man.</i>	<i>A great charioteer (m).</i>	<i>A great sea (n).</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Magn-us vir	Magn-us aurig-ă	Magn-um pĕlăg-us
<i>Voc.</i>	Magn-ĕ vir	Magn-ĕ aurig-a	Magn-um pĕlăg-us
<i>Acc.</i>	„ -um vir -um	Magn-um aurig-am	Magn-um pĕlăg-us
<i>Gen.</i>	„ -i „ -i	Magn-i aurig-ae	„ -i „ -i
<i>Dat.</i>	„ -o „ -o	Magn-o aurig-ae	„ -o „ -o
<i>Abl.</i>	„ -o „ -o	Magn-o aurig-ă	„ -o „ -o

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Vir magnus a naută strenuo laudatur.
2. Dona parva improbi pueri culpant.
3. Naută impavidus pelagus non timet.
4. Pelagus vastum et procella magna nautas pavidos terrent.
5. Scribă strenuus docti magistri jussa non timet.
6. Aurigam probum pericula magna non terrent.
7. Nautae improbo regina dona splendida dat.
8. Nautarum proborum filii praemia magna habent.
9. Aurigae strenui patientiă nauta improbus superatur.
10. Feminam probam et nautam strenuum regina bona laudat.
11. Pericula, parve fili, viros justos non terrent.
12. Via aurigae strenuo a puellă monstratur.

females, e.g. pŏĕta, poet, incŏla, inhabitant) vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be of *common Gender*, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by *c.* But incŏla, pŏĕta, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked *m.*

(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. *The vigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers.* 2. *The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers.* 3. *The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe.* 4. *The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen.* 5. *The sailor's daughter fears the vast sea.* 6. *The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer.* 7. *The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors.* 8. *The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter.* 9. *Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men.* 10. *The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.*

EXERCISE XIV.

Est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.

Sunt, (*they*) *are*.

After the Verb **est** or **sunt** the question *who?* or *what?* is answered by the NOMINATIVE.

Britain is an island.

Britannia est **insŭla**.

Wars are the causes of evils.

Bella sunt inŭlŕum **caus-ae**.

- 24** RULE.—The Verb *to be* takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are **insŭla** and **causae** Nom.?—*Ans.*, Because the Verb **est** takes the same Case after it as before it.

The horses are great (horses).

Ėqui sunt **magni** (Ėqui).

The woman is (a) good (woman).

Fĕmĭna est **bŏna** (fĕmĭna).

- 24a** From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb *to be*.

1. *Britanniae incolae sunt nautae.* 2. *Nautae non sunt timidi.* 3. *Agri sunt lati.* 4. *Oppidum est magnum.* 5. *Puer est validus.* 6. *Pueri patientia magna est.* 7. *Aquila est alba.* 8. *Aquilarum alae sunt albae.* 9. *Oppida parva sunt.* 10. *Oppidorum templa sunt alta.* 11. *Dominus ab equis albis delectatur.* 12. *Femina proborum generorum filias amat.*

1. *The sailor is timid.* 2. *The walls of the town are high.* 3. *The field is broad.* 4. *The towns are not great.* 5. *The experience*

of the boy is small. 6. The wings of the eagle are great. 7. The walls of the temple are white. 8. The master has black horses and white goats. 9. The master's horses are black. 10. The eagle has white wings. 11. The timid sailor is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.

EXERCISE XV.

ADJECTIVES IN -ēr.¹

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are declined (1) some like *puer*, (2) others like *māgister*.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to memory the former class, as being the fewer.

25 1. Declined like *puer*: *asper*, *rough*, *liber*, *free* (whence *liberi*, *children*), *miser*, *wretched*, *prosper*, *prosperous*, *tēner*, *tender*.²

2. Declined like *māgister*: all Adjectives in -er not contained in the above list.

1 *Impigrum agricolam poeta piger timet. 2. Regina pulchra ab improbis incolis terretur. 3. Agricolaē vafri tenerum puerum verbis falsis laudant. 4. Domini prosperi macros capros habent. 5. Reginae liberis libros sacros pōētae dant. 6. Et nauta miser et auriga strenuus filios aegros habent. 7. Templorum sacrorum portis rubris et muris nigris viri delectantur. 8. Morbi agricolas miseros superant. 9. Agricolaē vafri filius parvae puellae caprum macrum dat. 10. Morbum taetrum nautae pavidī timent.*

1. *The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease. 2. The slothful sailors fear the active husbandman. 3. The cunning boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor. 4. The wretched sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease. 5. The foul disease terrifies the wretched sailors. 6. The sick women praise the sacred books with foolish words. 7. The vigorous husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (5a). 8. The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.*

¹ As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the future.

² Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Exercises), (1) *lācer*, *torn*, and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs *fer-o* and *ger-o*, *I bear*, viz. *frūgi-fer*, *fruit-bearing*; *corn-iger*, *horn-bearing*.

In the nom. sing. *prosperus* is more common than *prosper*.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, *e.g.* **c** in **judĭc-is**, **judĭc-i**, of a judge, to a judge, or **m** in **hiĕm-is**, **hiĕm-i**, of winter, to winter. This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but **-s** (sometimes disguised in the shape of **-x**, which represents **-gs**, and **-cs**) is the most common.

A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	{ [-s]	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-īs	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ībus
<i>Abl.</i>	-ĕ , rarely -ī	-ībus

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, *i.e.* **-c** hard, or **-g** :

<i>Singular.</i>			
<i>Leader (m).</i>	<i>Judge (c).¹</i>	<i>Law (f).</i>	<i>Citadel (f).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Dux (Duc-s)	Judex (Judic-s)	Lex (Leg-s)	Arx (Arc-s)
<i>Acc.</i> Dŭc-em	Judĭc-em	Lĕg-em	Arc-em
<i>Gen.</i> Dŭc-is	Judĭc-is	Lĕg-is	Arc-is
<i>Dat.</i> Dŭc-i	Judĭc-i	Lĕg-i	Arc-i
<i>Abl.</i> Dŭc-ĕ	Judĭc-ĕ	Lĕg-ĕ	Arc-ĕ

<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>N.V.</i> Dŭc-ēs	Judĭc-ēs	Lĕg-ēs	Arc-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> Dŭc-ēs	Judĭc-ēs	Lĕg-ēs	Arc-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Dŭc-um	Judĭc-um	Lĕg-um	Arc-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Dŭc-ībus	Judĭc-ībus	Lĕg-ībus	Arc-ībus
<i>Abl.</i> Dŭc-ībus	Judĭc-ībus	Lĕg-ībus	Arc-ībus

¹ The abbreviation *c.* means that **jŭdex** is of *common* gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.

II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, *i.e.* -t or -d:

Singular.

<i>Soldier (m).</i>	<i>Foot (m).</i>	<i>Summer (f).</i>
N.V. Miles (Milet-s) ¹	Pēs (Ped-s)	Æstās (Æstat-s)
Acc. Milit-em	Pēd-em	Æstāt-em
Gen. Milit-is	Pēd-is	Æstāt-is
Dat. Milit-i	Pēd-i	Æstāt-i
Abl. Milit-ē	Pēd-ē	Æstāt-ē

Plural.

N.V. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Acc. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Gen. Milit-um	Pēd-um	Æstāt-um
Dat. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus
Abl. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus

Nox, *f.* (for noct-s) Gen. noct-is, *night*, is declined like **Æstās**; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-ium.

- 27** RULE.—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying *pleasing, displeasing, troublesome, easy, difficult*, and the like:

Laws are not troublesome to a just judge. Lēges jūdīci justo non mōlestae sunt.

- 28** RULE.—**Dignus** and **indignus** (*worthy* and *unworthy*) govern the Ablative:

Impatience is unworthy of a leader. Impātientia dūcē indigna est.

EXERCISE XVI.

Laed-īt, (*he*) *hurts*. **Laed-unt**, (*they*) *hurt*.
Laedīt-ur, (*he*) *is (being) hurt*. **Laedunt-ur**, (*they*) *are (being) hurt*.

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae. 2. Bella militibus jucunda sunt. 3. Militum ignavia ducibus claris ingrata

29 ¹ The e of the true Stem (**mīlēt-**) is changed into -ī in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of **virgo** (**virgon-**) is changed into **virgin-**. But sometimes, as in **jūdex** above, the true Stem (**jūdic-**) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.

est. 4. Lapides militum miserorum pedes laedunt. 5. Comitibus validi constantiā fessus eques delectatur. 6. Equites peditem acutis gladiis terrent. 7. Rege bono leges malae indignae sunt. 8. Judicum verba injusta dominis justis molesta sunt. 9. Noctes obscuras pueri parvi timent. 10. Domini arx ab agricolā laudatur. 11. Aestatis memoria militibus grata est. 12. Aurigae pes sinister spinā acuta laeditur. 13. Agricolaē equi validi (24a) sunt.

1. *The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king.*
2. *Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader.*
3. *The husbandmen point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions.*
4. *A dark night terrifies the timid boy.*
5. *The memory of the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husbandmen.*
6. *The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the foot-soldiers.*
7. *The companions of the horse-soldier hurt the good husbandman with many stones.*
8. *Good laws are worthy of a just king.*
9. *The feet of the weary companions are hurt by the sharp stones.*
10. *The queen gives just laws to the renowned leader and to the good judges.*

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip) letter, *i.e.* -m, -p, -b :

Singular.

<i>Chief (m.).</i>	<i>Beam (f.).</i>	<i>Winter (f.).</i>
N.V. Princep-s (Princip-s)	Trab-s	Hiem(p)-s¹
<i>Acc.</i> Princĭp-em	Trăb-em	Hiēm-em
<i>Gen.</i> Princĭp-is	Trăb-is	Hiēm-is
<i>Dat.</i> Princĭp-i	Trăb-i	Hiēm-i
<i>Abl.</i> Princĭp-ě	Trăb-ě	Hiēm-ě

Plural.

N.V. Princĭp-ēs	Trăb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> Princĭp-ēs	Trăb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Princĭp-um	Trăb-um	Hiēm-um
<i>Dat.</i> Princĭp-ibus	Trăb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Princĭp-ibus	Trăb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal (nose) letter, *i.e.* -n, or (2) -u :

¹ P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of this word, so that the right spelling is **hiemps**.

Singular.

<i>Lion (m.).</i>	<i>Maiden (f.).</i>	<i>Crane (c.).</i>
N.V. Leo (Leō-n)	Virgo (Virgō-n)¹	Grū-s
Acc. Leōn-em	Virgīn-em	Grū-em
Gen. Leōn-is	Virgīn-is	Grū-is
Dat. Leōn-i	Virgīn-i	Grū-i
Abl. Leōn-ē	Virgīn-ē	Grū-ē

Plural.

N.V. Leōn-ēs	Virgīn-ēs	Grū-ēs
Acc. Leon-ēs	Virgīn-ēs	Grū-ēs
Gen. Leōn-um	Virgīn-um	Grū-um
Dat. Leōn-ibus	Virgīn-ibus	Grū-ibus
Abl. Leōn-ibus	Virgīn-ibus	Grū-ibus

EXERCISE XVII.

30 RULE.—The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as **hiēme**, *in winter*, **nocte**, *by night*.

31 RULE.—The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as **multos annos**, *for*, or *during*, **many years**.

Vivit, (*he*) *lives*.

Vivunt, (*they*) *live*.

1. Multi homines aestatem hieme laudant. 2. Virgines aestate hiemem, hieme aestatem laudant. 3. Leones multas aestates et multas hiemes vivunt. 4. Principibus pavidis leo molestus est. 5. Nautae nocte magnam gruum multitudinem puellae monstrant. 6. Virgines tenerae ab improbis principum filiis minis terrentur. 7. Papiliones paucas horas, elephantes multos annos vivunt.² 8. Leoni fero equitis comes caprum macrum dat. 9. Templum longas trabes, portas magnas, habet.³ 10. Templi trabs longitudinem miram habet. 11. Comites pavidī principe indigni sunt. 12. Multa poma aestate terra habet.

1. The sailor praises land in winter, (but) blames (it) in summer.
2. For many hours the lion derours the tender goats.
3. The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.
4. The daughters of the chiefs fear the savage lion.
5. A

¹ Virgo and hōmo originally kept the o throughout, and hōmōnes, for hōmīnes, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

² Repeat **vivunt** after **pāpiliōnēs**, "paucas horas (vivunt)."

³ In enumerations, and in other sentences, **et**, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert *and*, *but*, &c.

butterfly does not live for-many hours. 6. Unjust words are unworthy of a chief. 7. By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword. 8. The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief. 9. The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets. 10. In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, *i.e.* -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, *i.e.* -s : ¹

Singular.

<i>Consul (m.).</i>	<i>Love (m.).</i>	<i>Tree (f.).</i>	<i>Flower (m.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Consul	Ămor ²	Arbor(-ōs) ²	Flōs ¹
<i>Acc.</i> Consŭl-em	Amōr-em	Arbōr-em	Flōr-em
<i>Gen.</i> Consŭl-is	Amōr-is	Arbōr-is	Flōr-is
<i>Dat.</i> Consŭl-i	Amōr-i	Arbōr-i	Flōr-i
<i>Abl.</i> Consŭl-ě	Amor-ě	Arbōr-ě	Flōr-ě

Plural.

<i>Consul (m.).</i>	<i>Love (m.).</i>	<i>Tree (f.).</i>	<i>Flower (m.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Consŭl-ēs	Ămōr-ēs	Arbōr-ēs	Flōr-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> Consŭl-ēs	Amōr-ēs	Arbōr-ēs	Flōr-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Consŭl-um	Amōr-um	Arbōr-um	Flōr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Consŭl-ibus	Amōr-ibus	Arbōr-ibus	Flōr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Consŭl-ibus	Amōr-ibus	Arbōr-ibus	Flōr-ibus

Cînis *c.*, makes cîner-em, cîner-is, cîner-i, &c.

33 Note that anser differs from păter, as pŭer from măgister; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other Cases, the -e of the Nom.

Singular.

<i>Goose (m.).</i>	<i>Father (m.).</i>	<i>Mother (f.).</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Anser	Păter (Păter-)	Măter (Măter-)
<i>Acc.</i> Ansēr-em	Patr-em	Matr-em
<i>Gen.</i> Ansēr-is	Patr-is	Matr-is
<i>Dat.</i> Ansēr-i	Patr-i	Matr-i
<i>Abl.</i> Ansēr-ě	Patr-ě	Matr-ě

¹ (1) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing., but change it to -r in the other cases: flōs, Gen. flōr-is (for flōs-is), rōs, Gen. rōr-is (for rōs-is) of *deu* (2) Others have two forms of the Nom.: labōs or labor, Gen. labōr-is, of *labour*; and so arbōs or arbor, Gen. arbōr-is, of *a tree*.

² Final -or is short, and therefore its quantity is not marked in Ămor, arbor, &c.

Plural.

N.V. Ansēr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Acc. Ansēr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Gen. Ansēr-um	Patr-um	Matr-um
Dat. Ansēr-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus
Abl. Ansēr-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus ¹

EXERCISE XVIII.

- 34 RULE.—An Adjective is sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with *men* understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with *thing* or *things* understood.

Many (men) praise the king.

Multi rēgem laudant.

The father gives (his) son many (things).

Pāter filiō **multa** dat.

To err is (a) dangerous (thing).

Errāre est pēriculōsum.²

Sūpērā-re, to overcome.

Culpā-re, to blame.

Laudā-re, to praise.

Ērat, (he) was, **ērant**, (they) were.

- 35 N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, e.g., *the consul's clear voice*, **clāra consulis vox**; and sometimes by other words: **flōribus sē pulchris dēlectat**, *he delights himself with beautiful flowers*.

1. Multi regem laudant neque reginam culpant. 2. Jucundum est laudāre, culpāre injucundum (est). 3. Rex pauca filiō dat, filiae multa (dat). 4. Puer anserem timet, patrem et matrem non timet. 5. Sepulcrum pulchrum multorum amicorum cineres habet. 6. Hiemps frigida arbores magnas et parvos flores laedit. 7. Milites magno clamore claram consulis vocem superant. 8. Pulchri florum colores virginum oculis grati sunt. 9. Anserem stultum multa terrent. 10. Femina a virgine amore magno amatur. 11. Militum clamor timoris causa est agricolis.³ 12. Consulum jussa timoris causae erant militibus. 13. Timidos nocte (30) multa terrent.

- 36 ¹ The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular.

All the other cases can be formed by striking off the **-is** from the Gen., e.g. **anser-**, **patr-**, and adding **-em**, **-i**, **-ē**, **-es**, **-um**, **-ibus**. See p. 18.

- 36a ² Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of **est**. See further, Exercise XXXV.

³ **Agricolis** may be parsed as the "Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage." See par. 7.

1. *To overcome is pleasant for soldiers.* 2. *The consul gives many things¹ to the vigorous soldier.* 3. *Many praise the king, few blame (him).* 4. *A goose fears many-things, (and) terrifies few-men.¹* 5. *The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour.* 6. *The colour of the flowers is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens.* 7. *The broad sepulchres have the ashes of many soldiers.* 8. *The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens.* 9. *The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen.* 10. *To praise the bad is unpleasing and-not just.* 11. *For-a-few hours (31) the soldiers overcome the sailors.*

B.—NEUTER NOUNS OF THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

Singular.

<i>Head (n.).</i>	<i>Name (n.).</i>	<i>Right or Law (n.).</i>	<i>Work (n.).</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i> Căput	Nōmen	Jūs	Ōpus
<i>Gen.</i> Căpit-is	Nōmīn-is	Jūr-is	Ōpēr-is
<i>Dat.</i> Căpit-i	Nōmīn-i	Jūr-i	Ōpēr-i
<i>Abl.</i> Căpit-ē	Nōmīn-ē	Jūr-ē	Ōpēr-ē

Plural

<i>N.V. Acc.</i> Căpit-ă	Nōmīn-ă	Jūr-ă	Ōpēr-ă
<i>Gen.</i> Căpit-um	Nōmīn-um	Jūr-um	Ōpēr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Căpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Căpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus

Note also *corpus, corpōr-is, corpōr-i, &c., a body.*

EXERCISE XIX.

37 When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of *et* between the two Nouns, *-quē* is added as an extra syllable to the latter of the two Nouns: *flowers and trees, flōres arbōresquē.*

1. *Fulmen arbores fruticesque et corpora hominum laedit.* 2. *Carmina sunt poetarum opera.* 3. *Jura belli agricolae timent.* 4. *Pueri nomen pulchrum erat.* 5. *Verbera iudicibus consulibusque indigna sunt.* 6. *Equitum peditumque multitudinem vastam mercatores jure² timent.* 7. *Militum opera oppidorum incolis ingrata erant.* 8. *Capri capita parva,*

¹ The words *things* and *men* (here and in other passages where they are used with *many* or *few*) should not be translated. See the Rule above.

² *Jure* is the Abl. used as an Adverb, *by right*, i.e. *rightly, naturally.*

corpora macra, pedes longos habent. 9. Multis hominibus multorum scelerum causa est aurum.¹ 10. Sidera nautis hieme grata erant. 11. Injusti iudicis verba bona (erant), facta mala erant. 12. Corpori cibum, doctrinam menti Deus dat. 13. Miles ab injusto iudice culpa (8) liberatur.

- ² 1. *The leader's head (was) small, his body was lean.* 2. *The multitude of the merchants fears the horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers.* 3. *The works of soldiers are displeasing to husband-men.* 4. *Flowers and shrubs are agreeable to the inhabitants of towns.* 5. *Boys give food and sleep (use-quē) to (their) bodies, learning to (their) minds.* 6. *The names of the boys and girls are beautiful.* 7. *Unjust laws are uncorthy of kings and queens.* 8. *The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers are not terrified by the crimes of (their) leaders.* 9. *The poet's work delights the queen with (its) beautiful name.* 10. *It was (a) renowned (thing) to overcome a multitude of horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers in-war (Abl. of instr.)*

THIRD DECLENSION.

2.—NOUNS WHOSE STEM ENDS IN *i*.

- 39** These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in *-iūm*; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in *-um*.³ But the Stem *i* (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into *e*,) frequently disappears.

¹ What case is *hōmīnībus*, and why? See Par. 7.

² For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 226; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

40 ³ The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take *-iūm* in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:—

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-i* (as *dūc-is*, take *-um* (*dūc-um*).

Examples: *pātr-um, sēn-um, pēd-um, grēg-um, āp-um, &c.*

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-i* (as *ārc-is*) take *-iūm*.

Examples: *falc-iūm, urb-iūm, art-iūm, lit-iūm, font-iūm, pont-iūm, mont-iūm, noct-iūm, &c.*

Exceptions are *vōc-um, lēg-um, rēg-um, jūr-um*, and a few others.

B.—1. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Ship (f.).</i>	<i>Shower (m.).</i>	<i>Cloud (f.).</i>
N. V.	Nāv-īs	Imber (Imbri-)	Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)
Acc.	Nāv-em	Imbr-em	Nūb-em
Gen.	Nāv-īs	Imbr-īs	Nūb-īs
Dat.	Nāv-i	Imbr-i	Nūb-i
Abl.	Nāv-i or -ē	Imbr-i (-ē) ¹	Nūb-ē

Plural.

N. V.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Acc.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Gen.	Nāv-ium	Imbr-ium	Nūb-ium
Dat.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus
Abl.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus

2.—NEUTER NOUNS.

Singular.

	<i>Sea (n.).</i>	<i>Animal (n.).</i>	<i>Spur (n.).</i>	<i>Bone (n.).</i>
N. V. Acc.	Mār-ē	Ānimāl	Calcar	Ōs ²
Gen.	Mār-is	Ānimāl-is	Calcār-is	Oss-īs
Dat.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-i
Abl.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-ē

Plural.

N. V. Acc.	Marī-ă	Ānimāl-ă	Calcār-ă	Oss-ă
Gen.	Marī-um	Ānimāl-ium	Calcār-ium	Oss-ium
Dat.	Marī-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus
Abl.	Marī-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus

- 41 Nēque or nēc, when repeated, means *neither . . . nor*.
 Consūm-it, (he) *consumes*. Consūm-unt, (they) *consume*.

EXERCISE XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent.
 2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrentur. 3. Hominum sapientiā et animalium robur et maris furor superantur. 4. Navem rapidam mare avidum vorat. 5. Naves

- 42 ¹ A few Nouns in -is take only -im in the Acc., and only -i in the Abl.: sītis, *thirst*; tussis, *cough*; vīs, *violence*; and names of towns and rivers, e.g., Tībēris, *the Tiber*. The following commonly take -im. febris, *fever*; pelvis, *basin*; puppis, *poop*; restis, *rope*; turris, *tower*; sēcūris, *axe*.

- 43 Ignis makes Abl. in -i, except in poetry: and Abl. -i is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. -im.

² Distinguish this word from ōs, ōris, n., *mouth*, or *countenance*. Ānimāl, calcar, and almost all other Neuters with Abl. in -i, are derived from Adjectives.

validas maris furor et tempestatis violentia superant. 6. Duces aurea calcaria et decora magna equitibus dant. 7. Hostium urbem dux igni ferroque consumit. 8. Nauta navi valida pelagi furorem superat. 9. Britannorum naves multis urbibus multisque gentibus notae sunt. 10. Ducum certamina prosperis civitatibus saepe causa exitii sunt. 11. Equus ignavus calcar timet. 12. Multa genera et animalium et lapidum mare habet. 13. Morbus capros totam aetatem (31) consumit.

1. Strong horses often fear the spur. 2. The soldiers consume the cities with fire and sword. 3. Repeated lightning and a great storm terrify the merchants. 4. The animals of the sea are many and wonderful. 5. Men by (their) wisdom overcome the threats of seas and the madness of savage animals. 6. Both to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction. 7. Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers. 8. The strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and the violence of the storms. 9. The bones of small animals are small. 10. The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great cloud. 11. By wisdom and experience men are freed from the violence of savage animals. 12. He lives a few hours.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

- 44 These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension; except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is *-i* and not *-e*; and the Gen. Plur. *-ium* and not *-um*.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in *-i*, and Gen. Plur. in *-ium*.

1.—ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

			<i>Ācer, sharp.</i>		
			<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>'N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Ācer	ācr-īs	ācr-ě	Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
<i>Acc.</i>	Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ě	Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ācr-īs	ācr-īs	ācr-īs	Ācr-ium	ācr-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus ¹

- 45 ¹ Other similar Adjectives are *sālūb-er, healthy*, *ālāc-er, brisk*, *ēquest-er, equestrian*. In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms *ācr-is*, *sālūbr-is*, *ālācr-is* &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in prose. *Cēl-er* retains the *ē* in the Fem. *cēlēr-is* and in the Neut. *cēlēr-e*.

2.—ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Tristis, sad.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. V.</i> Trist-īs	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
<i>Acc.</i> Trist-em	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
<i>Gen.</i> Trist-īs	trist-īs	Trist-ium	trist-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus

3.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

Felix, happy.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M., F., and N.</i>		<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. V.</i> Fēlix		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
<i>Acc.</i> Fēlic-em		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
<i>Gen.</i> Fēlic-is		Fēlic-ium	fēlic-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus

46 *B.*—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ě, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -īor (*m. and f.*), -īus (*n.*): trist-īor, *sadder*, fēlic-īor, *happier*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. V.</i> Tristiōr	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
<i>Acc.</i> Tristiōr-em	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
<i>Gen.</i> Tristiōr-is	tristiōr-īs	Tristiōr-um	tristiōr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Tristiōr-ī	tristiōr-ī	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Tristiōr-ě	tristiōr-ě	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus

47 Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ě and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: *dīvēs*, (*a*) *rich (man)*, *supplex*, *a suppliant*, *vigīl*, *a watchman*, *princeps* *a chief*, *pauper*, *a poor man*, *superstēs*, *a survivor*.¹48 ¹ A useful Rule is given (*Public School Grammar*) that:—

- i. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. short, make -um in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* *supplex*, Gen. Sing. *supplīcis*, Gen. Pl. *supplīcum*.
- ii. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. long, make -ium in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* *fēlix*, Gen. Sing. *fēlicis*, Gen. Pl. *fēlicium*.

1.—Cēlēr ēquus, *the swift horse.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Cēlēr ēqu-us	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Voc.	Cēlēr ēqu-e	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Acc.	Cēlēr-em ēqu-um	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ōs
Gen.	Cēlēr-īs ēqu-i	Cēlēr-ium ēqu-ōrum ¹
Dat.	Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs
Abl.	Cēlēr-ī ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs

2.—Mēliūs dōnum, *the better gift.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.V. Acc.	Mēliūs dōn-um	Mēlior-ā dōn-ā
Gen.	Mēliōr-īs dōn-ī	Mēliōr-um dōn-ōrum
Dat.	Mēliōr-ī dōn-ō	Mēliōr-ibus dōn-īs
Abl.	Mēliōr-ē dōn-ō	Mēliōr-ibus dōn-īs

3.—Fēlix jūdēx, *a happy judge.*

49 Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ē, -um; Adj. -ī, -ium:

(1) Fēlic-ī jūdēc-ē, *by (13a), with, or from the happy judge.*

(2) Fēlic-ium jūdēc-um, *of happy judges.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Mater bona meliore filio digna est. 2. Celerium equorum terga ab aurigis verberibus laeduntur. 3. Patres laeti meliora dona filiis dant. 4. Poeta sapiens regem insignem tristiore carmine delectat. 5. Rex insignis infelici morte indignus est. 6. Agricolarum vita salubris est; scribae diligentis labor non est saluber. 7. Equus acer certamen equestre amat. 8. Mercatorum divitum vitam miles fortis non amat. 9. Ira acri ducum tristem cives timidi terrentur. 10. Dulce carmen poeta insigni dignum est. 11. Puer tristis donum melius amat. 12. Principes justis fortibus militibus agros feraces dant. 13. Regina prudenti animo et audacibus consiliis seditionem superat. 14. Eques comitem culpa (8) liberat.

1. *The joyful father gives a better gift to (his) son.* 2. *The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.*

50 ¹ The Gen. Pl. Cēlēr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."

3. *By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.*
 4. *A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers.* 5. *The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.*
 6. *The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders.* 7. *The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field.* 8. *The just judges give rewards to the chariot-cers of the swift horses.* 9. *The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy.* 10. *The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.*¹ 11. *The master frees the boys from blame.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH
NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Saevus hostis, a cruel enemy.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Saevus hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Saevē hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Saevum hostem	Saevos hostēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Saevi hostis	Saevōrum hostium
<i>Dat.</i>	Saevo hosti	Saevīs hostibūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Saevo hostē	Saevīs hostibūs

Almā māter, loving mother.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Almā māter	Almae matrēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Almam matrē	Almās matrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Almae matrīs	Almarum matrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Almae matrī	Almīs matrībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Almā matrē	Almīs matrībūs

Magnum ōpus, a great work.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i>	Magnum ōpūs	Magnā ōpera
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnī ōpēris	Magnōrum ōpērum
<i>Dat.</i>	Magno ōpērī	Magnīs ōpērībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Magno ōpērē	Magnīs ōpērībūs

EXERCISE XXII.

Quis? *What (man)?* **Who** (Nom.)? **Quem?** *What (man)?*
Whom (Acc.)? **Quid?** *What (thing)?* **What** (Nom. and Acc.)?

1. Bonorum operum memoria forti viro dulcis erat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

¹ Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Paragraphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

cohortis hostibus iracundis terga dant.¹ 4. Quis vinum vetus puero, quis seni verbera dat? 5. Benigno patri acris filiorum ira molesta erat. 6. Gladios breves, (32) longas hastas milites habent. 7. Mater alma filiarum tristium poenitentiam laudat. 8. Hostium saevorum feritas atrox cives timidos terret. 9. Senes infirmi regum minis atrocibus terrentur. 10. Tempestas atris nubibus et crebro fulmine virgines teneras terret. 11. Quis non virtutem amat? Quem non bonorum operum memoria delectat? 12. Senex probus inhonesta morte et turpi fama indignus est.

1. *Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation.* 2. *A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers.* 3. *Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by (trans. Whom delights not) the memory of virtue?* 4. *Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys?* 5. *The enemy (use pl.), by (their) savageness and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages.* 6. *The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning.* 7. *The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men).* 8. *The citizens flee before the strong cohort (trans. give their backs to the strong cohort).* 9. *The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys.* 10. *The sad woman is worthy of a better death.* 11. *(He) is-terrified in the night.*

THE FOURTH OR -u DECLENSION.

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>Step (m.).</i>	<i>Hand (f.).</i>	<i>Knee (n.).</i>
N.V.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ŭ
Acc.	Grăd-um	Măn-um	Gěn-ŭ
Gen.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ūs
Dat.	Grăd-ŭi	Măn-ŭi	Gěn-ŭi
Abl.	Grăd-ŭ	Măn-ŭ	Gěn-ŭ
	<i>Plural.</i>		
N.V.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ŭă
Acc.	Grăd-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ŭă
Gen.	Grăd-ŭum	Măn-ŭum	Gěn-ŭum
Dat.	Grăd-ibus	Măn-ibus	Gěn-ibus
Abl.	Grăd-ibus	Măn-ibus	Gěn-ibus

- 51 1. The Dat. Sing. in -ŭi is sometimes contracted into -ŭ.

¹ "To give backs to an enemy" means "to flee from an enemy."

- 52** 2. Some names of trees, e.g. *pīnus*, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.
- 53** 3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in *-ūbus* (not *-ībus*) by *arcus*, m., *bow*, *artus*, m., *limb*, and *partus*, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of *arx*, f., *citadel*, *ars*, f., *art*, and *pars*, f., *part*. The Dat. in *-ūbus* is also formed by *ācus*, f., *needle*, *portus*, m., *harbour*, and *trib-us*, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)
- 54** All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nom. *-us*, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXERCISE XXIII.

- 55** Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition *in* :

In (foll. by Abl.) *in* : *In* (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards* :
 (My) father *is in the garden*. Pater *in horto* est.
 The leader *leads the soldiers into the city*. Dux milites *in urbem* dūcit.

1. Pinus altae fructum non habent; glandes sunt quercuum fructus. 2. Hostes magnam copiam arcuum et sagittarum comparant. 3. Imbres quercui dant aquam. 4. Scythae arcu dux vulneratur. 5. Equi albi sinistrum genu durum est. 6. Acus longa digitum mulieris vulnerat. 7. Naves longae in tuto portu ventos secundos expectant. 8. Naves longas in portus diversos tempestas agit. 9. Nautae, in portu pelagus, in pelago portum laudant. 10. Auditus visusque utilitatem quis non intelligit? 11. Romanae plebis tribubus frumentum a Caesare datur. 12. Hiemis gelu myrto perniciosum erat; pinui et quercui non erat (perniciosum). 13. Multa (34) totam noctem (31) timet (16a).
1. The Scythian overcomes (his) enemy with (his) strong bow.
 2. The diligent women have sharp needles. 3. Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours. 4. The frost of winter is not destructive to pines. 5. The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour. 6. Stags by their running, foxes by (their) sublety, overcome the hunter.
 7. The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns. 8. By

hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and) obtain useful (things). 9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull has short (horns). 10. The bull with his left horn wounds the shepherd. 11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

THE FIFTH OR -E DECLENSION.

Day (m.).		Thing (f.).	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Dī-ēs	Dī-ēs	R-ēs ¹	R-ēs
Acc. Dī-em	Dī-ēs	R-em	R-ēs
Gen. Dī-eī	Dī-ērum	R-eī ²	R-ērum
Dat. Dī-eī	Dī-ēbus	R-eī	R-ēbus
Abl. Dī-ē	Dī-ēbus	R-ē	R-ēbus

56 In the Gen. and Dat., final -eī is sometimes contracted into -ē; diē, fidē.

57 All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except diēs, day, and mēridiēs, midday, which are Masculine.³

EXERCISE XXIV.

Āg-it, (he) drives, or leads. Āg-itur, (he) is (being) driven.

1. Agricola spē fructuum in laborem agitur. 2. Acies densa ab hostibus in fugam agitur. 3. Magna pars exercitūs in planitiē erat. 4. Tanta vitia tam pulchra faciē indigna sunt. 5. Memoria pulchrae faciē hominibus jucunda est. 6. Mora spei inimica est. 7. Rex iustus melioribus rebus dignus est. 8. Rebus adversis vir fortis in dolorem agitur. 9. Exercitus omnis in spem novam a forti duce agitur. 10. In Britannia apricorum dierum numerus non magnus est. 11. Fluminis rapidi cursus interdum glacie superatur. 12. Rerum adversarum memoria in rebus secundis interdum jucunda est.
1. In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours) of the night (30). 2. There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers (use -quē) in the line of the enemy. 3. The light of mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud. 4. The

¹ This Noun is printed thus (as also in the *Public School Grammar*) to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of rēs is not r- but re-. See p. 239, 'Stem.'

² The quantity of r-eī varies.

³ Diēs should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except poetically; to signify, not a literal day, but a season, e.g. *The evil day has come. Atrā diēs vēnit.*

Diēs and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully declined; and all (but nine) have no Plural.

long line of the enemy (trans. enemies) is being overcome by the fearless soldiers. 5. The memory of prosperity is sometimes unpleasing to the wretched. 6. The heat of the sun was destructive to the thin ice. 7. The memory of joyful days was pleasing to the just judge. 8. Great is the utility of hope. 9. The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold leader. 10. The queen shews (her) grief by (her) sad face.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—REGULAR.

58 1. The **Comparative Degree**, if regular, is formed from the Gen. Sing. by taking away **-i**, (**alt-i**, **alt-**) or **-is** (**ferac-is**, **ferac-**), and adding **-ior**: **alt-ior**, *higher*, **ferăc-ior**, *more fruitful*.

59 2. The **Superlative Degree** is formed by taking away **-i** or **-is** and adding **-issimus**: **alt-issimus**, **fărăc-issimus**.

<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Trist- is ,	trist- ior , <i>sadder</i> ,	trist- issimŭs , <i>saddest</i> .
Răcent- is ,	răcent- ior , <i>more recent</i> ,	răcent- issimŭs , <i>most recent</i> .

II.—IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.

1. **-lîmus**.

60 1. Six Adj. in **-îlis**, form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding **-lîmus** instead of **-issimus**.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Făcil- is , <i>easy</i>	facil- ior	facil- lîmus
Difficil- is , <i>difficult</i>	difficil- ior	difficil- lîmus
Simil- is , <i>like</i>	sîmil- ior	sîmil- lîmus
Dissîmil- is , <i>unlike</i>	dissîmil- ior	dissîmil- lîmus
Grăcil- is , <i>thin</i>	grăcil- ior	grăcil- lîmus
Hîmil- is , <i>low</i>	hîmil- ior	hîmil- lîmus

The rest, **fertil-îs**, **util-îs** &c., have either no Superlative or **-issimus**; **fertil-issimus**, **util-issimus**, &c.

2. -rīmus.

- 61 2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by *adding -rīmus to the Nominative* :

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
Nom.	Gen.		
Liber, libēr-i, <i>free</i>		libēr-ior	liber-rīmus
Celer, cēlēr-is, <i>swift</i>		cēlēr-ior	cēler-rīmus
Pulcher, pulchr-i, <i>beautiful</i>		pulchr-ior	pulcher-rīmus
Ācer, acr-is, <i>sharp</i>		acr-ior	ācer-rīmus

The Adjective vētūs, Gen. vētēr-is, *old*, has Comp. vētust-ior, Superl. veter-rīmus.¹

Quam, *than*.

- 62 RULE.—Nouns coupled by **quam** (*than*) and a Comparative Adj. or Adv., are in the same case :

1. Nom. { Ēqui ūtīliores sunt **quam** capri (sunt).
Horses are more useful than goats (are).
2. Gen. { Pūdor flāgītīi, māgis quam errōris, hōmīnem complet.
Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses the man : lit. of the crime, of the error.
3. Dat. { Pūēro dat mēliōra dona **quam** pūellae (dat).
To the boy he gives better gifts than (he gives) to the girl.
4. Acc. { Mālus fōliā hābet densiōra **quam** māla (hābet).²
The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.

- 63 RULE.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the Ablative without **quam** :

Nothing is more lovable than Nīhil est virtūte āmābīlius.
virtue.

¹ The Comparative vētērior is rare and archaic.

² Distinguish between māla, *apples*, and mālā, *evils*.

N.B. Superlatives and Comparatives have each more meanings than one :

- 64 I. **Tard-issimus** means (1) *slowest*, (2) *very slow*.
 65 II. **Tard-ior** means (1) *slower*, (2) *rather*, or *somewhat*, *slow*, or (3) *too slow*.

EXERCISE XXV.

- 66 RULE.—**Similis**, *like*, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat. : ¹—

- (1) *The boys are like (i.e., the likenesses of) (their) father.* Pūeri **patris** similes sunt.
 (2) *All things were more like (to) a camp than (to) a city.* Omnia **castris** quam **urbi** similiōra erant.

- 67 **Quidem**, *on the one hand ; indeed*. **Autem**, *on the other hand ; however ; but*. Neither of these words can stand first in a clause. They must be placed after some emphatic word. See Sentence 9 below.

1. Vallis humilior erat campo. 2. Nihil est virtute pulchrius, nihil amicitia dulcius. 3. Puer omnibus praeceptoris discipulis procerior erat. 4. Uxori vir melius donum quam sorori dat. 5. Amor patriae magis quam filiorum ducem acerrimum complet. 6. Cervus animal est celerrimum, et testudini dissimillimum.² 7. Hieme dies breviores sunt noctibus. 8. Iter puellae difficilior est quam puero. 9. Turdus quidem avis tardior (65) est, aquila autem velocissima. 10. In regione aspera itinera hieme difficiliora quam aestate sunt. 11. Puer aegerrimus crura et brachia graciliora habet. 12. Puellae patris quam matris similiores erant. 13. Puellam quidem totum diem (31) culpat (16a), puerum autem laudat.

1. *Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing.* 2. *The husbandman's garden is more fertile than the rich king's fields.* 3. *Who is bolder than a soldier? who (is) juster than a judge?* 4. *The ass is a somewhat-foolish (65) animal ; the dog is very sagacious.* 5. *The boy's sisters were more like (their) mother than (their) father.* 6. *The anger of the king was keener than the madness of the soldiers.* 7. *By very swift journeys*

¹ The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.

² Two Adjectives coupled by **et** can agree with the same Noun.

the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.
 8. *Very beautiful trees fill the very low¹ valleys of (the) most¹ fertile region.* 9. *The very brave soldiers are being driven into the city by (a) very keen and bold leader.¹* 10. *The very¹ ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
68	bōnus, <i>good</i>	mēlior	optimus
	mālus, <i>bad</i>	pējor	pessimus
	magnus, <i>great</i>	mājor	maximus
	parvus, <i>small</i>	mīnor	mīnimus
	multi, (pl.), <i>many</i>	plūres	plūrimi ²
	nēquam, (indecl.) <i>worthless</i>	nēquior	nēquissimus

68^a Adjectives ending in -dīcus, *-speaking*, -fīcus, *-doing*, -vōlus, *wishing*, form the Comp. in -entīor, the Superl. in -entissimus :

mālē-dīcus, *ill-speaking*, -dīcentīor, -dīcentissimus.
 mūnī-fīcus, *gift-making*, -fīcentīor, -fīcentissimus.
 bēnē-vōlus, *well-wishing*, -vōlentīor, -vōlentissimus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in -ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are mastered.)

68^b Adjectives ending in -ēus, -īus, -ūus, seldom have a Compar. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by appending the adverbs māgis, *more*, maxīmē, *most* : pīus, *dutiful*, māgis pīus, *more dutiful*, maxīmē pīus, *most dutiful*.

69 In the following the Positive is defective, and is represented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition :

70 ¹ In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English. We should say "*the brave soldiers*," "*a bold leader*." But in Latin the Superlatives must be expressed.

71 ² Multum, plūs, and plūrimum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

They have much
 more
 very much } (of) money.

Multum
 Plūs
 Plūrimum } pecūniāe habent.

[Sēnex], an old man	sēnior ¹	nātu maxīmus, oldest.
[Jūvēnis], a young man	jūnior ¹	nātu mīnīmus, youngest.
[Sūpērus], upper	sūpērior	suprēmus, summus, highest.
[Infērus], lower	infērior	infīmus, īmus, lowest.
[Extērus], outside	extērior	extrēmus, (outermost or last).
[prep. Intrā], inside	intērior	intīmus, īmōst.
[Postērus], after, behind	postērior	postrēmus, (hindmost or last).
[prep. Prae], before	priōr	prīmus, (foremost or first).
[prep. Propē], near	prōpīor ¹	proxīmus, (nearest or next).
[prep. Ultrā], beyond	ultērior	ultīmus, (furthest or last).

72 Plūs, more, is thus declined :

Singular : a Noun.

Plural : an Adjective.

	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. and Acc.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūrā
Gen.	Plūrīs	Plūrium	Plūrium
Dat.	Plūrī	Plūrībus	Plūrībus
Abl.	Plūrē	Plūrībus	Plurībus

Māgis means *more in degree* and is used with Adjectives ;
plūs, *more in quantity*, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is more dutiful, but Balbus **māgis** pīus est, sed
Tullius delights (his) father Tullius patrem **plūs** delectat.
more.

EXERCISE XXVI.

73 RULE.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun understood, is followed by the Genitive :

The horse is the most useful **Ēquus ūtilīssīmus** (animal)
(animal) of animals. **ānīmālīum est.**

1. Alexander erat ducum praestantissimus.²
2. Optimorum virorum filii interdum pessimi sunt.
3. Quid pejus erat Balbi contione ! Quid optīmae (35) Tullii contioni (66) simile habet ?³
4. Majores natu ratio, non spes, agit.
5. Junioribus

¹ Nātu mājor and nātu mīnor are also used. Nātu means *by birth*, and is not declined.

² Why is dūcum Gen. ? Ans. governed by dux understood.

³ An Adj. e.g. optīmae, is often separated from its Noun by an intervening Genitive e.g. Tullii. (Par. 35.) Quid (Exercise XXII) is Acc. gov. by habet.

The Nom. to habet is it, i.e. the speech of Balbus, understood.

seniores dona dant. 6. Ducis optimi dies ultimus erat felicissimus. 7. Socrates optimus Graecorum erat. 8. Castrorum pars exterior parte intimā major erat. 9. Plus erat (71) modestiae quam sapientiae in viro benevolentissimo.¹ 10. Plurimorum facta nequissima, optima verba sunt. 11. Minima pars propioris regionis maximā parte regionis ulterioris major erat. 12. Senes priora (34) laudant, juniorum facta culpant. 13. Proximo die imperator maximam partem hostium superat. 14. Virgo a milite hasta totum diem terretur.

1. *The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more worthless son.*
2. *Very old men praise former times.*
3. *The greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel.*
4. *The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men).*
5. *He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the most dutiful of the brothers.*
6. *The lowest part of the mountain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest part of the citadel.*
7. *The younger rightly give reverence to (their) elders.'*
8. *The younger of the brothers was very like the elder sister.*
9. *Very many praise what is best (trans. best-things).*
10. *On the last (30) day of (his) life the old-man was most happy.*
11. *He is-blamed the whole day (long).*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

- 74** Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting *how many*, or (2) Ordinal, denoting *in what order*.² All the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like *bōnus*; but of the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

1. Ūnus, one.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Gen. Sing.	Ūn-ius	un-ius	un-ius
Dat. Sing.	Un-i	un-i	un-i

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like *bonus*.

- 75** ¹ Why is *mōdestiae* Gen? Ans. *governed by plūs*, Adj. used as Noun. Why is *sāpientiae* Gen.? *Because quam* (Par. 62) *takes the same Case after it as before it.* In translating *bēnēvolēntissimo* add *the* or *that*.

- 76** The Gen. after *pars*, *plūs*, *multum*, &c., is often called the *Partitive Genitive*.

- 77** ² For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They are all declined like *bōni*, -ae, -a: (1) *singūli*, *one a-piece*; (2) *bīni*, *two a-piece*; (3) *terni* or *trīni*; (4) *quāterni*; (5) *quīni*; (6) *sēni*; (7) *septēni*; (8) *octōni*; (9) *nōvēni*; (10) *dēni*; (11) *undēni*; (100) *centēni*; (101) *centēni singūli*; (200) *dūcēni*; (300) *trēcēni*; (400) *quadrīngēni*; (600) *sescēni*; (1,000) *singūla mīlia*.

78

2. **Dŭo**, *two*.3. **Trēs**, *three*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō	Trēs	triā
<i>Acc.</i>	Dŭ-os ¹	dŭ-as	dŭ-ō	Trēs ²	triā
<i>Gen.</i>	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	Trium	triūm
<i>Dat.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus	Tribus	triūbus
<i>Abl.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus	Tribus	triūbus

Ambo, *both*, is declined like **dŭo**.

79 The Cardinal Numbers, from *four* to a *hundred*, are indeclinable.

The compounds of a *hundred* are declined like **bŏnus**:
Of *two hundred men*, **Dŭcentōrum** hŏmīnum.

4. **Millē**, *thousand*.

80 The two uses of **millē** (*a*) Sing. (*b*) Plural, must be carefully distinguished:

a. Singular, an indeclinable *Adjective*:

Millē passūs, *a thousand paces*.

Millē passibus, *to a thousand paces, &c.*

b. Plural, a *Noun* of the Third Declension, having an Adjective agreeing with it in Number and Case, and governing another Noun in the Genitive:

<i>N.V. and Acc.</i>	Multa mīlia passuum, <i>many thousands of paces</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	Multōrum mīlium passuum, <i>of many thousands of paces</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	Multis mīlibus passuum, <i>to many thousands of paces</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	Multis mīlibus passuum, <i>by many thousands of paces</i> .

¹ Less commonly, **dŭ-o**.

² Less commonly, **trīs**.

81

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus
2	II	dūō, -æ, -o	sēcundus <i>or</i> altēr
3	III	trēs, -tria	tertīus
4	IV	quattūōr (quātūōr)	quartus
5	V	quinquē	quintus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septīmus
8	VIII	octō	octāvus
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertīus dēcīmus
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcīmus
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
20	XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus
21	XXI	ūnus et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī ūnus	unus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus prīmus
22	XXII	duō et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī duo	alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter
23	XXIII	trēs et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī trēs	tertīus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertīus
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētricēsīmus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīmus
30	XXX	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C	centum	centēsīmus
101	CI	centum et unus <i>or</i> centum unus	centēsīmus prīmus
136	CXXXVI	centum et trīginta sex <i>or</i> centum, trīginta sex	centēsīmus tricēsīmus sextus
200	CC	dūcentī, -æ, -ā	dūcentēsīmus
300	CCC	trēcentī, -æ, -ā	trēcentēsīmus

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -ă	quadringentēsīmus
500	I $\overline{\text{D}}$ or D	quingentī, -ae, -ă	quingentēsīmus
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -ă	sexcentēsīmus
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă	septingentēsīmus
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă	octingentēsīmus
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ă	nongentēsīmus
1,000	CI $\overline{\text{D}}$ or M	millē	millēsīmus
2,000	MM	duō miliă	bis millēsīmus
100,000	CCCI $\overline{\text{D}}$ $\overline{\text{D}}$	centum miliă	centiēs millēsīmus ¹

EXERCISE XXVII.

82 RULE.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb *est*, (*sunt*, *erat*, *erant*, &c.):

Balbus has, or had a book, i.e. Balbo est, or erat, there was a book for Balbus. liber.

1. Duos consules decem tribunorum constantia superat. 2. Militi veterrimo unus solum oculus et novem digiti erant.² 3. In legione Romana decem cohortes erant. 4. Mensis September quondam septimus (erat), nunc nonus anni mensis est.³ 5. Juvenis alteram et vicesimam partem patrimonii pauperibus dat. 6. Arbori centum et triginta sex poma tunc erant. 7. Agricola sedecim nuces, (32) nonaginta octo cerasa mulieri dat. 8. Centuria erat altera pars manipuli, sexta pars cohortis, legionis sexagesima (pars). 9. Legio trecentos equites habet. 10. In hostium exercitu sunt mille nongenti equites,

83 ¹ The number 500, I $\overline{\text{D}}$, is multiplied by 10 as often as $\overline{\text{D}}$ is subjoined:—

$$\text{I}\overline{\text{D}}\overline{\text{D}} = 10 \times 500 = 5,000.$$

$$\text{I}\overline{\text{D}}\overline{\text{D}}\overline{\text{D}} = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000.$$

In order to double I $\overline{\text{D}}$, or I $\overline{\text{D}}\overline{\text{D}}$, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—

$$\text{CI}\overline{\text{D}} = 2 \times 500 = 1,000.$$

$$\text{CCCI}\overline{\text{D}} = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000.$$

34 ² Why is *mīlīti* Dat? Ans., *Dat of the Possessive after est.*

³ *Jānūārius* and *September* are Adjectives agreeing with *mensis*. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, *mensis* being understood, e.g. *Febrūārīi* in sentence 11. See p. 229.

peditum tria millia. 11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars una et tricesima; Februarii, duodetricesima.¹ 12. Undetriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

1. *The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers.*
2. *The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand horse-soldiers.*
3. *The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to the wretched sailor.*
4. *There were on (in) the oak many thousand acorns.*
5. *On the sixth month of the year, in the seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans.*
6. *The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the third part of the thirtieth legion.*
7. *A century was the sixth part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion.*
8. *Once a legion had three thousand soldiers.*
9. *There were then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred horse-soldiers.*
10. *Once March was the first month of the year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth.*
11. *The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.*

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

- 85** The following adjectives (most of them capable of being used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like *bōnus*) in the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the Gen. and Dat.; but (like the Pronouns) they make the Gen. Sing. in *-ius* (*-īus*) or *-rīus*, and the Dat. Sing. in *-i*:

1. *-īus* (*-īus*).

Ūnus, one, one only.

Ullus, any.²

Nullus, no, not any, none.

Sōlus, alone.

Tōtus, whole.

2. *-rīus*.

Alter, Gen. *altērīus*, one (of two), the other (of two).

Ūter? *utr-īus?* which (of the two)?

Neuter, *neutr-īus*, neither.

- 86** *Ālius*, other, makes the Neut. Sing. in *-ud*. When twice used co-ordinately (i.e. so that *and*, *but*, &c., might be inserted), it means, in the Sing., *one . . . another*, or, in the Plur., *some . . . others*; and *alter . . . alter* mean, similarly, *one of the two . . . the other of the two*.

¹ Why is *Febrūārīi* (mensis) Gen.? Ans. governed by *pars* understood. You must repeat "*unus dies est pars*" with *dūōdētrīcēsīma*.

The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the Latin day of the month on his exercise.

87 ² *Ullus* is only used in (1) negative and (2) comparative sentences, or in (3) questions that expect a negative answer.

- (1) *He blames one thing, (and) praises another.* **Ālīd** culpat, **ālīd** laudat.
 (2) *Some overcome, (but) others are overcome.* **Ālīi** supērant, **ālīi** supērantur.
 (3) *He gives one of the two sisters a pear, the other an apple.* **Altēri** sōrōrum pīrum, **altēri** pōmum dat.

Ālius, other.				Nullus, no.		
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Singular.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ālius	ālīā	ālīd	Nullus	nullā	nullum
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Wanting</i>			[Nulle	nulla	nullum]
<i>Acc.</i>	Ālium	ālīam	ālīd	Nullum	nullam	nullum
<i>Gen.</i>	Ālius	ālīus	ālīus	Nullius	nullius	nullius
<i>Dat.</i>	Ālīi	ālīi	ālīi	Nulli	nulli	nulli
<i>Abl.</i>	Ālīo	ālīā	ālīo	Nullō	nullā	nullō

- 88** When **ālīus** is repeated *not co-ordinately* (see Par. 86), it is sometimes construed as follows:—

Some women praise some things, others praise others. **Mūliēres ālīae ālīa** laudant.

The Nom. of **ālīus** has **ī**, the Gen. has **ī**:

One man praises one man's conduct, another man another's. **Ālius ālīus** mōrēs laudat.

- 89** Note **alt-ērius**, but **ut-rīus**; so **asp-ēri**, but **pulch-ri**.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

- 90** Adjectives signifying *nearness, dearness pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites, govern the Dative.

1. Utri senum filia viam monstrat?¹
2. Neutrius exercitus dux timidus erat.
3. Uni soli tot militum dux coronam dat.²
4. Fratrum optimorum alter alterius filium valde amat.
5. Pater alteri filiorum equum validissimum, alteri ensem dat.
6. Mulieres aliae alia clamant.
7. Milites (88) alius agros, alius armenta et equos laudant.
8. Mater puellis dona diversa dat; alii dat aurum, alii argentum.
9. Nemini

91 ¹ **Sēnum** is *Gen.*, governed by **utri**. But the Gen. after **ūter**, neuter, **ūnus**, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a *Partitive Genitive*, because it implies a *part* belonging to a larger number or whole.

² What sort of a Gen. is **militum**? **Sōli** agrees with **ūni**, which (85) is used as a Pronoun.

molestus erat; nullius mores culpatus.¹ 10. Pater majora dona filiae quam ulli filiorum dat.² 11. Homo avarus est, neque (18) ulli carus.² 12. Utrique genti facile (34) erat belli mala vitare (36a).

1. Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?
 2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the citizens. 3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to the other praise. 4. To neither of the leaders was the cowardice of the armies pleasing. 5. Virtue is agreeable to one, pleasure (is agreeable) to another. 6. One (man's) constancy, another (man's) prudence, is praised by the leader. 7. To one alone of the women does the queen give praise. 8. He gives to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters. 9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; (but) no one had horses. 10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not dear to any of (her) sisters. 11. The butterfly lives one day.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>I, me, &c.</i>	<i>We, us, &c.</i>
Nom.	Egō	Nōs
Acc.	Mē	Nōs
Gen.	Mēi	Nostri ³ (-trum)
Dat.	Mihī	Nōbīs
Abl.	Mē	Nōbīs

2. SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>Thou, thee, &c.</i>	<i>Ye, you, &c.</i>
N. and V.	Tū	Vōs
	Tē	Vōs
	Tūi	Vestri ³ (-trum)
	Tībī	Vōbīs
	Tē	Vōbīs

3. THIRD PERSON.

To express *he, she, it*, use is made of the Adjective (1) **is**, m., *that (man)*, (2) **ea**, f., *that (woman)*, (3) **īd**, n., *that (thing)*.

92 ¹ Nullius, nullo are used for **nēmīnis** and **nēmīne**:

From **nēmo** let me never see
Nēmīnis and **nēmīne**.

93 ² In what sort of sentences is **ullus** used? Why is it used (87) here?
³ The Genitives Plural **nostrum** and **vestrum**, are used only in such phrases as "**nēmo nostrum, vestrum**, no one of us, of you; the wisest of us; some of us, &c. It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above, Par. 76, 91. **Nostri, vestri** are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing with a Noun understood: **mēmōr est nostri**, *He is mindful of our (business) i.e. of us*.

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>He</i>	<i>She</i>	<i>It</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>Those</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Īs	ěā	īd	Ei (ii)	eae	ěā
<i>Acc.</i>	Ěum	ěam	īd	Ěos	ěas	ěā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ěius	ēius	ēius	Ěōrum	ěārum	ěōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Ei	ei	ei	Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis)
<i>Abl.</i>	Ěo	ěā	ěo	Eis (iis)	eis (iis)	eis (iis) ¹

- 94 The Gen. *eius*, *eōrum*, is often used for *his*, *her*, *their*:
 “*liber eius*,” *his*, or *her book*; “*eōrum liber*,” *their book*.

4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Sē	<i>himself, herself, itself</i> ²	<i>themselves</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Sui	<i>of „ „ „</i>	<i>„</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Sibi	<i>to or for „ „</i>	<i>„</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Sē ²	<i>by (17), with, from „</i>	<i>„</i>

EXERCISE XXIX.

I (or *we*), *thou* (or *ye*), *he* (or *they*) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third *Persons*. All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the *Person* as well as the Number of its Subject:

<i>Person.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st <i>I love,</i>	(ēgō) ām-o	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>We</i> <i>Ye</i> <i>They</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>love,</i> </div> </div>	(nōs) āmā-mus
2nd <i>Thou lovest,</i>	(tū) āmā-s		(vōs) āmā-tis
3rd <i>He loves,</i>	(īs) āma-t		(ei) āma-nt

- 95 RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in *-at* (such as *sūpĕra-t*, *lauda-t*, &c.), are changed in the same way as *āmo* above: but *da-t* has the *a* short, *dāmus*, *dātis*.

¹ The quantity of the *e* in *ei*, *eis* is doubtful.

² Instead of *sē* there is sometimes used the emphatic form *sēsē*. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that *sē* is used in some instances for *he*, *him*. But, for the present, it will be only used for *himself*, *herself* &c. (never for *thysself*, *yoursself*).

96 **Ūnus** is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean *alone* or *only* :—

Only *Tullius* loves me.

Ūnus *Tullius* mē āmat.

1. Ego eum amo. 2. Tu eius fratrem amas. 3. Nos eorum fratrem amamus. 4. Vos eius sorores amatis. 5. Dona eius mihi uni (96) grata sunt. 6. Agri agricolarum eis grati sunt. 7. Mater ūlum amat, ego eam laudo. 8. Matri filius poma dat, ego eum laudo. 9. Poma talia mihi grata non sunt; ego porcis eā do. 10. Tu mihi et ei dona meliora quam eis das. 11. Vos eorum dona laudatis, earum (dona) culpatis. 12. Omnes sese amant. 13. Nemo non sibi benignus est.

1. *I love her, she loves me.* 2. *Thou lovest her¹ father.* 3. *Ye love their (94) gifts.* 4. *We love them, ye love us.* 5. *They give us better gifts than (they give) to him.* 6. *His patience is pleasing to me.* 7. *Their patience is pleasing to him.* 8. *Her constancy is pleasing to them.* 9. *No one blames himself.* 10. *His folly is pleasing to thee (96) alone.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

97 The Genitives **ēius**, **ēōrum**, are used for *his*, *her*, *their*; but the Genitives **mēi**, **tūi**, **nostrī**, **vestrī**, &c., are hardly ever used for *my*, *thy*, *our*, *your*, &c. For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Mēus	mēā	mēum	<i>my, mine</i>
Tūus	tūā	tūum	<i>thy, thine</i>
Noster	nostrā	nostrum	<i>our, ours</i>
Vester	vestrā	vestrum	<i>your, yours</i>
Sūus	sūā	sūum	<i>his own, her own, its own, their own</i>

98 **Eius** and **Sūus**. Note the difference. **Sūus** may be used (for the present) where you can insert *own* in the English.

- (1) *The mother loves her (own) son.* **Māter** filiūm **sūum** āmat.
- (2) *Gaius and his brother love me.* (See page 328.) **Gaius** et frātēr **ēius** mē āmant.
- (3) *I love her son.* **Āmo** **ēius** filiūm.

¹ Note the ambiguity in Latin: **eius** is used both for *her* and for *his*. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English *their* is removed by the Latin use of **ēōrum** and **ēārum**.

- 99 **Ēgo, tū, ĩs, nōs, &c.,** are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb: **āmās, thou lovest, āmāmus, we love, &c.**
- 99^a But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted: "**ēgo tē āmo, tū mē nōn āmās.**"

EXERCISE XXX.

- 100 A question is asked by **nōnne, num** or **-nē**; **-nē** is added to, and emphasizes, *the first word in the Sentence.*

Do you blame me?

Tūnē mē culpās?

Do you blame ME?

Mēnē culpās?

- 101 **Nōnnē?** (*i.e. nōn-nē?*) expects *yes*; **num?** expects *no*.¹

Does he not blame me?

Nōnnē mē culpāt?

He does not blame me, does he?

Num mē culpāt?

- 102 **RULE.**—Adjectives signifying *mindfulness, knowledge, or forgetfulness* and *ignorance*, take the Genitive.

1. Mercator sua laudat (32), aliena culpāt.
2. Puer vobis carus est; nonne sororem eius amatis?
3. Non omnes semper sui memores sunt.
4. Puellae patrem non habent: omnes eis benigni sunt.
5. Nonne omnes sibi benigni sunt, aliorum immemores?
6. Amici mei Tullium valde amant, et semper eius memores sunt.
7. Soror tua, O amice, patrem suum non amat.
8. Nos sumus vestri memores; sed nemo vestrum nostri memor est.²
9. Mater tua non est tibi carior quam meus pater mihi.³
10. Laudamus aliena (34), nostra non curamus.
11. Cur non agros vestros curatis, agricolae ignavissimi?
12. Tunc, O filiarum pessima, patris tui virtutem culpās?
13. Num tu, viae ignarus, viam aliis monstras?
14. Interdum sui immemor (16a) est.

1. ⁴ *Balbus is not mindful of us; but (67) we love him.*
2. *No one of us praises his folly.*
3. *The girl is dear to us; we love her*

¹ With **cūr?** *why?* **quīs?** *who?* and other interrogatives, **-nē, nōnne, num,** are omitted: *Why does he not blame?* **Cūr nōn culpāt?** When **nonne** and **num** are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.

² What case is **vestrum**, and why? Why not **vestri**? What case is **nostri**, and why? Why not **nostrum**? See Par. 93.

³ **Mihī** is Dat., governed by "**cārus (est)**" understood.

⁴ Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers., *his, her, their, &c.,* can have *own* added to it. Wherever *own* can be added, **sūus** is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to Pronouns not of the 3rd Pers. (*my own, your own*), which are to be rendered **mēus, &c.**

exceedingly. 4. *Thy sister does not love her father.* 5. *His brothers do not love their father.* 6. *Ye praise the fields of others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields).* 7. *Our sisters are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you.* 8. *Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way to us, O most foolish (men)?* 9. *Why dost thou blame thy father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue?* 10. *The generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.*

103

DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

1. *Illē, that (yonder); pl. those.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illūd	Illi	illae	illā
Acc.	Illum	illam	illūd	Illos	illas	illā
Gen.	Illius	illius	illius	Illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	Illi	illi	illi	Illis	illis	illis
Abl.	Illo	illā	illo	Illis	illis	illis

2. *Istē, that (near you, or of yours), often used contemptuously; declined like illē.*3. *Hic (-ī or -ī), this (near me); pl. these.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hōc	Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hos	has	haec
Gen.	Huius	huius	huius	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	His	his	his
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	His	his	his

4. *Ipsē, -self, himself, herself, itself; pl. themselves.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum ¹	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	Ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipso	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Note that *ipsē* differs from *illē* only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.

5. *Īdem*, the same (declined like *īs*; but *is-dem* is written *īdem*, *id-dem* is written *īdem*, and *m* before *-dem* is changed into *n*).

Singular.

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Īdem	ēādem	īdem	Īdem	ēādem	ēādem
Acc.	Eūdem	ēādem	dem	Eōdem	ēādem	ēādem
Gen.	Eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	Eōrundem	ēārundem	ēōrundem
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
Abl.	Ēodem	ēādem	ēodem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem ¹

EXERCISE XXXI.

- 104 [Do not, for the future, use *thou* or *ye* in translating the Exercises, unless the language is poetical. *You* in English is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered by *tu*, not by *vos*, unless the context shows that it is Plural].

- 105 *Ipsē* is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or Pronoun expressed.

- (1) *(She) herself loves me.* *Ipsa* mē āmat.
 (2) *I give this to you yourself,* *Tibi ipsi*, O filia, hōc do.
O daughter.
 (3) *The queen herself loves.* *Rēgīna ipsa* āmat.

1. Non *īdem* labor *eisdem* semper iucundus est. 2. Amicus iste fratrem suum non amat. 3. Huic equum, illi canem, isti asinum pigrum agricola dat. 4. In te ipso fons est laetitiae. 5. Non *īdem* donum agricolis et nautis gratum est. 6. Viti-osi vitium ipsum amant. 7. Homeri et Vergilii opera vobis nota sunt; ille² Graecus erat, hic Romanus. 8. Eorundem agricolarum agri non semper pariter fertiles sunt. 9. Num amicorum ipsorum mores culpatis? 10. Cur huic mulieri dona meliora quam ipsi matri tuae das? 11. Vestis eadem eidem mulieri non semper grata est. 12. Alexandri et Darii nomina nota sunt omnibus: illi laudem, huic misericordiam dāmus.² 13. Quis centum (31) annos vivit?
1. *That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to Balbus.* 2. *We all love the same native-land.* 3. *You, O friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies*

¹ For *eisdem* there is sometimes used *īdem*.

² (1) *Ille...* (2) *hic*, when thus used together, mean (1) *that which is furthest, first-mentioned...* (2) *that which is nearest, last-mentioned*: hence (1) *the former...* (2) *the latter*.

you. 4. *This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.*
 5. *The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons*
 (34). 6. *Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your*
own mother (trans. to your mother herself)? 7. *The children*
of the same parents are not always equally beautiful. 8. *The*
same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.
 9. *Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is*
the cause of these evils. 10. *Do you give to yourself the best*
gifts? 11. *Do you blame us the whole (85) day (long) (31)?*

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107

1. *Quī, which (man, woman, thing); who; that.*

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd		Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cuius	cuius	cuius		Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui		Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus	quībus	quībus ¹

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent, and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

- (1) *He whom all love, is praised by all.* **Quem** omnes āmant **īs** ab omnibus laudātur.
 (1) *What, or that which, some praise, others blame.* **Quōd** ālii laudant **īd** ālii culpant.
 (2) *The friends whom (or what friends) he has, he praises.* **Quōs** āmīcos hābet, laudat.²

108 RULE.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.³

You yourself, sister, who love others, do not love me. **Tū** ipsa, sōror, **quae** ālios āmās, **inē** nōn āmās.
You, brothers, who blame me, praise Tullius, who himself praises me. **Vōs**, frātres, **qui** mē culpātis, **Tullium** laudātis, **qui** ipse mē laudat.

109

¹ *Quībus* is sometimes contracted into *quīs*.

² Here the Antecedent is repeated, "quos amicos habet (eos amicos) laudat": and it may be said that *quos* agrees (like an Adj.) with the repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent "eos amicos" understood.

109a

³ N.B. In Gender, Number, and Person—but not necessarily in Case.

- 110** 2. The Interrogative Pronoun *quīs* differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: *quīs*? *who*? *quid*? *what*? The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

Who gives you this? *Quīs tībī hōc dat?*
What do you give me? *Quid mīhī dās?*

- 111** The Interrogative Adjective *quī* is the same as the Relative in every case:¹

What has he done? *What* *Quid fēcit?* *Quōd* *fācīnus*
misdeed has he committed? *commisit?*

EXERCISE XXXII.

- 112** RULE.—Adjectives signifying *nearness*, e.g. *vīcīnus*, *near* (*to*), *finītīmus*, *bordering on*, *proxīmus*, *nearest*, or *next* (*to*), are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis viam monstrat hunc alii jure (38) laudant. 2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur. 3. Te, O soror, quae haec dona mihi das, maxime laudo. 4. Quis hos milites ducit? Quod periculum eos terret? 5. Ego, O fratres, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus? 6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo. 7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat. 8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent? 9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipse non gustat.² 10. Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est. 11. Minae istae quibus agricolae timidi terrentur, militem non terrent. 12. In urbe, quae mari proxima erat, nautae plurimi erant: huc imperator suos (34) ducit. 13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.²

1. *You, O women, who* (108) *praise injustice* (i.e. *unjust-things*) *are paying* (trans. *giving*) *the penalty of your folly*. 2. *To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift*. 3. *Those whose* (113a) *conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise* (trans. *you rightly do not praise*). 4. *His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much*. 5. *Why do you err, (you) who point out the way to them?* 6. *What are you tasting, O boys? What fruit delights you?* 7. *We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the*

113 ¹ *Quīs* is sometimes an Adj., chiefly with persons: *quīs rex?* *what king?*
113a ² Note that the Relative in the Genit. precedes the Noun that governs it: "*quārum* fructum," not "*fructum quārum*."

nation next-to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men) into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers, are entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (30) time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends. 11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you? ¹

THE VERB.

114 Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conjugations. In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive Present ends in *-ĕre*, in the rest in *-re*. That part of the word which comes before *-re* or *-ĕre* is called the Stem, and the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

			<i>Act., Inf., Pres.</i>
1.	First, or	A Conjugation	<i>āmā-re, to love</i>
2.	Second, „	E „	<i>mōnē-re, to advise</i>
3. (a)	Third, „	Consonant „	<i>rĕg-ĕre, to rule</i>
(b)	„ „	U „	<i>minŭ-ĕre, to diminish</i>
4.	Fourth, „	I „	<i>audi-re, to hear</i>

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem : āmā-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. 1. Amo, I love, or am loving</i>	<i>Plur. 1. Am-āmŭs, We love, or are loving</i>
<i>2. Am-ās, thou lovest, or art loving</i>	<i>2. Am-ātīs, ye love, or are loving</i>
<i>3. Am-āt, he loves, or is loving.</i>	<i>3. Am-ant, they love, or are loving.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Am-ābo, I shall love</i>	<i>Pl. Am-ābīmŭs, We shall love</i>
<i>Am-ābīs, thou wilt love</i>	<i>Am-ābītīs, ye will love</i>
<i>Am-ābīt, he will love.</i>	<i>Am-ābunt, they will love.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing. Am-ābam, I was loving</i>	<i>Pl. Am-ābāmŭs, We were loving</i>
<i>Am-ābās, thou wast loving</i>	<i>Am-ābātīs, ye were loving</i>
<i>Am-ābāt, he was loving.</i>	<i>Am-ābant, they were loving.</i>

¹ For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-love, thou wast-wont-to-love, he used-to-love, &c.* It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvi , <i>I have loved,</i> <i>or I loved</i>	<i>Pl.</i> Am-āvīmūs , <i>We have loved,</i> <i>or we loved</i>
Am-āvistī , <i>thou hast loved,</i> <i>or thou lovedst</i>	Am-āvistīs , <i>ye have loved,</i> <i>or ye loved</i>
Am-āvīt , <i>he has loved,</i> <i>or he loved.</i>	Am-āvērunt , <i>they have</i> or ām-āvērē ¹ <i>loved, or</i> <i>they loved.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Am-āvēro , <i>I shall</i>	Am-āvērimūs , <i>We shall</i>
Am-āvērīs , <i>thou wilt</i>	Am-āvēritīs , <i>ye will</i>
Am-āvērīt , <i>he will</i>	Am-āvērint , ² <i>they will</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Am-āvēram , <i>I had loved</i>	Am-āvērāmūs , <i>We had loved.</i>
Am-āvērās , <i>thou hadst loved</i>	Am-āvērātīs , <i>ye had loved</i>
Am-āvērāt , <i>he had loved.</i>	Am-āvērant , <i>they had loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Am-ā , <i>Love thou.</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-ātē , <i>Love ye.</i>
---	---

FUTURE TENSE.³

<i>S.</i> Am-āto , <i>Thou must love</i>	<i>P.</i> Am-ātōtē , <i>Ye must love</i>
Am-āto , <i>he must love.</i>	Am-anto , <i>they must love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.⁴

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-em , <i>I may love</i>	Am-ēmūs , ⁵ <i>We may love</i>
Am-ēs , <i>thou mayst love</i>	Am-ētīs , <i>ye may love</i>
Am-ēt , <i>he may love.</i>	Am-ent , <i>they may love.</i>

116 ¹ As in English *v* is omitted in *o'er*, *ne'er*, so in Latin **-vi-** and **-ve-** are sometimes omitted where no ambiguity would be caused. Thus **āmāvisti**, **āmāvērunt**, &c. become **āmasti**, **āmārunt**, &c; but **āmāvimus**, **āmāvēre**, cannot be contracted into **āmāmus**, **āmāre**, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the Pres. Indic. and Pres. Infin.

² The usual pronunciation is **āmāverīs**, **āmāverīmus**; but the *i* is sometimes long.

117 ³ The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in **-o** are generally reserved for legal language: see Par. 129. *Must* is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 168.

118 ⁴ This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings *I may love* and *I might love* are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction **ūt** (*that*).

118a ⁵ **Amēmūs**, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us love*.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ārem, <i>I might love</i>	Am-ārēmūs, <i>We might love</i>
Am-ārēs, <i>thou mightst love</i>	Am-ārētīs, <i>ye might love</i>
Am-ārēt, <i>he might love.</i>	Am-ārent, <i>they might love.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-āvērim, <i>I may</i>	Am-āvērimūs, <i>We may</i>
Am-āvērīs, <i>thou mayst</i>	Am-āvērītīs, <i>ye may</i>
Am-āvērīt, <i>he may</i>	Am-āvērint, <i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-āvissem, <i>I should</i>	Am-āvissēmūs <i>We should</i>
Am-āvissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>	Am-āvissētīs, <i>ye would</i>
Am-āvissēt, <i>he would</i>	Am-āvissent, <i>they would</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.¹

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	Am-ārē, <i>to love.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.	Am-āvissē, <i>{ to have loved.</i>
FUTURE.	Am-ātūrūs <i>{ to be about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Am-andī, <i>of loving</i>
Dat. Am-andō, <i>for loving</i>
Acc. Am-andum, <i>the loving</i>
Abl. Am-andō, <i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

Am-ātum, ² <i>to love.</i>
Am-ātū, ² <i>in loving.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Am-ans, -antis, &c., <i>[loving.]</i>
FUTURE. Am-ātūrūs (<i>ā, um</i>), <i>[about to love.]</i>

¹ This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinitive*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood*.

² The Supines are really Nouns used *only in the Acc. and Abl.*; (1) the Supine in *-um* after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in *-u* with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence *āmātum* can never be used (as *amāre* is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem : mōnē.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eo, ¹	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	Mōn-ēbimūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advis- ing.²</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised, or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised, or -uērē, { or they advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i>	Mōn-uērīmūs, <i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mōn-uērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>		Mōn-uērītīs, <i>ye will</i>	
Mōn-uērīt, <i>he will</i>		Mōn-uērint, <i>they will</i>	
} <i>advised.</i>		} <i>advised.</i>	

¹ The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that a vowel before another vowel is short: see Appendix VII., p. 230.

² The Imperf. also means *I used-to-advise, thou wast-wont-to-advise, he used-to-advise, &c.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mõn-uëram, <i>I had advised</i>	Mõn-uëramüs, <i>We had advised</i>
Mõn-uërās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mõn-uërātīs, <i>ye had advised</i>
Mõn-uërāt, <i>he had advised.</i>	Mõn-uërant, <i>they had advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mõn-ē, <i>Advise thou.</i>	Mõn-ētē, <i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mõn-ēto, <i>Thou must advise</i>	Mõn-ētōtē, <i>Ye must advise</i>
Mõn-ēto, <i>he must advise.</i>	Mõn-ento, <i>they must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mõn-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	Mõn-eāmüs, <i>We may advise</i> ¹
Mõn-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mõn-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mõn-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mõn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mõn-ērem, <i>I might advise</i>	Mõn-ērēmüs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mõn-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mõn-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mõn-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mõn-ērent, <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mõn-uërim, <i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>	Mõn-uërimüs, <i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mõn-uëris, <i>thou mayst</i>		Mõn-uëritīs, <i>ye may</i>	
Mõn-uërit, <i>he may</i>		Mõn-uërint, <i>they may</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mõn-uissēm, <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	Mõn-uissēmüs, <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mõn-uissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Mõn-uissētīs, <i>ye would</i>	
Mõn-uissēt, <i>he would</i>		Mõn-uissent, <i>they would</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised</i>

¹ **Mõneāmus,** without a Conjunction, generally means *let us advise.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	} Mõn-ērē , <i>to advise.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.	
	} Mõn-uissē , { <i>to have</i> <i>advised.</i>
FUTURE.	
	} Mõn-ītūrūs { <i>to be</i> <i>about to</i> essē , <i>advise.</i>

GERUND.

Gen.	Mõn-endī , <i>of advising</i>
Dat.	Mõn-endō , <i>for advising</i>
Acc.	Mõn-endum , <i>the advising</i>
Abl.	Mõn-endō , <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

Mõn-itum ,	<i>to advise.</i>
Mõn-itū ,	<i>in advising.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Mõn-ens, -entis, &c. , <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE.	Mõn-ītūrūs (ā, um), <i>about to advise.</i>

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rěgo, rexī, rectum, rěgērē,—*to rule.* Stem : **rěg-**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rěg-o , <i>I rule, or am</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>	Rěg-īmūs , <i>We rule, or are</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>
Rěg-is , <i>thou rulest, or art</i>		Rěg-ītis , <i>ye rule, or are</i>	
Rěg-it , <i>he rules, or is</i>		Rěg-unt , <i>they rule, or are</i>	

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rěg-am , <i>I shall rule</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>	Rěg-ēmūs , <i>We shall rule</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>
Rěg-ēs , <i>thou wilt rule</i>		Rěg-ētis , <i>ye will rule</i>	
Rěg-ēt , <i>he will rule.</i>		Rěg-ent , <i>they will rule.</i>	

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rěg-ēbam , <i>I was ruling</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>	Rěg-ēbāmūs , <i>We were ruling</i>	} <i>ruling.</i>
Rěg-ēbās , <i>thou wast ruling</i>		Rěg-ēbātis , <i>ye were ruling</i>	
Rěg-ēbāt , <i>he was ruling.</i>		Rěg-ēbant , <i>they were ruling.</i> ¹	

¹ The Imperf. also means *I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule, &c.*

4 PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or we ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt, or rex-ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

5 FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ěro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	Rex-ěrimūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-ěrīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-ěrītīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-ěrīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-ěrīnt,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ěram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	Rex-ěramūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-ěrās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	Rex-ěrātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-ěrāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-ěrant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rěg-ě,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	Rěg-ītě,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
--------	-------------------	----------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rěg-īto,	<i>Thou shalt or must rule</i>	Rěg-ītōtě,	<i>Ye shall or must rule</i>
Rěg-īto,	<i>he shall or must rule.</i>	Rěg-ūnto,	<i>they shall or must rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rěg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	Rěg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule¹</i>
Rěg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rěg-ātīs,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rěg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rěg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rěg-ěrem,	<i>I might rule</i>	Rěg-ěremūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rěg-ěrēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rěg-ěrētīs,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rěg-ěrēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rěg-ěrent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ěrim,	<i>I may</i>	Rex-ěrimūs,	<i>We may</i>
Rex-ěrīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Rex-ěrītīs,	<i>ye may</i>
Rex-ěrīt,	<i>he may</i>	Rex-ěrīnt,	<i>they may</i>
		} <i>have ruled.</i>	
		} <i>have ruled.</i>	

¹ Rěgāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us rule.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-issem , <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>ruled.</i>	Rex-issēmūs , <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>ruled.</i>
Rex-issēs , <i>thou wouldst</i>		Rex-issētīs , <i>ye would</i>	
Rex-issēt , <i>he would</i>		Rex-issent , <i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.	
PRES. and IMPERF. }	Rĕg-ĕrĕ , <i>to rule.</i>	Gen. Rĕg-endī ,	<i>of ruling</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF. }	Rex-issĕ , { <i>to have</i> } <i>ruled.</i>	Dat. Rĕg-endō ,	<i>for ruling</i>
FUTURE. {	Rec-tūrūs { <i>to be</i> } <i>about</i>	Acc. Rĕg-endum ,	<i>the ruling</i>
	essĕ , { <i>to rule.</i>	Abl. Rĕg-endō ,	<i>by ruling.</i>

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Rec-tum ,	<i>to rule.</i>	PRESENT. Rĕg-ens, -entis, &c. ,	<i>[ruling.]</i>
Rec-tū ,	<i>in ruling.</i>	FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs (ă, um) ,	<i>[about to rule.]</i>

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audivī, auditum, audirĕ,—*to hear.* Stem : **audī-**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-io , <i>I hear, or am</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>	Aud-īmūs , <i>We hear, or are</i>	} <i>hearing</i>
Aud-īs , <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		Aud-ītīs , <i>ye hear, or are</i>	
Aud-īt , <i>he hears, or is</i>		Aud-iunt , <i>they hear, or are</i>	

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iam ,	<i>I shall hear</i>	Aud-iēmūs ,	<i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs ,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	Aud-iētīs ,	<i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt ,	<i>he will hear.</i>	Aud-ient ,	<i>they will hear</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iĕbam ,	<i>I was hearing</i>	Aud-iĕbāmūs ,	<i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iĕbās ,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	Aud-iĕbātīs ,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iĕbāt ,	<i>he was hearing.</i>	Aud-iĕbant ,	<i>they were hearing.</i> ¹

¹ The Imperf. also means, *I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear, &c.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivī,	<i>I have heard, or I heard</i>	Aud-ivīmūs,	<i>We have heard, or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī,	<i>thou hast heard, or thou heardst</i>	Aud-ivistīs,	<i>ye have heard, or ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt,	<i>he has heard, or he heard.</i>	Aud-ivērunt,	<i>they have heard, or -ivērē, } or they heard.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>		Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>	
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he will</i>		Aud-ivērint,	<i>they will</i>	

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard</i>	Aud-ivērāmūs,	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs,	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt,	<i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-ī,	<i>Hear thou.</i>	Aud-ītē,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-ito,	<i>Thou must hear</i>	Aud-itōtē,	<i>Ye must hear</i>
Aud-ito,	<i>he must hear.</i>	Aud-iunto,	<i>they must hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear¹</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātīs,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētīs,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>		Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye may</i>	
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he may</i>		Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>	

¹ Audiāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us hear*.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Audīvissem , <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>heard.</i>	Aud-īvissemūs , <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i> } <i>heard.</i>
Aud-īvisseēs , <i>thou wouldst</i>		Aud-īvisseētis , <i>ye would</i>	
Aud-īvisseēt , <i>he would</i>		Aud-īvisseēt , <i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.	
PRES. and IMPERF.	Aud-īrē , <i>to hear.</i>	Gen. Aud-iendī , <i>of hearing</i>	
PERF. and PLUPERF.	Aud-īvisse , { <i>to have</i> } <i>heard.</i>	Dat. Aud-iendō , <i>for hearing</i>	
FUTURE.	Aud-ītūrūs { <i>to be</i> } <i>about</i> essē , { <i>to hear.</i>	Acc. Aud-iendum , <i>the hearing</i>	
		Abl. Aud-iendō , <i>by hearing.</i>	

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Aud-ītum , <i>to hear.</i>		PRESENT. Aud-iens , -entis , [&c., <i>hearing.</i>	
Aud-ītū , <i>in hearing.</i>		FUTURE. Aud-ītūrūs (ā , um), [<i>about to hear.</i>	

121 In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of **v** causes the following

CONTRACTED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Audii	Audiimus	Audiero	Audieram
Audiisti (audisti)	Audiistis (audistis)	Audieris , &c.	Audieras
Audiit	Audiērunt	Audierit , &c.	Audierat , &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.		PERFECT.
Audissem (audissem)	Audissemus (audissemus)	Audierim
Audiisses (audisses)	Audiissetis (audissetis)	Audieris
Audiisset (audisset)	Audiissent (audissent)	Audierit , &c.

INFINITIVE-PERFECT.

Audiisse (audisse).

THE LATIN PERFECT.

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table:

Capto, *I catch.*

	Simple or Indefinite.	Incomplete.	Complete.
Present.	<i>I catch</i> capto	<i>I am catching</i> capto	<i>I have caught</i> CAPTĀVI ¹
Future.	<i>I shall catch</i> captābo	<i>I shall be catching</i> captābo	<i>I shall have caught</i> captāvero
Past.	<i>I caught</i> CAPTĀVI	<i>I was catching</i> captābam	<i>I had caught</i> captāveram ²

122 The Latin Perfect, captāvi, has to express two English Tenses, and though it is always called "Perfect," *i.e.* complete, it is really not always Perfect or Complete, but :

1. Sometimes Complete Present, captāvi, *I have caught.*
2. Sometimes Simple Past, captāvi, *I caught.*

¹ That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "*I have caught this fish*," which means "*I have* (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket," &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is a Present and not a Past Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

² Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching*, *I shall have been catching*, *I had been catching*, and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.

These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with *have*," (2) "the Perfect without *have*."

EXERCISE XXXIII.

123 APPOSITION.—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are *placed together* without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be *in Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

124 When a *Noun* is in Apposition to a *Name*, the *Name* stands *second in English*, but *first in Latin*.

*The renowned general Balbus
overcomes the enemy.*

*I will give a book to the indus-
trious boy Tullius.*

**Balbus, imp̄rator clārissī-
mus** (70), hostem sup̄erat.

Tullio, pūero dīligentissīmo,
librum dōnābo.

125 "IF" WITH ENGLISH PRESENT often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect :

I will give it if he asks.

Dābo sī rōgābit (or -āverit).

1. Sidera iter nautis monstrabant. 2. Hieme nautae aestatem laudabunt. 3. Dābo librum ei, si rogabit.¹ 4. Nonne puellam diligentem laudabitis? 5. Qui nos culpatis, nonne vos ipsos emendatis? 6. Cur me vituperabatis (32), vos ipsos laudabatis? 7. Agricola agrum, equum militi donabimus. 8. Judici, viro justissimo,² rex injustus inimicus erat. 9. Tulliae, puellae optimae, cur non praemium donas? 10. Nemo Germanorum, gentis fortissimae, tam pravos mores laudat.³

1. *You, O women, who praised (108) injustice (34), will rightly pay the penalty.* 2. *To you, O sister, who blamed your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift.* 3. *Those whose morals are depraved, you were right in not praising (trans. you rightly did not praise).* 4. *His excellent mother (trans. his mother, a most excellent woman), who loved you exceedingly, praised you too-much.* 5. *Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-*

125a ¹ The Latin Future, after sī, must be translated by English Present.

126 ² Lit. *the judge, a very just man*, but in English we say *the very just judge*, or, more commonly (70), *the just judge*. Why is vīro Dat.? Ans. *Dat. in Apposition with iūdicī*. Why is gentis (Sent. 10) Genitive?

126a ³ In Apposition, write the literal English first and the idiomatic English afterwards: e.g. "Germanis, genti fortissimae" lit., *to the Germans, a very brave race*, i.e., *to the brave race of the Germans*. N.B.—Two Nouns in Apposition need not be of the same Number.

selves often err? 6. *We used to praise the conduct of the* (126) *brave centurion Tullius.* 7. *I shall not punish the boy if he improves* (125) *his conduct.* 8. *They will not err if the leader points out the way to them.*

EXERCISE XXXIV.¹

127 If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.

1. Si tu et frater tuus peccaveritis (125a), leges vos castigabunt.
2. Judicem, quia male judicaverat, ego et frater meus graviter culpavimus.
3. Piscator et nauta, qui iter militibus antea monstraverant, jam ipsi erraverunt.
4. Milites ferro ignique agros regis sui vastaverunt.
5. Hieme, si venti flaverint, nautae mare formidabunt.
6. Cur Tullium, hominem innocentissimum, castigavistis?
7. Agricolae stultissimi aestate calorem, hieme frigus culpaverunt.
8. Rex militibus, indignis dono (28), equos pulcherrimos donaverat.
9. Nonne vobis haec dona ego et Tullius donavimus?
10. Graeci Trojanos equo ligneo, dono pernicioso (126a) superaverunt.
11. Qui virtutem maxime simulavere, ei jam maxime erravere.
12. Quos quondam castigâstis, ei iterum peccârunt.

- ¹1. *You and I have presented excellent gifts to his mother.*²
2. *Why did the unjust judge Tullius* (126) *chastise the innocent Balbus* (trans. *Balbus, a most innocent man*)?³
3. *In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat.*
4. *The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed.*
5. *If you overcome* (trans. *shall have overcome*) *the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you.*
6. *Did* (127b) *not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus?*
7. *The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently*
8. *Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse* (trans. *a wooden horse, a most destructive gift*)?
9. *Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err?*
10. *You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.*

¹ For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

² In English we say "you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, "Ego et tu."

³ The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"; but "*did* you blame?" "you *did* not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.

THE INFINITIVE.

128 The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb :

*To err is human.
Boys like to jump.*

Errāre (nom.) *humānum* est.
Puēri saltāre (acc.) *āmant*.

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

*The woman desires to get wealth.
To have gained fame honourably
is sweet.*

Mūlier divitiās pārāre optat.
Fāmam hōnēstē pārāvisse
dulcē (34) est.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est). 2. Quis non divitias comparare optat? 3. Saltare dulce est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum. 4. Aestate omnes nare amamus.¹ 5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare. 6. Amicum amare praesentem dulce est; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.¹ 7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueris; senibus peccavisse est acerbissimum. 8. Pericula superare saepe durum est; superasse semper dulcissimum est.
1. *It is easier to blame than to praise.* 2. *To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer?* 3. *It is sad for an old man to have sinned.* 4. *To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels.* 5. *Most men desire to get gold and silver.* 6. *You and I love to walk by night; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day.* 7. *It is very easy to swim; it is very difficult to swim well.* 8. *To have erred is sad; to err is sadder.*

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129 The word for *not* in commands is *nē*. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, *except in legal forms*. Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

¹ *Omnes* agrees with "*nos*" understood.

² *Absentem* agrees with "*amicum*" understood

RULE.—Use *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.¹

Singular.

Do not love.

Let him not love.

Nē āmāvēris.

Nē āmet.

Plural.

Do not love.

Let them not love.

Nē āmāvērītis.

Nē āment.

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without *nē*, in an Imperative sense :

Let us (not) love.

(Nē) āmēmus.

Let him amend his conduct.

Ēmendet mōres.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. Emendate mores vestros. 2. Obtempera, O puer, patri. 3. Ne fontes poenam vitent. 4. Ne castigaveritis insontem; ne mortuum culpaveritis. 5. Huic magistratui omnes cives obtemperanto. 6. Amemus amicos, inimicos ne vitupere-mus. 7. Præceptor discipulos verberibus paucis castigato. 8. Regem, si injustus est, ne tu laudaveris. 9. Virgines Vestales ignem curanto. 10. Judicem justum laudā; in-justum culpā, sed ne vituperaveris.

1. *Let us love absent friends.* 2. *Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us.* 3. *Take-care-of his children, O friends; do not blame the dead.* 4. *Do not appease the gods, O foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds.* 5. *Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana.* 6. *Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good.* 7. *Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment.* 8. *Let us not blame those-who-are-worthy (i.e. the worthy) of (28) praise (5a).*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—I.

(Expressing purpose.)

- 130** The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

¹ The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is some-times called the Conjunctive; and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibi-tion by *nōli* with the Infinitive, see Par. 169.

131 In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by *ut*; *that* . . . *not*, by *nē*.

132 The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present*, after (a) *Pres.* (*whether Simple or Complete*); after (b) *Future Indic.*; and after (c) *Imperative*.

(2) *Past*, after *Past Tenses*:

- | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| 1. (a) <i>I punish, or have punished</i> ¹ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he may} \end{array} \right.$ | (a) Castīgo , or Castīgāvi | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{puērum ut} \\ \text{mōres ēmendet.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| (b) <i>I shall punish</i> | | (b) Castīgābo | |
| (c) <i>Punish</i> | | (c) Castīgā | |
| 2. (a) <i>I punished</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he might} \end{array} \right.$ | (a) Castīgāvi | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{puērum ut} \\ \text{mōres} \\ \text{ēmendāret.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| (b) <i>I was punishing</i> | | (b) Castīgābam | |
| (c) <i>I had punished</i> | | (c) Castīgāvērā | |
- conduct.

133 CAUTION.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word **castīgāvi** cannot be ascertained until we see whether it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj. If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished*; if by the Imperf., *I punished*.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret. 2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in eā quattuor millia civium habitarent. 3. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocent. 3a. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocarent. 4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet. 5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulsetis. 6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent. 7. Castīgavi te ut mores emendes. 8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret. 9. Rex judicem injustum capite multavit ut ceteri iudices rectē judicent.² 10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet; Tullium heri (*adv.*) casti-

¹ *I have punished* is really a (complete) Present Tense: Par. 122, note.

² See *cāput* in Vocab.: *cāpīte* may be parsed as *Abl. of Instr.*, as it is here used to denote *the punishment of death*.

gavi ne iterum peccaret. 11. Germanos, gentem ferocissimam (126a), armis propulsate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equos aliis arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrent.

1. *Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time.* 2. *The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err.* 3. *We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err.* 4. *Our (men) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dwell in it.* 5. *Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter.* 6. *We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy.* 7. *We chastised the boy that he might improve his (98) conduct.* 8. *He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her.* 9. *Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)?* 10. *He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(Expressing a Dependent Question.)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English *may* or *might*; we now come to idioms where the ordinary English *Indicative* has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

- 134** 1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker :

Does he love me ?

Num mē āmat ?

Does he not love me ?

Nōnne mē āmat ?

- 135** 2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb) :

I will ask { *whether he loves me.*
whether he does not love me.

Interrogābo { num mē āmet.
 nōnnē mē āmet.

- 136** RULE.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above

(132), that *Present Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Present Tenses of the Indicative, and Past Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Past Tenses of the Indicative.*

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|------------------------|----------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Ask | { | (a) whether they love, | Interrogā | { | (a) num mē |
| I ask | | or are loving me. | Interrogō | | āmēt. |
| I will ask | | (b) whether they loved | Interrogābo | | (b) num mē |
| I have asked | | me ¹ | Interrogāvi | | āmāverint. ² |
| | { | (a) whether they | | { | |
| | | loved, or | | | |
| 2. I was asking | | were lov- | Interrogābam | | (a) num mē |
| I asked | | ing me. | Interrogāvi | | āmārent. |
| I had asked | { | (b) whether they | Interrogāveram | { | (b) num mē |
| | | had loved | | | āmāvissent. ² |
| | | me. | | | |

137 (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or “Perf. with *have*”—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

138 (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or “Perf. without *have*” (i.e. Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

139 **Quīdem** (67) *on the one hand*, is often followed by the *and* enclitic **vērō**, *however, but yet* (to be distinguished from **139a** **vērē**, *truthfully*). **Ēquīdem**, a form of **quīdem**, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean *I on the one hand*, i.e. *I at all events, I for my part*.

A. 1. Hodie quidem paremus (118a) arma; cras vero hostem propulsemus. 2. Tu quidem me interrogas quid fecerim; ego vero nihil respondeo. 3. Balbo quidem omnia monstravi; tibi autem nihil. 4. Quaero cur fratrum alterum quidem laudes, alterum autem culpes. 5. Equidem hoc affirmo, tu vero unus (96) negas. 6. Interrogat cur mihi quidem multa des, Tullio autem nihil.

¹ A common error is to write “āmārent,” in 1. b., “because the English is not *have loved*, but *loved*.” but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents *loved*, as well as *have loved*.

139b ² Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent *Question* by *may, might, could, should, &c.*; in a Dependent *Question*, it must be translated by the English Indicative.

140 Quisque, quaeque, quodque (*pron. form quicque*), each, often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote all :

All the worst men deny this.

This is denied by all the best citizens.

Pessimus quisque hoc negat.

Hoc ab **optimō quōque** civium negatur.

B. 1. Interrogabimus num miles fidem servaverit.¹ 2. Equidem rogo nonne puer vera narraverit; tu vero nihil affirmas. 3. Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (*or aedificassent*). 4. Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num hostis in eo loco insidias paret. 5. Miles centurionibus non renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (*were preparing*). 6. Valde dubito num nuntius verā narraverit. 7. Sapientissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera narrarent. 8. Nonne rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit? 9. Explorabamus num hostes huc properarent. 10. Ne dubitemus, O amici, num hostes arma parent. 11. Si nobis renuntiabitis quo in loco hostes insidias parent, fortissimum quemque civium convocabimus ut eos propulsemus. 12. Rogavit patrem num domum (139b) pararet ut nos in ea habitarem.

1. *I for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our territories; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true things).* 2. *He asked whether the enemy took the city by storm.*² 3. *Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the enemy is hastening hither.* 4. *Will you not ask all (140) the bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms?* 5. *Call-together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste our lands.* 6. *I had asked your father whether he had built a home that your brothers might dwell in it.* 7. *I doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands.* 8. *Let us explore whether the enemy is hastening hither.* 9. *You were asking the boy whether he had thus sinned.* 10. *They asked whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.*

140a ¹ Note that in this and similar sentences (where the Perf. Subj. follows the Pres. or Fut. Indic.) there is often an ambiguity. It may mean "whether the soldier kept his word," or "whether the soldier has kept his word." Both translations should be given.

140b ² Here, for *took*, may be read *had taken*; and therefore the Pluperf. Subj. may be used. N.B.—Whenever, after a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the English Simple Past, e.g. *took*, may be replaced by the English Complete Past, e.g. *had taken*, the Pluperf. Subj. may be used in Latin. The Imperf. Subj. might mean *was taking*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

141 *Not even* is **nē...quidem** : but **nē** must be separated from **quidem** by the word which *even* modifies :

(1) *Not even you will deny this.* **Nē** tū **quidem** hōc nēgābis.¹

(2) *Not even the smallest tree.* **Nē** mīnīma **quidem** arbor.¹

141a The Latin for *even* (without a negative) is **vēl**, or **ētiam**, coming before the word emphasized.

This is clear even to the blind, Haec **ētiam** caecis āperta ;
easy even for boys. haec **vēl** pūeris faciīlia.²

142 RULE.—Some Verbs signifying (1) *pleasing, obeying, helping*, (2) *displeasing, disobeying, and harming*, take the Dative.

1. Dolere inutile est. 2. Graviter dolebam quod (*conj.*) tu, O fili, pārentibus tuis non pāres. 3. Pueri patribus pārento. 4. Leges justae bonis civibus placebunt. 5. Milites ducem timebant, qui plurimos eorum (91) minis et suppliciiis crudelissimis terruerat. 6. Nunc quidem monemus ; mox vero, verberibus nisi pārebis, te coercebimus. 7. Ne tu, senex benevolentissime, pessimum exemplum pueris (129) praeberis. 8. Epaminondas exemplum optimum omnibus imperatoribus praeuit. 9. Cui non avium cantus placet, eum ne cithara quidem movebit. 10. Cur puellam eam minis terretis, quam nemo docuit, cui nemo exemplum bonum praeuit ? 11. Senioribus ne displicueris ; patri matrique obtempera. 12. Alexander, victor clarissimus, Poro, Indorum regi, veniam dedit.³

1. *To teach is more useful than to weep.* 2. *Why did you not set a better example to your son ?* 3. *Do not terrify this girl with threats.* 4. *If you obey your parents, your children will obey you.* 5. *Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick (men).* 6. *Do not displease your mother, O boys ; obey (your) elders, who advise you well.* 7. *You, who terrify others, yourself fear all things.* 8. *He does not obey even his own* (141, 2)

142 ¹ N.B.—(a) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use **nē** with the Indicative Mood. (b) **Quidem**, without **nē**, never means *even*. (c) In translating **nē...quidem**, be careful to put *even* before the word that precedes **quidem** ; *not even you, not even the smallest.*

142d ² **Sunt**, (or **est**), is often omitted where the omission causes no ambiguity.

³ Why is Pōro Dat. ? Why is rēgi ? See Par. 123.

father. 9. Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised. 10. You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.

EXERCISE XL.

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in **-vi** instead of **-ui**: but the parts of Verb *after* u and i are always the same, e.g. **dēleo, dēlēvi**:

<i>Perf.</i>	mōnu-	} -i, -isti, -it, &c.
	dēlēv-	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	mōnu-	} -eram, -eras, -erat, &c.
	dēlēv-	
<i>2nd. Fut.</i>	mōnu-	} -ero, -eris, -erit, &c.
	dēlēv-	

1. Interrogabo civem nonne legibus pareat. 2. Interrogavi regis filium cur non melius exemplum ceteris militibus praeberet. 3. Coerce linguam istam ne forte tibi noceat. 4. Sapientes corpus exercebunt ut mentem sanam habeant. 5. Renuntia ei num milites ejus agricolas nostros terruerint. 6. Interrogavi fortissimum quemque (140) militum nonne hostes urbem jam delevisent. 7. Num dulce est olim multa habuisse, nunc habere nihil? 8. Qui legibus parebit eum leges non terrebunt. 9. Ne tu invidiam timueris; sed virtute malevolos, invidos modestia coerce. 10. Plurimum pecuniae eidem mulieri donavit quam antea minis terruerat.¹ 11. Barbari tantam urbem habent quantam ipsi non habemus.² 12. Dux tantum pecuniae donabat militibus quantum rogaverunt. 13. Interrogabo adolescentem cur hesternae nocte tam crudelibus minis fratrem meum terruerit.
1. Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue. 2. Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents? 3. Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him. 4. Why do you not obey him to whom you owe so-much? 5. Ask whether the young-man whose (113a) death is now known to us was older than my brother. 6. I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him. 7. I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him. 8. Let us give rewards to all (140) the bravest (trans. each most

¹ Why is **pecūniae** Gen.? See Par. 71, and add **tantum** and **quantum** as taking Partitive Genitives.

² So great a city as we ourselves have not, i.e. a greater city than we have.

brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest.
 9. Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so large a sum (trans. so-much) of money? 10. The unjust king Balbus had (86) one (man's) silver, another (man's) lands, another (man's) cattle.

EXERCISE XLI.

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and hence :

143 RULE.—Verbs of *asking, commanding, advising, and striving*, are followed by *ūt* or *nē* with the Subjunctive.¹

Take care to teach him, i.e. in order that you may teach him. Cūrā ūt eum dōcēās.

143a *He asked me not to hasten.* Rōgāvit mē nē prōpērārem.

N.B.—As the translation of English *to* by the Latin Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well to recollect that the English Infinitive is *never to be rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where (128) it is the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
3. Admonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper parere-mus.
4. Rogabo adolescentem ut junioribus exemplum melius praebeat.
5. Ne optimus quidem praeceptorum omnia docebit.
6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam coerceat.
7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes!
8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen erres.
9. Orabat explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam darem.
10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
11. Imperavit dux militibus ne mercatorem detinerent.

1. Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms.
2. He gave-orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king.
3. Our parents advised us to await the arrival of friends.
4. Tullius asked me to teach his (98) children.
5. I beg you to grant

¹ This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:

“With ask, command, advise, and strive,
 By ut translate Infinitive.”

pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. Have you not again and again advised that fellow (iste) to restrain his tongue? 7. If you teach (125), take care to teach well. 8. Take care that you do not displease those whom you are bound (debeo) to please.¹ 9. On the fourth day we gave-orders to him to call-together three thousand (80b) soldiers.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

- 144** Verbs of *preventing* are followed by *quo-mīnus* (*by-which-the-less*) and the Subjunctive.

I have hindered the man from speaking, lit. by-which-the-less he may speak. Hōmīnem prōhibūi quōmīnus dicat.

- 145** The words *nōn est dūbium quīn*, *it is not doubtful but that*, i.e. *there is no doubt that*, are followed by the Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

There is no doubt that he said this (N.B. not may have said). Nōn dūbium est quīn haec dixērit.

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. *Like follows like*: (see Par. 137).

There was no doubt that he feared (N.B. not would fear). Nōn dūbium ērat quīn timeret.²

EXERCISE XLII.

- 146** Et sometimes means *even* or *also*:

"Good morning." "Good "Salvē," (lit. "Be well.")
morning to you too." "Salvē et tu."

1. Aut discite aut discedite : sors tertia hic nulla est.
2. Nostri, si urbem fortiter defendent, hostem facile vident.
3. Si tu scribes, ego legam.
4. Prohibui istum quominus vincat.
5. Multa dicere facilius est quam multa discere.
6. Non

¹ What is the government of *whom*?

145a ² Probably the *doubt* is regarded as a kind of *prevention*; but instead of *quōmīnus*, there is used an old form of *quo*, viz. *quī*, followed by *ne*, the two words *quī-ne* being contracted into *quīn*.

145b As regards the Tense to be used after "*nōn dūbium erat quīn*," the Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) *had* is, or could be, inserted in the English: *there was no doubt that the roman (had) killed him*, "*nōn ērat dūbium quīn mūlier eum interfēcisset*."

dubium est quin hostes aciem jam instruant : instruite et (146) vestram, centuriones. 7. Liberi Deos quotidie orabant ut pater tuto (adv.) viveret.¹ 8. Caesar materiam parabat ut Rhenum ponte jungeret. 9. Num vera dicis? Matremne terruisti? Nonne igitur rubes? 10. Scribamus diligenter, ne nos praeceptor culpet. 11. Hastas in terra figite, milites. 12. Non dubium erat quin cives urbem fortiter defenderent.

1. *I advise you to depart.* 2. *There is no doubt that the wise learn daily.* 3. *They asked us to fix our spears in the earth.* 4. *If you read (125), (my) friends, (99a) I will write.* 5. *It is often more useful to learn than to speak.* 6. *We shall conquer the enemy, if you (99), O citizens, defend your city.* 7. *The leader will take care to draw up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Say what-is-true (trans. true-things), my friends; let us not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things).* 9. *There was no doubt that the boys wrote carefully.* 10. *I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.*

EXERCISE XLIII.

(Vincō, vincio, fingo, figo.)

- 147** Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in **-us, -a, -um**, make Adverbs in **-ē**, e.g. **cēlerrimē, difficillimē, tardē**.
- 148** Almost all Comparatives in **-ior** use the Neut. in **-ius** as an Adverb: **tardius**, *more (rather, too) slowly*; **diligentius**, *more (rather, too) diligently*.

- 149** The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than one meaning: thus, **tardius**, besides meaning (1) *more slowly*, may also mean (2) *rather slowly*, or (3) *too slowly*.

1. Mettum, Albanum imperatorem, equi distraxerunt. 2. Non dubium est quin Caesar multa milia Gallorum vicerit. 3. Quis dubitabat quin centurio, homo crudelissimus, captivos vinxisset? 4. Caesar Rhenum ponte junxit, (32) aciem summa celeritate instruxit. 5. Si celerrime scribes, amiei tui fortasse difficillime legent. 6. Interrogabo hominem num has litteras scripserit. 7. Interrogavi patrem nonne dilexisset duos liberorum, ceteros neglexisset. 8. Nonne commeatus collegisti? Nonne equites peditesque contraxisti? 9. Non dubium erat quin errores alios correxisset, alios neglexisset. 10. Falsane finxistis, o perfidissimorum obsidum filii? 11. Centurio militem interrogabat cur hastam in terra fixisset. 12. Mene interrogas, mi fili, cur hoc dixerim? ²

¹ Quōtidīē is more correctly spelt cottīdīē or cōtidīē.² Mi is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. cf. mēus.

1. *Do not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things), my son.* 2. *I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river.* 3. *Do not write the letter too-quickly (149) lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty (use adverb).* 4. *There is no doubt that he wrote this letter.* 5. *There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together.* 6. *Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error).* 7. *Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth?* 8. *There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false.* 9. *Ask the centurion why he bound the captives.* 10. *I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.*

EXERCISE XLIV.

151 RULE.—*Cum*, when, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.¹

1. Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit. 2. Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset, in campum descenderunt. 3. Statui puerum corrigere ut diligenter disceret. 4. Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit. 5. Orabunt imperatorem milites ut aciem instruat. 6. Non dubium est quin hostes jam in urbem irruerint, aedificia igni absument, omnia clamore et caede turbent. 7. Quod (*trans. as if* quod *were* hoc) cum intelligerem, statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset. 8. Correxī errores eius ne amicis suis temeritate sua graviter noceret. 9. Interrogabat imperator nonne jussa sua neglexissem, num murum fortiter defendissem?

1. *When I heard this (i.e. which things when I had understood), I determined to obey (142) the general.* 2. *Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends.* 3. *When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city.* 4. *What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task?* 5. *There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels.* 6. *Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall?* 7. *When the trumpet sounded (i.e. had sounded), not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal.* 8. *At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.*

151a ¹ With these Tenses, *cum* generally implies not simply *at-the-time-when*, but *because* (or at least some logical connection), and "*Cum* causal is followed by the Subjunctive."

152 But when *cum* simply means *at-the-time-when*, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Dum vos dormitis, hostes castra muniunt. 2. Audistisne clamorem hostium qui, jam vino pleni, captivum male custodiunt? ¹ 3. Qui bene servit patriae, ei (*dat.*) cives libenter servient. 4. Non dubium est quin te pater optime erudiverit (9a). 5. Qui (107, 1) bene corpus tuum vestiisti, bene nutriisti, nonne tu etiam mentem tuam simili cura erudies? ² 6. Cives legibus obediunt. 7. Mors mihi spiritum, non vitam finiet. 8. Interrogo te cur hesternae nocte captivum tam male custodiveris. 9. Non dubium erat quin hostes castra diligenter muniissent. 10. Audite alios (*others*) ut alii te audiant. 11. Ne tu punieris puellam: patrem eius puniamus, qui poena dignus est. 12. Mater rogavit me ne puellam punirem.

1. *Do you sleep, O foolish (men), while the enemy are bursting into the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the captive badly.* 3. *Why did you not train the boy better that he might obey (his) elders.* 4. *I ask you why you punished the innocent child Tulliola (124).* 5. *Let us ask the judge not to punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment.* 6. *You who nourished your children's bodies with so-great care, will you not, O my friends, train also their minds?* 7. *We who had never obeyed our parents (108), punished our children because they did not obey us.* 8. *Train your mind that you may learn very-many (things).* 9. *When we had fortified our camp, the enemy descended into the plain (5a).* 10. *Have you asked the boy whether he has lost his books?*

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Vēnio, rēpērio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros vicisset, plurimos gravissima catena vinxit. 2. Serius (149) venistis: comites enim vestri hesternae nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non reppereris: non repperisti, quia in hac terra aurum non est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent; sed rex eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte cras venies, fortasse quod amisisti reperies. 6. Quamdiu dux ille vixit, nostri (34) vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit. ³ 8. Inter-

152a

¹ *Vino* may be parsed, for the present, as *abl. of Instr.*: but see Par. 275.

² Though *nōnne* and *num* generally stand first in a Direct Question, they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.

153

³ In English we do not translate *et* coming between *multus* and another co-ordinate Adjective, e.g. "*multa et pulchra*," *many beautiful things*.

rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset
 9. Jam omnia parabam ut venirem. 10. Ne tu huc veneris :
 nam, si venies, non facile discedes.

1. *Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain the innocent (126) Balbus?* 2. *The woman came rather-late, but the king granted her pardon.* 3. *We conquered those who lived in that plain.* 4. *There is no doubt that they did not find gold in this land.* 5. *I asked why they came (145b), but no-one heard me.* 6. *I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that which) I had lost.* 7. *Will he not tell me why he came here?* 8. *Hast thou come at-length, O best of sons?*

THE VERB Sum, I am.

Sum, fūī, fūtūrūs, essē,—to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sum, I am	<i>Plur.</i> Sūmūs, We are
Es, thou art	Estīs, ye are
Est, he is.	Sunt, they are.

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēro, I shall be	<i>Plur.</i> Ērīmūs, We shall be
Ērīs, thou wilt be	Ērītīs, ye will be
Ērīt, he will be.	Ērunt, they will be.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēram, I was	<i>Plur.</i> Ērāmūs, We were
Ērās, thou wast	Ērātīs, ye were
Ērāt, he was.	Ērant, they were.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuī, I have been, or I was	<i>P.</i> Fuīmūs, We have been, or we were
Fuistī, thou hast been, or thou wast	Fuistīs, ye have been, or ye were
Fuīt, he has been, or he was.	Fuērunt } they have been, or or fuērē } they were.

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Fuëro , <i>I shall have been</i>	<i>P.</i> Fuërimüs , <i>We shall have been</i>
Fuëris , <i>thou wilt have been</i>	Fuëritis , <i>ye will have been</i>
Fuërit , <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuërint , <i>they will have been.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Fuëram , <i>I had been</i>	<i>P.</i> Fuëramüs , <i>We had been</i>
Fuëras , <i>thou hadst been</i>	Fuëratīs , <i>ye had been</i>
Fuërat , <i>he had been.</i>	Fuërant , <i>they had been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ĕs , <i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estë , <i>Be ye.</i>
--	--

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Estō , <i>Thou shalt or must be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estōtë , <i>Ye shall or must be</i>
Estō , <i>he shall or must be, or let him be.</i>	Sunto , <i>they shall or must be, or let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sim , <i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Simüs , <i>We may be¹</i>
Sīs , <i>thou mayst be</i>	Sitīs , <i>ye may be</i>
Sīt , <i>he may be.</i>	Sint , <i>they may be.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Essem or fōrem , <i>I might be</i>	<i>P.</i> Essēmüs or fōrēmüs , <i>We might be</i>
Essēs or fōrēs , <i>thou mightst be</i>	Essētīs or fōrētīs , <i>ye might be</i>
Essët or fōrët , <i>he might be.</i>	Essent or fōrent , <i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Fuërim , <i>I may have been</i>	Fuërimüs , <i>We may have been</i>
Fuëris , <i>thou mayst have been</i>	Fuëritīs , <i>ye may have been</i>
Fuërit , <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuërint , <i>they may have been.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Fuissem , <i>I should</i>	Fuissēmüs , <i>We should</i>
Fuissēs , <i>thou wouldst</i>	Fuissētīs , <i>ye would</i>
Fuissët , <i>he would</i>	Fuissent , <i>they would</i>

¹ **Simus**, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us be*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	} Essē,	<i>to be.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,		
	} Fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>
INFINITIVE FUTURE,		
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	Fütürüs essē, or fōrē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>
	Fütürüs, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>

EXERCISE XLVII.

- Nos Angli sumus, vos estis Galli, ille Germanus est. 2. Fuit Troja; fuere Mycenae; tu, Roma, etiam nunc es. 3. Nisi ego dux vester (125) ero, victores non eritis. 4. Amici eius quondam divites fuerant: tum vero erant pauperrimi. 5. Dictorum eius, O pueri, este semper memores. 6. Iudices iusti sunt. 7. Gratus esto, puer, si amicos benignos habere optas. 8. Ne fueris, O soror, eis molesta qui tibi benevolentissimi semper fuerunt. 9. Contentus ero, O iudices, si vos iusti fueritis.¹ 10. Interrogavit num iudices iusti essent. 11. Cura, rex magne, ut sis munificentior (68a). 12. Ego et tu laetissimi sumus. 13. Prudentes este ut benefici sitis.

- You and I have been (127) very poor.*
- We (99a) were in the city; he and his brother were in the field.*
- Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you?*
- If you are (i.e. shall have been) joyful, I shall be most joyful.*
- Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent.*
- I asked the boy whether he was younger than his [own] brother.*
- There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful.*
- Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate.*
- You will be happy, (my) friends, if you are (125) always contented.*
- There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.*

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

- 154 The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.²

The citizen slew the king (when he was, or who was) about to destroy the city with fire.

Civis rēgem urbem jam igni
absumptūrum interfecit.

The darts were troublesome to our men (while they were, or who were) waiting for help.

Tēla nostris mōlesta ērant
auxilium **expectantibus**.

¹ Not if you shall have been just (125). But optas (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.

² The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction *when, while, &c.*, or by the Relative Pronoun.

THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

155 It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an Indirect Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into corresponding Subjunctive Tenses. But, as there is no Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Question in the Future, *Will he come?* “*Num veniet?*” into an Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the Verb *sum*, and the Participle in *-rus*: *ventūrus sum*, *I am about to come*; *ventūrae sunt*, *they (fem.) are about to come*; *ventūrus fuerās*, *you had been about to come*, &c.

Hence *Will she come?* or *Is she about to come?* becomes, when changed into an Indirect Question:

<i>Ask</i>	} <i>whether the</i>	<i>Interrogā</i>	} <i>num mulier</i>
<i>I ask</i>		<i>Interrogō</i>	
<i>I will ask</i>		<i>Interrogābo</i>	
<i>I have asked</i>		<i>Interrogāvi</i>	
			<i>ventura sit.</i>
<i>I was asking</i>	} <i>whether the</i>	<i>Interrogābam</i>	} <i>num mulier</i>
<i>I asked</i>		<i>Interrogāvi</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>		<i>Interrogāveram</i>	
			<i>ventura esset.</i>

EXERCISE XLVIII.

156 The Latin for *when* in questions, whether dependent or independent, is not *cum* but *quando*.

When will he come?

Quando vēniet?

Let us inquire when he will come.

Quaerāmus **quando** ventūrus sit.

1. Interrogavi puellam num matri obeditura esset.
2. Filium, parentes nutriturum (154a), cur culpas?
3. Obsidibus, haec audientibus, non placuit in urbem venire.¹
4. Interrogate sorores vestras quando patri obediturae sint.
5. Hostibus, jam urbem intransibus, nox molesta erat.
6. Tibi, O puella, graviter erraturae, pauca dicam.
7. Arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, frigus nocuit.
8. Praeceptorī, optime docenti, discipulorum stultitia multum displicuit.
9. Nonne audis patris tui

¹ The Subj. of *placuit* is *venire*, see Par. 128. Parse *obsidibus*; see Par. 142

verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis? 10. Ecce, veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi. 11. Non erat dubium quin pauca dictura esset. 12. Vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus es?

1. *The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since they were) not then expecting an attack.*
2. *You, (being) yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring.*
3. *You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon about-to-ask help) in-vain, now despise your friends (who are) affording help.*
4. *You ought to hear the voice of your friends (who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue.*
5. *There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of coming, i.e. about-to-come.*
6. *Why, O pupils, did you displease your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently?*
7. *When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans. (it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.).*
8. *When will you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and about-to-give you more (gifts)?*
9. *Let us ask his sisters whether they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father.*
10. *The frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam) about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.*

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Ămör, ămătŭs sum, ămărĭ,—to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ör,	} I am loved	Am-ămŭr,	We are loved
Am-ăris or		Am-ămĭnĭ,	ye are loved
ăm-ăre,		Am-antŭr,	they are loved. ¹
Am-ătŭr,	} thou art loved		
	} he is loved.		

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Am-ăbör,	} I shall be loved	Am-ăbĭmŭr,	We shall be loved
Am-ăbĕris or		Am-ăbĭmĭnĭ,	ye will be loved
ămăbĕrĕ,		Am-ăbuntŭr,	they will be loved.
Am-ăbitŭr,	} thou wilt be loved		
	} loved		
	} he will be loved.		

¹ Cicero rarely uses ămăre for ămăris. It is liable to be confused with the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ābār,	{ I was being loved (115)	Am-ābāmūr,	{ We were being loved
Am-ābāris or ām-ābārē	{ thou wast being loved	Am-ābāmīnī,	{ ye were being loved
Am-ābātūr,	{ he was being loved.	Am-ābantūr,	{ they were being loved.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sum or fui,	{ I have been loved, or was loved	Am-ātī sūmūs or fuīmūs,	{ We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs ēs or fuistī,	{ thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Am-ātī estīs or fuistīs,	{ ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs est or fuīt,	{ he has been loved, or was loved.	Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	{ they have been loved, or were loved ¹

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēro or fuēro,	{ I shall have been loved	Am-ātī ērīmūs or fuērīmūs,	{ We shall have been loved
Am-ātūs ēris or fuēris,	{ thou wilt have been loved	Am-ātī ērītīs or fuērītīs,	{ ye will have been loved
Am-ātūs ērit or fuērit,	{ he will have been loved.	Am-ātī ērunt or fuērint,	{ they will have been loved.

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēram or fuēram,	{ I had been loved	Am-ātī ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	{ We had been loved
Am-ātūs ērās or fuērās,	{ thou hadst been loved	Am-ātī ērātīs or fuērātīs,	{ ye had been loved
Am-ātūs ērāt or fuērāt,	{ he had been loved.	Am-ātī ērant or fuērant,	{ they had been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ārē,	Be thou loved.	Am-āmīnī,	Be ye loved.
---------	----------------	-----------	--------------

¹ The Latin Perfect Passive may sometimes be translated by *is, are*: *The man is slain, homo interfectus est*. Hence, when *is, are* imply that an action is completed, translate by the Latin Perfect.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Am-ătör,	<i>Thou must be loved</i>	Am-antör,	<i>{ They must be loved.</i>
Am-ătör,	<i>he must be loved.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ër,	<i>I may be loved</i>	Am-ëmür,	<i>We may be loved</i>
Am-ërîs or	<i>{ thou mayst be</i>	Am-ëmîni,	<i>ye may be loved</i>
ăm-ërë,	<i>loved</i>		
Am-ëtür,	<i>he may be loved.</i>	Am-entür,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ărër,	<i>I might be loved</i>	Am-ărēmür,	<i>We might be loved</i>
Am-ărërîs or	<i>{ thou mightst be</i>	Am-ărēmîni,	<i>ye might be loved</i>
ăm-ărërë,	<i>loved</i>		
Am-ărëtür,	<i>{ he might be</i>	Am-ărentür,	<i>they might be loved.</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ătüs sim	<i>I may have been</i>	Am-ătî simüs	<i>We may have</i>
<i>or fuërim,</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>or fuërimüs,</i>	<i>been loved</i>
Am-ătüs sis	<i>{ thou mayst have</i>	Am-ătî sîtîs	<i>ye may have</i>
<i>or fuëris,</i>	<i>been loved</i>	<i>or fuëritîs,</i>	<i>been loved</i>
Am-ătüs sît	<i>{ he may have</i>	Am-ătî sint	<i>they may have</i>
<i>or fuërit,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>	<i>or fuërint,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ătüs essem	<i>{ I should have</i>	Am-ătî essëmüs	<i>{ We should</i>
<i>or fuissem,</i>	<i>been loved</i>	<i>or fuissëmüs,</i>	<i>have been</i>
			<i>loved</i>
Am-ătüs essês	<i>{ thou wouldst</i>	Am-ătî essëtîs	<i>{ ye would</i>
<i>or fuissês,</i>	<i>have been</i>	<i>or fuissëtîs,</i>	<i>have been</i>
	<i>loved</i>		<i>loved</i>
Am-ătüs essët	<i>{ he would have</i>	Am-ătî essent	<i>{ they would</i>
<i>or fuissët,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>	<i>or fuissent,</i>	<i>have been</i>
			<i>loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Am-ărî,	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Am-ătüs (-a, -um) essë or fuissë,	<i>{ to have been</i>
		<i>loved</i>
FUTURE.	Am-ătum îri (not declined),	<i>{ to be about to</i>
		<i>be loved.¹</i>

¹ For an explanation of *ămătum îri*, see Exercise LXXIV.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	Am-ātūs (-a, -um), <i>loved or having been loved.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Am-andūs (-a, -um), <i>meet to be loved.</i>

SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneor, mōnītūs sum, mōnērī—*to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>	Mōn-ēmūr,	<i>We are advised</i>
Mōn-ērīs,	<i>thou art advised</i>	Mōn-ēmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
Mōn-ētūr,	<i>he is advised.</i>	Mōn-entūr,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbōr,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	Mōn-ēbīmūr,	<i>We shall be advised</i>
Mōn-ēbērīs or mōn-ēbērē,	<i>thou wilt be advised</i>	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,	<i>ye will be advised</i>
Mōn-ēbītūr	<i>he will be advised.</i>	Mōn-ēbuntūr,	<i>they will be advised.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbār,	<i>I was being advised (115)</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being advised</i>
Mōn-ēbārīs or mōn-ēbārē,	<i>thou wast being advised</i>	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being advised</i>
Mōn-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being advised.</i>	Mōn-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being advised.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ītūs sum <i>or fuī,</i>	<i>I have been advised, or was advised</i>	Mōn-ītī sūmūs <i>or fuīmūs,</i>	<i>We have been advised, or were advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs <i>ēs</i> <i>or fuistī,</i>	<i>thou hast been advised, or wast advised</i>	Mōn-ītī estīs <i>or fuistīs,</i>	<i>ye have been advised, or were advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs <i>est</i> <i>or fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been advised, or was advised.</i>	Mōn-ītī sunt, <i>fuērunt, or</i> <i>fuērē,</i>	<i>they have been advised, or were advised.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs ēro { <i>I shall have</i>	Mön-īti ērimūs { <i>We shall have</i>
<i>or fuēro,</i> { <i>been advised</i>	<i>or fuērimūs,</i> { <i>been advised</i>
Mön-ītūs ērīs { <i>thou wilt have</i>	Mön-īti ērītīs { <i>ye will have been</i>
<i>or fuērīs,</i> { <i>been advised</i>	<i>or fuērītīs,</i> { <i>advised</i>
Mön-ītūs ērit { <i>he will have</i>	Mön-īti ērunt { <i>they will have</i>
<i>or fuērīt,</i> { <i>been advised.</i>	<i>or fuērint,</i> { <i>been advised.</i>

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs ēram { <i>I had been</i>	Mön-īti ērāmūs { <i>We had been</i>
<i>or fuēram,</i> { <i>advised</i>	<i>or fuērāmūs,</i> { <i>advised</i>
Mön-ītūs ērās { <i>thou hadst</i>	Mön-īti ērātīs { <i>ye had been ad-</i>
<i>or fuērās,</i> { <i>been ad-</i>	<i>or fuērātīs,</i> { <i>vised</i>
Mön-ītūs ērāt { <i>he had been</i>	Mön-īti ērant { <i>they had been</i>
<i>or fuērāt,</i> { <i>advised.</i>	<i>or fuērant,</i> { <i>advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-ērē, <i>Be thou advised.</i>	Mön-ēmīnī, <i>Be ye advised</i>
---	--

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mön-ētör, <i>Thou must be advised</i>	Mön-entör, { <i>They must be ad-</i>
Mön-ētör, <i>he must be advised.</i>	<i>vised.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eār, { <i>I may be ad-</i>	Mön-eāmūr, { <i>We may be ad-</i>
<i>vised</i>	<i>vised</i>
Mön-eārīs or { <i>thou mayst</i>	Mön-eāmīnī, { <i>ye may be ad-</i>
mön-eārē, { <i>be advised</i>	<i>vised.</i>
Mön-eātūr, { <i>he may be</i>	Mön-eantūr, { <i>they may be ad-</i>
<i>advised.</i>	<i>vised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērēr, { <i>I might be</i>	Mön-ērēmūr, { <i>We might be</i>
<i>advised</i>	<i>advised</i>
Mön-ērērīs or { <i>thou mightst</i>	Mön-ērēmīnī, { <i>ye might be ad-</i>
mön-ērērē, { <i>be advised</i>	<i>vised</i>
Mön-ērētūr, { <i>he might be</i>	Mön-ērentūr, { <i>they might be</i>
<i>advised</i>	<i>advised.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs sim or fuërim,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ may have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī sīmūs or fuërimūs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} We \text{ may have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$
Mön-ītūs sīs or fuëris,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thou mayst} \\ \text{have been} \\ \text{advised} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī sītīs or fuëritīs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ye may have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$
Mön-ītūs sīt or fuërit,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he may have} \\ \text{been ad-} \\ \text{vised} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī sint or fuërint,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{they may have} \\ \text{been advised.} \end{array} \right.$

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūs essem or fuissem,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ should have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī essēmūs or fuissemūs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} We \text{ should have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$
Mön-ītūs essēs, or fuisēs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{thou wouldst} \\ \text{have been} \\ \text{advised} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī essētīs or fuisētīs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ye would have} \\ \text{been advised} \end{array} \right.$
Mön-ītūs essēt or fuisset,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he would} \\ \text{have been} \\ \text{advised.} \end{array} \right.$	Mön-ītī essent or fuisent,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{they would have} \\ \text{been advised.} \end{array} \right.$

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Mön-ērī,	<i>to be advised.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Mön-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	<i>to have been ad- [vised.]</i>
FUTURE.	Mön-ītum irī (not declined),	<i>to be about to [be advised.]</i>
PERFECT.	Mön-ītūs (-a, -um),	<i>advised, or having been advised.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Mön-endūs (-a, -um),	<i>meet to be advised.</i>

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rëgör, rectūs sum, rëgī,—to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rëg-ör,	<i>I am ruled</i>	Rëg-īmūr,	<i>We are ruled</i>
Rëg-ērīs,	<i>thou art ruled</i>	Rëg-īmīnī,	<i>ye are ruled</i>
Rëg-ītūr,	<i>he is ruled.</i>	Rëg-untūr,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rĕg-ăr,	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	Rĕg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
Rĕg-ĕrīs	or { thou wilt be ruled he will be ruled.	Rĕg-ēmīnī,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rĕg-ĕrĕ,		Rĕg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ētūr,			

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕbăr,	{ <i>I was being</i> ruled (115)	Rĕg-ĕbāmūr,	{ <i>We were being</i> ruled
Rĕg-ĕbārīs or	{ <i>thou wast being</i> ruled	Rĕg-ĕbāmīnī,	{ <i>ye were being</i> ruled
rĕg-ĕbārĕ,		Rĕg-ĕbantūr,	{ <i>they were being</i> ruled.
Rĕg-ĕbātūr,	{ <i>he was being</i> ruled.		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sum	{ <i>I have been</i> ruled, or was ruled	Rec-tī sūmūs	{ <i>We have been</i> ruled, or were ruled
or fuī,		or fuīmūs,	
Rec-tūs ĕs or	{ <i>thou hast been</i> ruled, or wast ruled	Rec-tī estīs or	{ <i>ye have been</i> ruled, or were ruled
fuistī,		fuistīs,	
Rectūs est or	{ <i>he has been</i> ruled, or was ruled.	Rec-tī sunt,	{ <i>they have been</i> ruled, or were ruled.
fuīt,		fuērunt, or	
		fuērĕ,	

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ĕro	{ <i>I shall have</i> been ruled	Rec-tī ĕrīmūs	{ <i>We shall have</i> been ruled
or fuĕro,		or fuĕrimūs,	
Rec-tūs ĕrīs	{ <i>thou wilt have</i> been ruled	Rec-tī ĕrītīs	{ <i>ye will have been</i> ruled
or fuĕrīs,		or fuĕritīs,	
Rec-tūs ĕrīt	{ <i>he will have</i> been ruled.	Rec-tī ĕrunt	{ <i>they will have</i> been ruled.
or fuĕrīt,		or fuĕrint,	

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ĕram	{ <i>I had been</i> ruled	Rec-tī ĕrāmūs	{ <i>We had been</i> ruled
or fuĕram,		or fuĕrāmūs,	
Rec-tūs ĕrās	{ <i>thou hadst been</i> ruled	Rec-tī ĕrātīs	{ <i>ye had been ruled</i>
or fuĕrās,		or fuĕrātīs,	
Rec-tūs ĕrāt	{ <i>he had been</i> ruled.	Rec-tī ĕrant	{ <i>they had been</i> ruled.
or fuĕrāt,		or fuĕrant,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>	Rĕg-īmīnī,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
----------	-----------------------	------------	---------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	{ Thou must be ruled	Rĕg-untŏr,	They must be ruled.
Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	{ he must be ruled.		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ār,	I may be ruled	Rĕg-āmŭr,	We may be ruled
Rĕg-āris	or { thou mayst be ruled	Rĕg-āmīnī,	ye may be ruled
rĕg-ārĕ,		Rĕg-antŭr,	they may be ruled.
Rĕg-ātŭr,	hemayberuled.		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ērĕr,	I might be ruled	Rĕg-ērēmŭr,	We might be ruled
Rĕg-ērĕris	or { thou mightst be ruled	Rĕg-ērēmīnī,	ye might be ruled
rĕg-ērĕrĕ,		Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,	they might be ruled.
Rĕg-ĕrĕtŭr,	{ he might be ruled.		

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs sim	I may have	Rec-tī sīmŭs	or { We may have
or fuĕrim,	{ been ruled	fuĕrimŭs,	{ been ruled
Rec-tŭs sis	or { thou mayst have	Rec-tī sītīs	or { ye may have been
fuĕrīs,	{ been ruled	fuĕrītīs,	{ ruled
Rec-tŭs sit	or { he may have	Rec-tī sint	or { they may have
fuĕrīt,	{ been ruled.	fuĕrint,	{ been ruled.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tŭs essem	I should have	Rec-tī essēmŭs	We should have
or fuissēm,	{ been ruled	or fuissēmŭs,	{ been ruled
Rec-tŭs essēs	thou wouldst	Rec-tī essētīs	ye would have
or fuissēs,	{ have been ruled	or fuissētīs,	{ been ruled
Rec-tŭs essēt	he would have	Rec-tī essent	they would have
or fuissēt,	{ been ruled.	or fuissent,	{ been ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Rĕg-ī,	to be ruled.
PERF and PLUP.	Rec-tŭs (-a, -um) essĕ or fuissĕ,	to have been ruled
FUTURE.	Rec-tum irī (not declined),	to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	Rec-tūs (-a, -um),	<i>ruled or having been ruled.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Rēg-endūs (-a, -um),	<i>meet to be ruled.</i>

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, audītūs sum, audīrī,—to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>	Aud-imūr,	<i>We are heard</i>
Aud-īrīs,	<i>thou art heard</i>	Aud-īmīnī,	<i>ye are heard</i>
Aud-itūr,	<i>he is heard</i>	Aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iār,	<i>I shall be heard</i>	Aud-iēmūr,	<i>We shall be heard</i>
Aud-iērīs	<i>or thou wilt be heard</i>	Aud-iēmīnī,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
aud-iērē,	<i>he will be heard.</i>	Aud-ientūr,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbār,	<i>I was being heard (115)</i>	Aud-iēbāmūr,	<i>We were being heard</i>
Aud-iēbārīs	<i>or thou wast being heard</i>	Aud-iēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being heard</i>
aud-iēbārē,	<i>he was being heard.</i>	Aud-iēbantūr,	<i>they were being heard.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs sum	<i>I have been heard, or was heard</i>	Aud-ītī sūmūs	<i>We have been heard, or were heard</i>
<i>or fuī,</i>		<i>or fuīmūs,</i>	
Aud-ītūs es	<i>or thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i>	Aud-ītī estīs	<i>or ye have been heard, or were heard</i>
fuistī,		fuistīs,	
Aud-ītūs est	<i>he has been heard, or was heard.</i>	Aud-ītī sunt,	<i>they have been heard, or were heard.</i>
<i>or fuīt,</i>		fuērunt,	
		fuērē,	

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs ēro	}	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	Aud-ītī ērimūs	}	<i>We shall have been heard</i>
<i>or fuēro,</i>			<i>or fuērimūs,</i>		
Aud-ītūs ēris	}	<i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	Aud-ītī ēritīs	}	<i>ye will have been heard</i>
<i>or fuēris,</i>			<i>or fuēritīs,</i>		
Aud-ītūs ērit	}	<i>he will have been heard</i>	Aud-ītī ērunt	}	<i>they will have been heard.</i>
<i>or fuērit,</i>			<i>or fuērint,</i>		

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ītūs ēram	}	<i>I had been heard</i>	Aud-ītī-ērāmūs	}	<i>We had been heard</i>
<i>or fuēram,</i>			<i>or fuērāmūs,</i>		
Aud-ītūs ērās	}	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>	Aud-ītī ērātīs	}	<i>ye had been heard</i>
<i>or fuērās,</i>			<i>or fuērātīs,</i>		
Aud-ītūs ērāt	}	<i>he had been heard.</i>	Aud-ītī ērant	}	<i>they had been heard.</i>
<i>or fuērāt,</i>			<i>or fuērant,</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-irē,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>		Aud-īmīnī,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------	--	-------------------	---------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Aud-ītōr,	<i>Thou must be heard</i>		Aud-iuntōr,	<i>They must be heard.</i>
Aud-ītōr,	<i>he must be heard.</i>			

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iār	{ or }	<i>I may be heard</i>	Aud-iāmūr,	<i>We may be heard</i>
Aud-iārīs		<i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-iāmīnī,	<i>ye may be heard</i>
aud-iārē,		<i>be heard</i>		
Aud-iātūr,		<i>he may be heard.</i>	Aud-iantūr,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-irēr,	{	<i>I might be</i>	Aud-irēmūr,	<i>We might be heard</i>
Aud-irērīs		<i>heard</i>	Aud-irēmīnī,	<i>ye might be heard</i>
<i>or</i>		<i>thou mightst</i>		
aud-irērē,		<i>be heard</i>		
Aud-irētūr,	{	<i>he might be</i>	Aud-irentūr,	<i>they might be heard.</i>
		<i>heard.</i>		

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūs sim or { <i>I may have</i> fuērim, { <i>been heard</i>	Aud-itī simūs or { <i>We may have</i> fuērimūs, { <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs sis or { <i>thou mayst</i> fuēris, { <i>have been</i> <i>heard</i>	Aud-itī sītīs or { <i>ye may have</i> fuēritīs, { <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs sīt or { <i>he may have</i> fuērit, { <i>been heard.</i>	Aud-itī sint or { <i>they may have</i> fuērint, { <i>been heard.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itūsessem { <i>I should have</i> or fuissēm, { <i>been heard</i>	Aud-itī essēmūs { <i>We should have</i> or fuissēmūs, { <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs essēs { <i>thou wouldst</i> or fuissēs, { <i>have been</i> <i>heard</i>	Aud-itī essētīs { <i>ye would have</i> or fuissētīs, { <i>been heard</i>
Aud-itūs essēt { <i>he would have</i> or fuissēt, { <i>been heard</i>	Aud-itī essent { <i>they would have</i> or fuissent, { <i>been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Aud-irī,	<i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Aud-itūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	<i>to have been heard.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itum irī (not declined),	<i>to be about to be</i> <i>[heard.]</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Aud-itūs (-a, -um),	<i>heard or having been heard.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Aud-iendūs (-a, -um),	<i>meet to be heard.</i>

EXERCISE XLIX.

57^a If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, *e.g.* **vēl**, or (*if you please*), or (*rather*), **aut** or (*else*), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

What man or what monster committed this crime? Qui hōmo, **vēl** quae bēlūa hōc **fācīnus commīsīt?**

Either you or Tullius said this. Aut tū aut Tullius haec **dixīt.**

- Equus ab auriga domabitur (32), mox aurigam dorso portabit.
- Cura ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornatur.
- Si urbem incendent, quomodo in tanto incendio servabimini?
- Interrogavi civem quomodo urbs servaretur.
- Curavit sacerdos ut hae divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
- Si animum recreabis, nihil obstat quominus saneris.
- Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si

tu ei obtemperabis. 8. Agri tui qui nunquam antea vastabantur, jam vastabuntur, nisi nobis iter monstraveris. 9. Curabit dux ut a me servemini nisi jussa mea neglexeritis. 10. Portae urbis omni cura firmantur ne ab hostibus subito¹ superemur. 11. Curate ne, impetum non expectantes, ab hoste superemini. 12. Nisi a medico sanabere (125), num tibi aurum argentumque utilia erunt?

1. *The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-waste before, was laid waste by our men.* 2. *While we are being overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy.* 3. *The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved.* 4. *Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded, (trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be overcome by the enemy.* 5. *What enemy, or (rather) what danger (111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quōmīnus, see Par. 144) into the temple?* 6. *Our men, not expecting an attack, were being overcome by the enemy.* 7. *We shall be cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician's precepts.* 8. *How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans. so-great) conflagration?* 9. *The priests were-taking-pains that the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many flowers.* 10. *Let us take-care that the gates of the city are (143) strongly-guarded*

PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

- 158** The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number and Gender.

The enemy, having been overcome, are fleeing, i.e. have been overcome and are fleeing.

Hostes **sūpērāti** fūgiūnt.

They burn the city (when it had been) taken, i.e. they take and burn the city.

Urbem **captam** incendunt.

- 159** *N.B.*—Note how the English *and* can be expressed by the Latin Passive Participle.

- 159a** The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of **āmor**, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are not really independent Tenses of **āmor**, but rather Tenses

- 160** ¹ **Sūbīto** is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -er, -a, -um, mostly make Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: **tūto**, *safely*; **cīto**, *quickly*; &c.

of the Verb **sum** joined to forms of the Passive Participle **āmātus** which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun :

The town is taken.

Oppidum **captum** est.

The girls will have been adorned.

Puellae **ornātae** fuērint.

EXERCISE L.

161 If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine ; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) *His father and mother have been slain.* Pāter eius et māter **interfecti** sunt.

(2) *Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority.* Īra et āvāritīa impērio **pōtentiōra** ērant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a).
2. Imperator, cum hostium equites jam turbati fuissent, pedites facile fugavit. 3. Oppidum ipsum ab hoste expugnatum est, sed arx virtute ducis nostri est servata. 4. Si equites superati fuerint (125a), quomodo pedites servabuntur? 5. Cur tanto auri pondere ornatae estis, mulieres stultissimae? 6. Murus et porta a sacerdote centum aureis statuis, ducentis argenteis, ornata fuerant. 7. Hostis, tandem superatus, ab imperatore nostro fugatus est. 8. Agri pauperrimorum agricularum a crudelissimis hostibus ferro atque igni vastati sunt. 9. Hostes superati sunt, urbes quinquaginta expugnatae, segetes omnes vastatae (32). 10. Non dubium erat quin iter hostibus a proditore monstratum fuisset.

1. *Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy (101)?*
2. *Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens.* 3. *The town is stormed (i.e. has been stormed) : our men are overcome.* 4. *The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy.* 5. *There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy.* 6. *The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight.* 7. *Did you not owe everything (trans. all things) to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved?* 8. *Having been praised by all the best citizens (140), will you and your sister, (150) my (dear) Tullius, commit this great (i.e. so great) crime (101)?*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LI.

- 162** The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active :

All laughed, lit. it was laughed by all. **Ridēbātur** āb omnībus.

The enemy had fought bravely, lit. it had been fought bravely by the enemy **Pugnātum** ērat ācrīter āb hostībus.

- 163** The Neuter of the Passive Participle in **-ndus** (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, *the Agent being expressed by the Dative* :

I must fight, lit. it is meet to be fought to, or for, me. **Pugnandum** est mīhi.¹

Ought you not to remain? **Nōne tībi mānendum** est?

1. Cura ne periculo terrearis. 2. Justorum judicium animi neque minis neque a rege ipso movebuntur. 3. Cives, ab imperatore territi, in sua quisque domo manserunt.² 4. Quid obstabat vobis quominus a praeceptore doceremini? 5. Magister curavit ut omnia vere a servis suis responderentur. 6. Non dubium est quin puer optime doceatur. 7. Curate ut corpora puorum bene exerceantur. 8. Agricola fluctibus terrebatur, quos nauta ridebat. 9. Cum haec tanta (trans. *this great*) tempestas impenderet, flebatur ab agricolis, a nautis ridebatur. 10. Imperatori, captivos interroganti nonne cruciatus timebant, a regina nostra fortissime responsum est. 11. Nobis flendum est, vobis et hostibus exultandum. 12. Hostes jam superatos, et in urbem fugientes, equitatus noster paene delevit.

1. *There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly-destroyed by the cruel general Balbus (124).* 2. *We must fight bravely that the enemy may not (131) take the city by-storm.* 3. *Fighting*

- 164** ¹ If the Verb *e.g.* **pāreo** governs a Dat., "**pārendum** est nobīs" would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us, or by us*. This ambiguity is avoided by using **ā** with the Abl. to express the Agent:

We must obey the magistrate. Magistrātū ā nobīs pārendum est.

- 165** ² **Quisquē** is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to **cīves**. Note that in this phrase, *they came, returned, each to his &c., sūus always precedes quisquē*.

was kept up briskly (trans. it-was-fought briskly) by the Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts, might retire into the city. 4. There is no doubt that the master will exercise (155) the bodies of the slaves. 5. Why must you weep? Ought (163) not you (101) rather to fight that your fields may not be laid waste by the enemy? 6. There is no doubt that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader. 7. I took care that the city might be filled with-soldiers that you might not be terrified by the danger. 8. We ought not to be terrified in this great danger (trans. this so-great danger). 9. Our men, when-they-could scarcely sustain the charge of the enemy (trans. scarcely sustaining) and (were) almost fleeing, were recalled by the voice of (their) brave (70) leader. 10. What tyrant, or (157a) what (111) danger, will prevent (144) us from remaining in our city?

THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LII.

- 166 *I am on the point of conquering.* In eo sum ut vincam.
I was on the point of conquering. In eo eram ut vincerem.

RULE.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used impersonally. Thus, *all obey you*, omnes tibi parēbunt; but:

- 167 *You will be obeyed by all, i.e.* Tibi ab omnibus parēbūtur
it will be obeyed to you by all. (not tū parēberis).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.¹
2. Nisi te ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur.
3. Cura ne falsa a te fingantur.
4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis recte viveretur.
5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intrarent, subito portae clausae sunt.
6. Non dubium est quin exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit.
7. Cavendum est ne ab hostibus contemnamini.
8. Interrogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus detecta esset.
9. Rhēnus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore jungebatur.
10. Castra a duobus milibus militum, viris acerrimis, defenduntur.
11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa diligentia scribitur.
12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur, quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur?
13. Tunc agros colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

¹ Puer is Nom., in Apposition with *qui*, *he who*, *when* (or *as*) *a boy*, &c.

1. *The town will be defended bravely by the citizens.* 2. *Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded (trans. strengthened with a guard).* 3. *If the river (125) is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens.* 4. *Do you (tu), the partner¹ of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed (pres. subjunct.)?* 5. *I asked my children whether the books were being written by them.* 6. *There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated.* 7. *If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children (trans. it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man).* 8. *Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight.* 9. *The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men.* 10. *If the conspiracy is disclosed (125) to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. *Cur non auxilium mittere statuitis?* 2. *Interrogandum est nobis num epistola a puero scripta sit.* 3. *Interrogandum erat mulieri quando epistolae a pueris scriptae essent.* 4. *Non erat dubium quin duci (142) nostro placuisset legatos mittere.* 5. *Cum jam agri diligentissime culti fuissent, subito segetes omnes imbribus absumptae sunt.* 6. *Quid obstabat quominus oppidum defenderetur?* 7. *Urbem hanc, a duobus millibus civium defensam, decem milia hostium obsederunt.* 8. *Quare vos, quingenti viri, ab hostibus ducentis victi estis?* 9. *Interrogavi nonne a sene pueri semper dilecti essent, nonne memoria eius ab illis etiam tum coleretur.* 10. *Fabula, si a poeta docte scripta fuerit, omnibus placebit.* 11. *Cum jam naves plurimae ab imperatore collectae essent, exploratores ad Britanniam quinto die missi sunt.* 12. *Jam acies instructa erat, jam pedites ad proelium parati (142 d); cum subito legati ab hostibus pacem petitori missi sunt.*
1. *There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister.* 2. *What prevented the fields from being cultivated?* 3. *When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields.* 4. *There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished (lit. cultivated) by those whom he had taught.* 5. *Let us ask the poet why he did not compose (lit. write) a better story.* 6. *The king asked the general why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care (lit. more-diligently).* 7. *Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace (lit. about-to-*

¹ In what case should *partner* be? See Par. 123.

seek). 8. *The spears of the soldiers, fixed in the earth, shewed the camp of the enemy.* 9. *Which of the two (85) daughters was especially loved (diligō) by (her) father?* 10. *If he violates (125) this law, let him (129a) be driven into exile.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

168 When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity:)

*The boys } are (fit) to be punish- Puēri } sunt mīhī pūniend } -i.
girls } ed by me. Puellae }
I must learn this. Haec mīhi discenda sunt. } -ae.*

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Audiendi sunt nobis exploratores; nam hostium urbes clam muniuntur. 2. Quid obstat quominus extra urbem corpus sepeliatur? 3. Curandum erat legatis ut bellum pace finiretur. 4. Interrogabo Numidam num leones in Africa reperiantur. 5. Puniēris, nisi cito veneris. 6. Cur tam deformibus vestibus vestiebamini? 7. Patri a quo nutrimini, vestimiri, educamini, nonne parebitis? 8. Mortui extra (see *Vocab. extrā*) urbem sepeliuntur. 9. Tertia nocte a nostris dormiebatur, ab hostibus castra muniabantur. 10. Ab eo vinciere qui nuper a te ipso vinciebatur.
1. *There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa.* 2. *Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated?* 3. *Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace.* 4. *The spies of the enemy must be punished by us.* 5. *What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men (144)?* 6. *The dead used-to-be-buried by the ancients outside the city.* 7. *On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges.* 8. *You were being patiently heard by all: why did (127b) you not yourself (105) hear me?*

EXERCISE LV.

1. Hae urbes nobis muniendae sunt. 2. Cum corpora mortuorum sepulta essent, arcem optime munitam hostes nobis tradiderunt. 3. Reperti sunt leones quinque; de (about) tigribus nihil auditum (est). 4. Nisi melius vestita fuerit (125a), mulier frigus vix tolerabit. 5. Nutriendus est nobis pauperimus ille puer qui a patre ipso non nutritus est. 6. Cur tandem, O puellae, matris immemores estis? Nonne estis ab illa nutritae? Nonne (142d) vestitae? Nonne summa diligentia¹ educatae? 7. Ego, si finitum fuerit bellum, in

¹ Diligentia is Abl. of Manner: see Exercise LXXIX.

Italiam veniam. 8. Tria milia captivorum, a nostris vineti,¹ clam evaserunt. 9. Qui a patre tuo nutritus es, nonne tu patrem, jam senem, ipse nutries? 10. Non dubium erat quin castra hostium clam diligentissime munita essent.

1. *I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried.* 2. *Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished?* 3. *There is no doubt that very many lions have been found in Africa.* 4. *These who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped.* 5. *The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king.* 6. *Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not (131) hurt you.* 7. *She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard.* 8. *What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (5a)?*²

THIRD CONJUGATION IN I.

Căpio, cēpi, captum, căpĕrĕ, —to take.
(stem: căp-, or căpĭ-.)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -io, it (1) drops the ĭ before ĭ and ĕ,³ but (2) retains it otherwise, e.g. before a, o, ē, and u.

Thus (1) căp-ĭmus, căp-ĕre, căp-ĕ.

But (2) căpi-am, căpi-o, căpi-ēs, căpi-unt.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Căpi-o, căp-ĭs, căp-ĭt, căp-ĭmus, căp-ĭtis, căpĭ-unt.

Fut. Căpi-am, căpi-ēs, căpi-et, căpi-emus, căpi-etis, căpi-ent.

Imperf. Căpi-ēbam, căpi-ēbas, căpi-ēbat, căpi-ēbamus, căpi-ēbatis, căpĭ-ēbant

Regular
Tenses.

{ *Perf.* Cēp-i, Cēp-isti, &c.
 Pluperf. Cēp-eram, Cēp-erasti, &c.
 Future Perf. Cēp-ero, Cēp-eris, &c.

168a

¹ *Vincti* is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., *men* or *captives*, implied in *milia*.

² For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.

³ The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. *căpi-ēt*, which follows the form of the other persons, *căpi-ēs, căpi-ēmus, &c.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. cǎp-ě, cǎp-ite,
Fut. cǎp-ito, cǎp-ito, cǎp-îtôte, cǎp-into,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-am, cǎpī-as, cǎpī-at, cǎpī-amus, cǎpī-atis,
 cǎpī-ant,
Imperf. Cǎp-ěrem, cǎp-ěres, cǎp-ěret, cǎp-ěremus, cǎp-
 ăretis, cǎp-ărent,

Regular
Tenses. { *Perf.* Cēp-ěrim, cēp-ěris, &c.
Pluperf. Cēp-issem, cēp-isses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Cǎp-ěre, *Perf.* Cēp-isse *Pres.* Cǎpiens, *Fut.*
 Capturus.

GERUND.
 Capi-endi.

SUPINES.
 Captum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-or, cǎp-ěris, cǎp-itur, cǎp-īmur, cǎp-īmini, cǎpī-
 untur.
Fut. Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-ēris (-ērē), cǎpī-ētur, cǎpī-ēmur, cǎpī-
 ēmini, cǎpī-entur.
Imperf. Cǎpī-ēbar, cǎpī-ēbaris (-bārē), cǎpī-ēbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎp-ěre, cǎp-īmini.
Fut. Cǎpī-tor, cǎpī-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-āris, cǎpī-ātur, &c.
Imperf. Cǎp-ērer, cǎp-ēr-ēris, cǎp-ēr-ētur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Căp-i.

EXERCISE LVI.

- 169 A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing. *nōlī* or Plur. *nōlite*, *be unwilling* :

Do not flee, i.e. be unwilling to flee. Nōlī, or nōlite, fūgēre.

- 170 The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally :

Water hollows the rock by falling. Aqua saxum cāvat cādendo.

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.
2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non scripsisse.
3. Interrogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.
4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit ; ducentos ne acceperis.
5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant.
6. Nolite fugere, O milites ; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut castra muniamus.
7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.¹
8. Noli, O judex, injusta facere : nonne te oravit rex ut justitiam semper respiceres ?
9. Miles, jam telum conjecturus, hostem jacentem aspexit.
10. Interrogavi qualia animalia multiplices fetus parerent.²

1. *Have-regard-to virtue ; do not have-regard-to the commands of a tyrant.*³
2. *There was no doubt that he received five hundred denarii, and was (155) about-to-receive two thousand denarii.*
3. *When the youth beheld his father, he cast away his dart.*
4. *Flee, O friends ; do not look round.*
5. *The leaders asked what we desired to do.*
6. *What prevents his verses from savouring-of Maro (see Maro in Vocabulary) ?*
7. *What (i.e. that which) they did, they took care (143) to do well.*
8. *You will make your discourse accurate by writing, learned by reading.*

EXERCISE LVII.

- 171 *Whether . . . or, in (a) Independent, as well as in (b) Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) utrum . . . ān ; (2) -nē . . . ān :*

(a 1) *Is this true or false ?*

Utrum haec vēra **ān** falsa sunt ?

(a 2) *Was he white or black ?*

Albus **nē** **ān** āter ērat ?

¹ These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's ; *quaeris* refers to present, not (125) to future time.

² From what two Verbs may *parerent* come, the quantity being left unmarked ? What Case does each govern ?

³ Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative Case*.

- (b1) *We must enquire whether this is true or false.* Quærendum est **utrum** hæc vëra sint **ãn** falsa.
 (b2) *It is uncertain whether he was black or white.* Incertum est albus**ně** **ãn** āter fuërit.¹

172 *Or not* in Interrogatives may be rendered by **annōn** or **necně**:

Ask whether he will come or not. Quærë **utrum** ventūrus sit **necně** (or **annōn**).

173 N.B. (1) **Aut** and **vël** (157a) are not to be used in Dependent or Independent Questions.

174 (2) When *whether* is not followed by *or*, **num** (135) is generally used instead of **utrum**.

175 (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses *always holds*.

1. Præceptor dubitabat tune an Tullius rem melius gereret.²
2. Dux, cum jam proelii, vel potius caedis, finem fecisset, urbem incenderat. 3. Aut pugnandum est aut cedendum, milites. 4. Hunc vicum barbari oppidum vel urbem appellavere. 5. Milites cum jam spolia vel praedam rapuissent cupierunt urbem incendere. 6. Latona dicitur uno partu Apollinem et Dianam peperisse.³ 7. Quærendum est utrum regina an filius eius bellum acrius gesturus sit. 8. Arma nobis capienda sunt nē (not -ně) tyrannus, vel tyranni milites, bona nostra diripiant. 9. Haec cum imperator aspexit, constituit aut aciem statim instruere aut clam nocte discedere. 10. Cum pedites nostri fugissent, naves tempestate quassae fuissent, urbes ab hostibus direptae, statim magna pars nostrorum pacem petere cupiebat. 11. Quærendum est per (*by means of*) exploratores utrum urbs ab hostibus incensa sit necne.

176 ¹ Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) **ãn** is sometimes used without **utrum** or **-ně** preceding; and in Dependent Questions (d) **ně** is sometimes used for *or*, without a preceding particle.

It is uncertain whether he was the son or grandson of Tullius. Filius nēpōs**ně** fuerit Tullii incertum est.

176a ² The disjunctive **ãn** disjoins **tū** from Tullius and causes **gërëret** to agree with Tullius; **tū** may be parsed as "the subject of **gërëres** understood:" see Par. 157a.

177 ³ Dicitur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in English impersonally, it is said that Latona, &c.

1. *Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?*
 2. *We must either depart or learn.* 3. *Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection.* 4. *The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gov. acc.) the enemy.*
 5. *Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile.* 6. *There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously.*
 7. *It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day.* 9. *It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not.* 10. *Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?*

PREPOSITIONS.

178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case :

A, āb (before a vowel), *by, from.*

Absquē (rare), *without.*

Clam, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*¹

Cōram, *in the presence of.*

Cum, *with.*

Dē, *down from, from, concerning.*

Ē, (ex before a vowel), *out of. Pālam, openly, in the presence of.*²

Prae, *before, in comparison with, (with a negative because of.)*³

Prō, *before, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for.*

Sine, *without.*

Tēnus (after its Case), *as far as.*⁴

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme :

A, or āb, and ex or ē
Cum, pālam, cōram, clam and dē
Tēnus, sine, prō, and prae
 Always govern the Ablative.

¹ **Clam** is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.

² **Pālam** is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.

³ **Prae** is rarely used by Cicero to mean *because of* except with **non, vix, &c.** : *I am not able to speak for sorrow, Prae maerore loqui uon possum.*

⁴ **Tēnus** governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, **Alpium tēnus**, *as far as the Alps* : but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.

EXERCISE LVIII.

179 RULE.—Cum is affixed to tē, mē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quībus: mēcum, (*not cum mē*) nōbīscum, quōcum, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat.
2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat.
3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, cum scutis; qui (*see 'qui'*) cum me vehementissime increpuissent, eequidem cum constantia respondi.
4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit.
5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat.
6. Verbo tenus te adjuvabit, re ipsa nihil faciet.¹
7. Ira sine viribus inutilissima est.
8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius; cui (*i.e. et ei, see Par. 298, I*) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egerunt.
9. Palam populo sine misericordia jugulatus est.
10. Tibi, O amice, prae omnibus amicis beate, ego, hominum miserrimus, prae lacrimis vix scribo.
11. Nos pro patria pugnantem dejecistis de Capitolio (32), jam ex urbe ejecistis.
12. Multis de² causis cupio tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. *In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter.*
2. *Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king.*
3. *There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus.*
4. *From a boy he had lived in Greece.*
5. *Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge.*
6. *He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people.*
7. *From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with me.*
8. *Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation.*
9. *I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile.*
10. *What will anger without wisdom effect for us?*

180 PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ABLATIVE.		ACCUSATIVE.	
Īn,	meaning <i>rest in</i>	Īn,	meaning <i>into, to, towards</i>
Sūb,	,, <i>rest under</i>	Sūb,	,, <i>motion from below,³</i>
Sūper,	,, <i>concerning.</i>	Sūper,	,, <i>above, over, upon.⁴</i>

¹ Rē is Adverbial Abl.: see Par. 182.

² 'From many reasons,' i.e. 'for many reasons.'

³ The form sūbter (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning *extension under*, generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.

⁴ Sūper, meaning *above*, also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.

EXERCISE LIX.

- 181** RULE.—The *Manner* of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, *with an Adjective attached to it*; (2) by the Abl. following *cum*.

He spoke with, or in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness. Ille quidem **cum** ira locutus est; ego vero **summā constantiā** respondi.

N.B. The Abl. *without an Adj. or Prep.* is used to denote *Instrument*, but not *Manner*.

- 182** Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, *e.g. jūre, rightly; ordinē, in order; spēcīē, in appearance; rē or rē ipsa, in fact, &c.* They may be parsed as *Adverbial Ablatives*.

1. In Italia paulisper manserat, mox in Galliam contendit. 2. In eo loco a Sannitium imperatore Romani sub jugum missi sunt. 3. Sub oculis patris ipsius filii ambo interfecti sunt. 4. Sub oculos nobis¹ duae columbae venerunt. 5. Equites sub jactu teli nondum erant; pedites jam sub ictum venerant. 6. Super navem turrem exstruxeramus. 7. Super hac re cupieram vobiscum deliberare. 8. Vulnus super vulnus centurio fortissimus acceperat. 9. Judaea, provincia turbulenta, sub Pontio Pilato tum erat. 10. In ore omnium Persarum tunc erat Alexandri humanitas. 11. Nioba dicitur a Sophocle, poeta Atheniensi, in saxum ab Apolline mutata esse. 12. Dux aliquid de stipendio equitum dempsit.
1. *The wisdom of Socrates was the talk (trans. was in the mouth) of all the Athenians.* 2. *There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter.* 3. *Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death?* 4. *If this comes under your notice (trans. eyes), do not neglect (it).* 5. *Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire.* 6. *By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy.* 7. *It is said that Daphne was changed (trans. Daphne is said to have been changed) into a laurel by Apollo.* 8. *How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country?* 9. *The Romans, who subtracted a part from his*

¹ Lit. *for us under eyes*, i.e. *under our eyes*. Why is ^{us}nōbīs Dat.? See Par. 7.

kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new province. 10. There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus received wound on wound.

183 PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.

Ād,	to.	Juxtā,	{ near, hard by, next to.
Adversūs,	towards, against.	Ōb,	{ in front of (rare), on account of.
Antē,	before.	Pēnēs,	{ in the hands of.
Āpūd,	{ at, near, among, in the house of, in the pre- sence of, in the pages of.	Pēr,	{ through.
		Post,	{ after. ¹
		Praetēr,	{ besides, beyond.
Circā, circum,	around.	Prōpē,	{ near.
Circitēr,	about.	Proptēr,	{ close to, on ac- count of.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Sēcundum,	{ following, in ac- cordance with.
Contrā,	{ against, con- trary to.	Suprā,	{ above.
Ergā,	{ towards (only of the feelings).	Trans,	{ across.
Extrā,	outside of.	Ultrā,	{ on the farther side of.
Infrā,	below.	Versūs,	{ towards (in the direction of). ²
Intēr,	between, among.		
Intrā,	inside of, within.		

184 The various meanings of the Prepositions (only a few of which have been given above) must be learned by practice. But some help may be gained by remembering that most Prepositions can be used to denote some THOUGHT, such as that of *cause, obstacle, superiority*, &c., besides denoting relations of PLACE and TIME. Thus ōb meant originally (1) *in front of*, but it means more commonly (2) *on account of*; pēr means (1) *through*, of SPACE, but it also means (2) *throughout or during*, of TIME, and (3) *through*, of MEANS, or *owing to*, of CAUSE; antē means (1) *before*, of TIME, “before

¹ Pōnē, an old form of post, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.

185 ² Versus usually follows the name of the place to which motion is directed: *in the direction of Ambracia, Ambrāciam versus*. Sometimes ad is inserted before the name of the place: *ad Océānum versus*. Versus and adversus have old forms *versum* and *adversum*.

daybreak ;" (2) *before*, of PLACE, "*before the gates ;*" (3) *before*, of ESTIMATION, "He loved Balbus *before*, or *above*, the rest."

EXERCISE LX.

186 *Ād*, *to* or *towards*, is used to denote *purpose*, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used *transitively* in English, the Acc. of the *Gerundive Adjective*.

(1) *This will be useful to drink-* Hoc *ād bībendum* ūtilē ērit.
(*ing*).¹

I am prepared to fight(ing). *Ād pugnandum* pārātus sum.

(2) *This is useful for cultivating the fields, i.e. towards the fields being hereafter cultivated.* Hōc est *ād agros cōlendos* ūtilē (*not ād agros cōlendum*).

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatum est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit.² 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud iudices rei facti sunt.³ 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat ante lucem surgere, negotia ante voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcerem reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpina. 6. Phaethon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, de curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meae jure do.⁴ 8. Hoc contra jus fasque est, trans Euphratem exercitum tuum in pace trajicere.⁵ 9. Interfecti sunt hostium supra viginti milia.⁶ 10. Hoc est infra tuam dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad minus (*adv.*) feriendum sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitatu parum apta erat.⁷

187 ¹ In Old English *to* was followed by a Gerund resembling the form *drinking*, not by an Infinitive.

188 ² Trans. "after the battle had gone on," and remember that *postquam* with the Latin Perfect (not Pluperfect) represents the English *had*.

Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction *postquam*, *when* or *after* (*that*), and the Preposition *post*.

³ Look out *rēus*.

⁴ Why is *jūrē* Abl.? See Par. 182.

⁵ "Trajicere . . . exercitum" is in Apposition to *hōc*.

⁶ *Hostium* is Gen. governed by *milia*. The Nom. to *interfecti sunt* is *hostes* understood, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.

⁷ *Equitātui* is *Dat. of Advantage*, see Par. 7.

1. *Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening (30).* 2. *Why have you led your army across the Euphrates?* 3. *In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed (i.e. said).* 4. *When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison.* 5. *Bread is useful even for quenching thirst.* 6. *This water is not fit to drink.* 7. *Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God?* 8. *It is right to place business before pleasure.* 9. *Have not these things come under your notice (i.e. eyes)?* 10. *During (per) two nights, in this great (i.e. so-great) storm, death was before our eyes.*

EXERCISE LXI.

189 *Intēr se* (expressing all reciprocal relations) means *among themselves; together; with, between, or from, one another.*

Cicero's children are very loving *Cicērōnis pŭeri āmant intēr se.*
among one another.

These things do not agree together, or disagree from one another. *Haec intēr sē rēpugnant, or contrāria sunt.*

1. *Imperator, penes quem est imperium, jam adversus Gallos bellum moventi, debes parere.* 2. *Inter urbem et campum fossa erat, per quam amnis quondam fluxerat.* 3. *Tullius, quem praeter modum stultissimus quisque laudat (140) neminem praeter sese amat.*¹ 4. *"Qui per alium facit, facit per se."* 5. *Per tres annos vitam in insula quadam propter Siciliam egit.* 6. *Quaedam propter sese expetenda sunt.* 7. *Hoc inter sese disputant philosophi: sed inter disputationes et facta quantum (adv.) interest!* 8. *Centurio noster, qui hanc ob causam extra teli jactum suos retinebat, cum extra culpam esset (151 a), non punitus est.* 9. *Quando hanc tantam eius benevolentiam erga te agnosces?* 10. *Nonne quaerendum est nobis quomodo hae sententiae inter sese contrariae sint?* 11. *Via una praeter fluminis ripam erat; altera inter duos altissimos montes; tertia per silvam ad urbem ducebat.*

1. *He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one (92).* 2. *Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself.*² 3. *How*

¹ Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of *quem*? The subject of *laudat*? See *Hints on Construing*, Appendix III., p. 216.

² *To-be-sought, i.e. meet-to-be-sought.*

*great a-difference-is (there) between hopes and deeds! 4. The general took-care to keep his soldiers out of shot. 5. One road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other (86) led through a small wood, across a stream. 6. The judgment is in your hands: When (156) will you judge? 7. Why do you beyond measure praise the foolish (126) Tullius? 8. Labienus will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine. 9. When will you send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting amongst one another? 10. I ask you, my friends, how virtue and vice are contrary (161) to one*another. 11. For this cause we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near (prōpě) the town.*

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

190 FORMATION.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs compounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or e of the Verb into i: thus, from *fācio* we have *dēfīcio* *suffīcio*, (*i.e.* *sub-fīcio*), *confīcio*, (*i.e.* *cum-fīcio*), &c., and from *lēgo* we have *dēlīgo*, *collīgo*, (*i.e.* *con-līgo* or *cum-līgo*), &c.¹ But the perfects remain unchanged: *dē-fēcī*, *suf-fēcī*, *de-lēgi*, *collēgi*, &c.²

191 (2) The Verb *prōd-est*, *it is profitable*, retains *d* before all forms of *sum* beginning with a vowel, but drops it before all beginning with a consonant.

Prōd-est; prōd-ērat; prōd-ērit; prōd-esse.
Prō-sum; prō-fuit; prō-fuērat; prō-fuērit.

192 CONSTRUCTION.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object, or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper to the Preposition.

- (1) *He took a ring from me.* *Ānūlum mīhi dētraxit.*
 (2) *He took a ring from my finger.* *Ānūlum dē dīgīto mēo dētraxit.*

¹ But there are exceptions: *e.g.* *intellēgo* (not *intellīgo*) is the correct form.

193 ² Three compounds of *-lēgo* make the Perf. in *-lexi*, (1) *dīlēgo*, *love*; (2) *neglēgo*, *neglect*; (3) *intellēgo*, *understand*.

- 194 The Compounds of *sum*, e.g. *ădest*, *înest*, *intērest*, &c., all take a Dative:

Help me, Jupiter!

Adēs mīhi, Juppīter.

- 195 Note the following use of *ăbest*:

I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. very little is absent by-which-not (145a) I fall.

Mīnimum ăbest, or ăbērit, quīn cădam.

I was within a very little of falling.

Mīnimum ăfuit (not abfuit) quīn cădērem.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. Non prodest tibi flere. 2. Non dubium est quin tributum victis impositum sit (9a). 3. Nostri urbi murum circumdederunt. 4. Cur non ei gladium eripuisti? 5. Alexander ipse his proeliis interfuit. 6. Minimum afuit quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. 7. Romani Armeniam stultissimo illi regi detraherent. 8. Interrogabo cur huic tam forti equiti equum detraxerit (9a). 9. Non dubium erat quin frumentum civibus deesset. 10. Hoc (Nom.) cum militibus nostris summum terrorem iniecisset, imperator Tullium decimae legioni praefecit. 11. Ob hanc causam frumentum exercitui defuturum erat. 12. Tu, qui me isti hodie postponis, cras antepones. 13. Oro te ne tales condiciones victae genti imponas.

1. *There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch (i.e. set-round the camp a ditch).* 2. *The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy.* 3. *I asked the leader how-much (of) tribute (71) he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city.* 4. *That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles.* 5. *You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness.* 6. *Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had (trans. the hope which I had last, 'last to agree with 'which')?* 7. *These words of the general displeased the king: who withdrew from him a large part of the army.* 8. *I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard (trans. these so hard) conditions.* 9. *By-this-time all hope was gone (i.e. was absent) from us.* 10. *Conquered (pass. part. agrees with 'Balbus') by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.*

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

196 There is no regular Perfect Participle *Active* in Latin, so as to express the English *having killed*. Latin has therefore to use the *Passive* Participle in the Ablative, thus :

The barbarians, the citizens Barbāri, cīvībus interfectis,
having been killed (by them) urbem incendērunt.
set the city on fire i.e. the
barbarians, having killed the
citizens, set the city on fire.

The Noun and Participle thus expressing *some circumstance in connection with the principal Verb*, are put in the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express *manner* and *circumstance*, as well as *instrument*, see Par. 181); and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by the English Active, *e.g.*

The citizens having been slain, Cīvībus interfectis, urbs in-
the city was set on fire. censa est.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.¹
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.
4. Hieme barbari, missis legatis, pacem ab imperatore petiverunt.
5. Imperator, direpto a barbaris templo, statuit urbem eorum incendere.
6. His auditis nostri clamorem tollunt, et trajecto amne impetum in hostem faciunt.
7. Tarquinio ex urbe expulso, consules imperium susceperunt.
8. Imperator, re feliciter gesta, tributum victae genti imposuerat.
9. Exposito exercitu Caesar equitatum ante se mittit.
10. Non dubium est quin, cognito hostium adventu, terror ingens nostros invasurus sit.

¹ In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two ways, 1st, literally, *the Rhine having been crossed (by him)*, and 2nd, according to the English idiom, *having crossed the Rhine or when he had crossed the Rhine*. In subsequent Exercises the second or true English translation may suffice.

1. *The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for-a-short-time retreated.*
2. *Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Caesar gave-orders-to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Caesar gave, &c.*
3. *There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.*
4. *Having carried on the war most-prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) countrymen.*
5. *The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.*
6. *After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.*
7. *The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.¹*
8. *Codrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in-haste (181).*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*continued*).

197 The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

- (1) *When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their caves.* **Sōle occidente, lēōnes antra linquunt** (p. 207).
- (2) *While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.* **Tullio rēge.**
While I am alive, i.e. I being alive. **Mē vivo** (adj.).
In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge. **Mē jūdīce.**

198 N.B.—When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the *Subject* or *Object* of a Verb, the *Ablative Absolute* must not be used. Thus, *While the general was leading on his men, he was transfixes by an arrow*, must not be rendered “*Impērātōre milītes dūcente (is) sǎgittā transfixus est,*” but “*Impērātor, milītes dūcens, sǎgittā transfixus est,*” or else “*Impērātōrem, milītes dūcentem, sǎgittā transfixit.*”

198a ¹ Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: *the cities (which) he had taken.*

*Dionysius having been banished,
(he) taught boys.*¹

Dīōnysius, ex urbe **pulsus**,
puēros docebat (*not*, **Dīō-**
nysio pulso.)

*Having at last found the boy,
Tullius sent him back to his
(the boy's) friends.*

Pŭerum tandem rēpertum Tul-
lius ad amīcos eius rēmīsit
(*not*, **Pŭero** rēperto . . . T.
eum remīsit.)

EXERCISE LXIV.

1 Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre nequiquam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mulier, nequiquam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Suevorum fines intrabimus; a quibus, me iudice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Caesare et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. *By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully.* 2. *The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us.* 3. *The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting).* 4. *The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198).* 5. *The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul.* 6. *During-the-reign-of Tarquin, great buildings were erected in the city.* 7. *There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire.* 8. *The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it).*

¹ The *he* is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English; but it must be omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE LXIV.*

(Recapitulatory.)

1. In eo eramus ut vinceremur. 2. Curate ne ab hostibus opprimamini. 3. Si urbem ipsi incenderitis, nemo vestrum servabitur. 4. Murus et arx ab equitibus capta sunt. 5. Et ego et tu ab optimo quoque civium laudati sumus. 6. Urbem captam Balbus, dux crudelissimus, incenderat. 7. Ne tu injustos, Tulli optime, laudaveris. 8. Quod scelus commisit? Quid morte dignum fecit? 9. Num tu, puer jam duodecim annos (31), natus octo vel novem horas dormis? 10. Interrogastine num in oppido mulier mansura sit? 11. Balbum, plura fortasse dicturum, hastae equitum transfixerunt. 12. Quid huic arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, tantum (*adv.*) nocuit? 13. Huius tantae calamitatis vel memoria nobis semper erit ingratissima. 14. Interrogate quando ventura sit (32)? num in animo habeat biduum in oppido manere? 15. De Tullio valde dubito num vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus sit. 16. Balbus, homo parum (*adv.*) contentus, aliena laudat, sua semper culpat. 17. Cur tibi, nostri immemori, tot dona damus? 18. Ab optimo quoque civium responsum est. 19. Nobis (192) pro patria pugnantibus homo ignavissimus ob ignaviam suam spem ultimam eripuit. 20. Minimum afuit quin urbi fossam circumdaremus. 21. Non est dubium quin Balbus decimae legioni praefectus fuerit.

DEPONENT VERBS.

- 199 A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle with Active meaning. These Verbs, though having an *Active meaning*, yet have a *Passive form* in all the Tenses and in the Past Participle, as *hortor*, *I exhort*, *hortābor*, *I will exhort*, *hortātus*, *having exhorted*.
- 200 Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also the Active forms of the *Participles*, *Supines*, and *Gerunds*: *hortans*, *hortaturus*, *exhorting*, *about to exhort*, &c.
- 201 The Deponent Gerundive, e.g. *hortandus*, *meet to be exhorted*, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.¹

¹ The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used Passively, as, *ādeptus*, *having been obtained*, from *ādīpiscor*.

DEPONENT

I. Hortör, hortātūs sum, hortārī, *exhort*, like āmör.II. Věreör, věrītūs sum, věrērī, *fear*, like mōneör.

	I.			II.		
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
	<i>Present.</i> Hort-ör, { <i>I exhort, or am exhorting.</i> Hort-ārīs { <i>thou exhortest.</i> &c. &c. <i>Future Simple.</i> Hort-ābör, <i>I shall exhort.</i> <i>Imperfect.</i> Hort-ābār, <i>I was exhorting.</i> <i>Perfect,</i> Hort-ātūs, { <i>I have exhorted.</i> sum, } <i>or I exhorted.</i> <i>Fut. Perfect.</i> Hort-ātūs { <i>I shall have ex-</i> éro, } <i>horted.</i> <i>Pluperfect.</i> Hort-ātūs { <i>I had exhorted.</i> eram, }			Věr-eör, { <i>I fear, or am fearing.</i> Věr-ērīs { <i>thou fearest.</i> (ērē), } &c. &c. Věr-ēbör, <i>I shall fear.</i> Věr-ēbār, <i>I was fearing.</i> Věr-itūs, { <i>I have feared,</i> sum, } <i>or I feared.</i> Věr-itūs { <i>I shall have</i> éro, } <i>feared.</i> Věr-itūs { <i>I had feared.</i> eram, }		
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
	<i>Present.</i> Hort-ér, <i>I may exhort.</i> <i>Imperfect.</i> Hort-ārēr, <i>I might exhort.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Hort-ātūs, { <i>I may have ex-</i> sim, } <i>horted.</i> <i>Pluperfect.</i> Hort-ātūs { <i>I should have ex-</i> essem, } <i>horted.</i>			Věr-eär, <i>I may fear.</i> Věr-ērēr, <i>I might fear.</i> Věr-itūs, { <i>I may have</i> sim, } <i>feared.</i> Věr-itūs { <i>I should have</i> essem, } <i>feared,</i>		
	IMPERATIVE.					
	<i>Present.</i> Hort-ārě, <i>Exhort thou.</i> <i>Future.</i> Hort-ātör, { <i>thou shalt, or must exhort.</i>			Věr-ērě, <i>Fear thou.</i> Věr-ětör, { <i>thou shalt, or must fear.</i>		
	INFINITIVE.					
	<i>Pres. & Imperf.</i> Hort-ārī, <i>to exhort.</i> <i>Perf. & Plup.</i> Hort-ātūs, { <i>to have exhorted.</i> esse, } <i>Future.</i> Hort-ātūrūs, { <i>to be about to</i> essē, } <i>exhort.</i>			Věr-ērī, <i>to fear.</i> Věr-itūs, { <i>to have feared.</i> essē, } Věr-itūrūs, { <i>to be about to</i> essē, } <i>fear.</i>		
	PAR-TICLES.					
	<i>Present.</i> Hort-ans, <i>exhorting.</i> <i>Future.</i> Hort-āturus, <i>about to exhort.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Hort-ātūs, <i>having exhorted.</i> <i>Gerundive.</i> Hort-andūs, { <i>meet to be ex-</i> horted.			Věr-ens, <i>fearing.</i> Věr-iturus, <i>about to fear.</i> Věr-itūs, <i>having feared.</i> Věr-endūs, <i>meet to be feared.</i>		
	SUPINES.					
	Hort-atum, <i>to exhort.</i> Hort-itū, <i>to be exhorted.</i> GERUND. Hort-andi, <i>of exhorting.</i> &c. &c.			Věr-itum, <i>to fear.</i> Věr-itū, <i>to be feared.</i> Věr-endi, <i>of fearing.</i> &c. &c.		

VERBS.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, *speaking*, like rēgōr.IV. Partiōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, *dividing*, like audiō.

III.		IV.		INDICATIVE MOOD.
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ōr, { <i>I speak, or am speaking.</i> Lōqu-ērīs (ērē), { <i>thou speakest.</i> &c. } &c.	Part-iōr, { <i>I divide, or am dividing.</i> Part-īrīs (irē), { <i>thou dividest.</i> &c. } &c.		
<i>Fut. Simple.</i>	Lōqu-ār, <i>I shall speak.</i>	Part-iār, <i>I shall divide.</i>		
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ēbār, <i>I was speaking.</i>	Part-iēbār, <i>I was dividing.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs sum, { <i>I have spoken, or I spoke.</i>	Part-itūs sum, { <i>I have divided, or I divided.</i>		
<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs ēro, { <i>I shall have spoken</i>	Part-itūs ēro, { <i>I shall have divided.</i>		
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs ēram, { <i>I had spoken.</i>	Part-itūs ēram, { <i>I had divided.</i>		
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ār, <i>I may speak.</i>	Part-iār, <i>I may divide.</i>		
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ērēr, <i>I might speak.</i>	Part-irēr, <i>I might divide.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs sim, { <i>I may have spoken.</i>	Part-itūs sim, { <i>I may have divided.</i>		
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs essem, { <i>I should have spoken.</i>	Part-itūs essem, { <i>I should have divided.</i>		
				IMPERATIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ērē, <i>speaking thou.</i>	Part-irē, <i>Divide thou.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	Lōqu-ītōr, { <i>thou shalt, or must speak.</i>	Part-itōr, { <i>thou shalt, or must divide.</i>		
				INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	Lōqu-i, <i>to speak.</i>	Part-irī, <i>to divide.</i>		
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	Lōcū-tūs essē, { <i>to have spoken.</i>	Part-itūs essē, { <i>to have divided.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcū-tūrūs { <i>to be about to speak.</i>	Part-itūrūs { <i>to be about to divide.</i>		
				PARTICIPLES.
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ens, <i>speaking.</i>	Part-iens, <i>dividing.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcū-tūrūs, <i>about to speak.</i>	Part-itūrūs, <i>about to divide.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs, <i>having spoken.</i>	Part-itūs, <i>having divided.</i>		
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Lōqu-endūs <i>meet to be spoken</i>	Part-iendūs, <i>meet to be divided</i>		
<i>SUPINES.</i>	Lōcū-tum, <i>to speak.</i>	Part-itum, <i>to divide.</i>		
	Lōcū-tū, <i>to be spoken.</i>	Part-itū, <i>to be divided.</i>		
<i>GERUND.</i>	Lōqu-endi, <i>of speaking.</i> &c. } &c.	Part-iendi, <i>of dividing.</i> &c. } &c.		

EXERCISE LXV.

202 The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with *men* understood: *victis* parcē, *spare the conquered*; *fūgientes* sēquere, *follow those-who-are fleeing*.¹

1. Non dubium est quin regina filias suas hortata sit (9a). 2. Ne mentitus sis, mi fili. 3. Interrogabam puerum cur asini vocem imitaretur. 4. Pygmalion, diu imaginem contemplatus, tandem eam spirantem mirabatur. 5. Conatus parva, homo ignavissimus minora perficiebat. 6. Non dubium est quin miranda perfecturus sis, nisi tyranni exemplum imitaberis. 7. Hortandus est tibi frater ne pessimi istius amici exemplum imitetur.² 8. Deos veneramini, imitamini parentes. 9. Diu dolum meditatus tandem servis suis imperavit ut armati gladiis Tullium nocte sequerentur. 10. O divinam illam vitam voluptatem (202) aspernantium, sequentium virtutem!³

1. *Virtue is to be followed for its own sake (i.e. on account of itself)*. 2. *Having imitated the bad from (his) boyhood, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad*. 3. *The life of those-who-follow (trans. those-following) virtue is most happy*. 4. *Attempt great things, that you may at-least accomplish small things*. 5. *Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at (ad) his feet*. 6. *Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to (143) lie-in-wait-for the consul?* 7. *In-vain do you venerate the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating suares for the innocent (7)*. 8. *Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not (18) suffer poverty*.

203 RULE.—*Obliviscor, rēminiscor, rēcorder, mīserēor*, commonly govern the Genitive.⁴

204 ¹ Note that “*iis victis*” would mean “*them, since they are conquered,*” and “*cos fugientes,*” “*them, while, or since, they are fleeing;*” and generally a Latin Participle, in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (154a).

205 ² When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: *That distinguished man, clarissimus illē vīr*.

206 ³ The Accusative is commonly used with *O* in exclamation (not in address), and may be called the *Exclamatory Accusative*.

⁴ These Verbs were once reflexive, *I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of, &c.* Compare the French “*se plaindre,*” *to pity*, and in Old English, *I remember myself of*.

Distinguish between (1) *mīseror, -āri, I shew-pity-to*, which governs an Acc., and (2) *mīserēor, -ēri, I feel-pity-for*, which governs a Genitive.

207 RULE.—Fungor, fruor, ūtor, vescor, pōtior, govern the Ablative.¹

EXERCISE LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a).
 2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur.
 3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est.
 4. Recordare uxoris tuae; ne liberorum oblitus sis, in te uno spem ponentium.
 5. Vastandi sunt agri gentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur.
 6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est.
 7. Qui magistratibus functi erant, eos, capta urbe summo honore affecimus.
 8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis oblivisci.
 9. Sagacitate canum ad nostram utilitatem utimur.
 10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?
1. *To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant.*
 2. *There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils.*
 3. *You should eat (i.e. it-is-to-be-eaten) that you may live; you should not live that you may eat.*
 4. *Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us.*
 5. *If you do not (i.e. unless you shall) show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate [trans. same (things).]*
 6. *Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly [i.e. before (ante) others] enjoy prosperity.*
 7. *I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or (171) ill.*
 8. *Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy.*²

EXERCISE LXVII.

1. Nisi res adversas experiemur patientiam non discemus.
2. Loquere pauca, multa disce.
3. Parentes et verendi et amandi sunt.
4. Plurima pollicentibus ne tu credideris.³
5. Forte leo et asinus et vulpes, partituri praedam, de partibus sortiebantur.⁴
6. Dux noster, cives captae urbis clementer allocutus, pavorem omnium minuit.
7. Nocte proficiscamur ne hostis nos videat.
8. Nonne scelus fatemini? Fatendum est, si poenam effugere cupitis.
9. Quid tibi videtur? Qui pro

¹ These Verbs were also once reflexive, e.g. *fruor*, *I enjoy myself with*; *vescor*, *I feed myself with*; *ūtor*, *I employ myself with*.

² *Old-man* is in Apposition with *you* the Subject of *forget*.

³ *Pollicentibus* is not Abl.; see Par. 202.

⁴ *Vulpēs* is feminine; why therefore is *partitūri* masc.; See Par. 161.

N.B. Latin inserts *et* between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits *et* between each; English inserts it only before the last

The lion, the ass, and the fox.

Lēo, (et) āsinus, (et) vulpēs.

patria moritur nonne is laude dignus est?¹ 10. Cohorti jam ex urbe proficiscenti sex aquilae, omen optimum,² visae sunt (*appeared*). 11. Non dubium erat quin mulier fame et siti mortua esset. 12. Adepti libertatem, nonne contenti eritis nisi et (146) imperium adipiscemini?

1. *Did not pain seem the greatest of evils* (73) *to the disciples of Epicurus?* 2. *Take care to obtain liberty.* 3. *Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city?* 4. *The general made every preparation* (i.e. *prepared all things*) *that he might set-out on the next day.* 5. *The woman was within a very little* (194) *of dying of* (Lat. Abl.) *hunger and thirst.* 6. *When-they-had-conversed* (154a) *together* (189) *they determined to set-out at night.* 7. *Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are* (i.e. *being*) *about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting.* 8. *Trust one-who-has-experienced* (202) (*it*): *he-who-promises much* (i.e. *many things*) *performs little* (i.e. *few things*). 9. *I asked the rich Balbus when* (156) *he was going to enjoy* (i.e. *was about-to-enjoy*) *the riches which he had* (subjunctive) *obtained.* 10. *What prevented you from confessing the truth* (i.e. *true things*)?

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208

1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, *e.g. he is mistaken*, becomes the Object of a Verb, *e.g. believe, declare, &c.*, there are two ways of expressing the change in English *but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive*:

I declare (1) *that he is mistaken.*
I declare (2) *him to be mistaken.*

Dīco ĕum errāre.

Here *errāre* is “the Infinitive depending on *dīco*”; and *ĕum* is “the Subject of the Infinitive *errāre*,” (i.e. *ĕum* is so related to *errāre* that, *if errāre* were in the Indicative, *ĕum*, or rather *īs*, would be its Subject or Nominative).

209

2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, viz., Accusative and Infinitive, is used in Subject-Clauses: *That-he-is-in-error, is certain*, (or, *It is certain that he is in error*),

¹ What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of *qui*?

² The punctuation shews that *ōmen* is not Nom. after *sunt*: what Case is it then (123)?

Certum est *ĕum errāre*; *That I should go into exile pleased them, (or, It pleased them that I should go into exile),*
Plācūit eis *mē* in exsiliū *īre*.

210 THE TENSE IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT-CLAUSES.—After a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English Indicative e.g. *is* (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the English Infinitive e.g. *to be* (208, 2) *remains unchanged*: and the Latin Infinitive also *remains unchanged*: *I declared (1) that he WAS mistaken; I declared (2) him TO BE mistaken: dixi ĕum errāre.*¹

211	OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	
	<i>Tullius said that</i>	<i>Tullius said,</i>	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
	(1)	(1)	(1)
(a)	<i>he conquered</i>	<i>"I conquer"</i>	<i>sē vincēre</i>
(b)	<i>he was conquering</i>	<i>"I am conquering"</i>	
	(2)	(2)	(2)
{	<i>he conquered,</i>	<i>"I conquered"</i>	<i>sē vīcisse</i>
	<i>had conquered, or,</i>	<i>"I was conquering"</i>	
	<i>had been conquering</i>	<i>"I had conquered"</i>	
		<i>"I had been conquer- ing"</i>	
		<i>"I have conquered"</i>	
	(3)	(3)	(3)
	<i>he should conquer</i>	<i>"I shall conquer"</i>	<i>sē victūrum esse</i> ²
	<i>he was about to conquer</i>	<i>"I am about to conquer"</i>	

EXERCISE LXVII, A.

1. Tullia dicit se tibi haec pollicenti credituram esse.³
2. Clamaverunt obsides se meliore fato dignos esse.
3. Responderunt virgines nunquam se tantae virtutis oblituras esse.
4. Negavit magister discipulos corpora satis exercuisse.
5. Placetne tibi tot cives uni tyranno parere?
6. Respondit puer se nescire quot sorores haberet.
7. Fatendum est te promississe multa, parca perficere.
8. Scribunt mihi se duos menses in Italia mansisse, jam in Graeciam profecturos esse.

¹ *Dixi ĕum errāvissē* would have meant, *I declared him to have been, or that he had been, mistaken.*

² In accordance with Par. 24, *esse* takes the same case after it as before it; and therefore, since *sē* is the Accusative, *victūrum* is also Accusative.

³ Hitherto *sē* has been used only for *himself, themselves, &c.*: but in Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by *he, they, &c.*

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above Exercise as Principal Sentences : 1. Ego tibi. . . credam. 2. Meliore fato digni sumus, &c. ; see 218a).

1. *It is certain that no dangers will terrify him.* 2. *He said that he feared (210) these dangers.*¹ 3. *The boy writes that he had always exercised (his) body.* 4. *My sister says that she will not depart from the city.* 5. *Have you heard that the barbarians set the city on fire?* 6. *Do not (169) say that you did this.* 7. *He said that he should bind the captives.* 8. *He did-not-know that they had escaped in the night.*

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

212 As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except the Supine *irī*, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis :

Tullius said that he should be conquered. Tullius dixit **fōre**, or **fūtūrum esse, ut vincerētur**, i.e. *that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.*

213 OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	Tullius dixit
(1) <i>he was being conquered</i>	(1) “ <i>I am being conquered</i> ”	(1) sē vinci
(2) (a) (b) <i>he was conquered</i>	(2) (a) “ <i>I am conquered</i> ” ³	(2) (a) (b) sē victum esse ²
(c) (d) <i>he had been conquered</i>	(b) “ <i>I was conquered</i> ” (c) “ <i>I had been conquered</i> ” (d) “ <i>I have been conquered</i> ”	(c) (d) sē victum fuisse ²
(3) <i>he should be conquered</i> <i>he was about to be conquered</i>	(3) “ <i>I shall be conquered</i> ” “ <i>I am about to be conquered</i> ”	(3) fōre, or fūtūrum esse ut vincerētur

¹ Wherever *he, she, &c.*, in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be rendered by **sē**.

214 ² The **esse** or **fuisse** is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.) : and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

215 Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase “*in eo sum ut*” (Par. 166). *Tullius said that he was or had been (on the point of) being conquered*, Tullius dixit **se in eo esse, or fuisse, ut vincerētur**.

216 ³ “*I am loved*” would imply that the action continued, and would be rendered “**sē amāri** ;” but “*I am conquered*” implies that the action is

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the *third* column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the *second* column, where it is used as a *Principal Verb*.

- 217 RULE.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of *the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.*

EXERCISE LXVIII.

- 218 RULE.—Use *sē, suus, &c.* (not *ĕum, eius, &c.*) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb:

Tullius said that he (i.e. Tullius) was mistaken. Tullius dixit *sē* errāre.

I said that he was mistaken. Dixi *ĕum* errāre.

1. Quis nescit solem luna majorem esse? 2. Dixit se in animo habere ad patriam reverti. 3. Dixit se in animo habuisse ex Italia proficisci; sed tempestatem obstitisse. 4. Mulieres clamaverunt nunquam se ad oppidum libenter reversuras esse. 5. Balbum certiores fecimus nos ad Italiam venisse. ibi paulisper manere, inde ad Graeciam venturos (214). 6. Tullius clamavit quendam se solum fuisse, nunc vero venia dignum esse. 7. Interrogavi num captivos vinxisset; respondit nondum se vinxisse, cras autem vinciturum esse. 8. Certum erat urbem ab ipsis civibus incensam esse. 9. Compertum erat hostium (91) trecentos prope a castris nostris abesse. 10. Certum est nunquam fore ut urbs a te capiatur. 11. Negavere hostes futurum esse ut nobis urbem intransitibus resisteretur (167). 12. Respondimus legatos a nobis quoque ad hostem mitti.¹

past, and only the result is present. The pupil must carefully distinguish between the *two meanings of the ambiguous English Passive*, e.g. (1) "the house is *burned*, incensa est;" (2) "the house is *guarded*," custoditur.

- 218a ¹ The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) sol lunā major est. (2) Ego in animo habeo, &c. (3) Ego in animo habui (or habueram) ex Italia, &c. (4) Nunquam nos revertemur, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) *Four hundred of the enemy are hastening*, &c. (2) *Some of the citizens say one thing, others another.* (3) *I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose*, &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.

1. *It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city.* 2. *He answered that some (86) of the citizens said one thing, others another.* 3. *He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy.* 4. *It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece.* 5. *Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily?* 6. *We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound.* 7. *I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow.* 8. *It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night.* 9. *They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians.* 10. *Who does-not-know that Tarquin was sent into exile by Brutus?* 11. *I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day.* 12. *When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 219** 1. Impersonal Verbs denoting *feeling* require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause¹:

Misēret	} me tuae stultitiae.	I	pity	} your folly.
Piget			am vexed at	
Poenitet			repent of	
Pūdet			am ashamed of	
Taedet			am weary of	

- 220** 2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

Dēcet	} mē	{ diligētia.	Industry	{ becomes	} me.
Dēdēcet					
				misbecomes	

- 221** 3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

Lībet	} mīhī hōc fācēro.	It pleases me (suits my fancy) It is lawful for me	} to do this. ²
Licet			

¹ So in Old English, *it repents me of, it pitied him of, &c.*

221a ² Plācet is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "plācūit lēgātos mitti," *it pleased them, i.e. they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent*; but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.

- 222 4. The verbs *oportet*, *it behoves*, and *liquet*, *it is clear*, take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.¹

It is clear that the man has been slain. *Liquet* hōmīnem interfectum esse.

- 223 Note that *oportet* (or *dēbeo*, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

You ought to come, lit., *it behoves you to come.* *Oportet* tē (or *dēbēs*) *vēnīre*.

You ought to have come, lit., *it behoved you to come.* *Oportuit* tē (or *dēbuisti*) *vēnīre*.

- 224 5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: *pluit*, *it rains*, &c.

- 225 All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: *dēcēre*, *dēcēbit*, *dēcēbat*, *dēcuit*, *dēcūerat*, *dēcūisset*, &c.

- 226 Besides the Perfects in *-ūit*, there are also in use *pertaesum est* (for *taedūit*); *mīsērītum est*; *pīgītum est*; *pūđītum est*; *līcītum est*; *lībītum est* (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of *lībūit*).

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.²
2. Quando mulieres suspicionis suae pudebit?
3. Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat.
4. Licebit hosti nocte ex urbe proficisci.
5. Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare.
6. Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere?
7. Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum puderet, nonne atrociorum jam pertaesum esset.
8. Nonne iudicem dedecebat inepte loqui?
9. Aliquando te tuae tam ineptae jactationis poenitebit.³
10. De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.

227 ¹ *Ōpōrtet* and *līcet* are also followed by the Subjunctive with *ūt* omitted; *ŏpōrtet* (*ūt*) *virtūtem āmes*, *it is right that you should love virtue*. The insertion of the *ūt* is post-classical, or rare.

227a ² As the implied Subject of the sentence is *sēnex*, "the old man will repent," *sūus* is here used and not *eius*, see Par. 218.

228 ³ *Tam* is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*.

11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taedet. 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem petere. 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum non muto.

1. *When will it-be-lawful for us to set-out from the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their* (227a) *boasting.* 3. *Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their suspicion.* 4. *Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause?* 5. *You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes even* (141a) *a boy to-be-ignorant-of.* 6. *I asked the magistrate whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city.* 7. *It-is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain.* 8. *Let* (227) *them murmur to one another* (189) *that I am guilty; I-for-my-part* (139) *know that I am innocent.* 9. *When will you confess that you ought to* (223) *have led those two hundred soldiers with you?* 10. *It was uncertain whether the woman was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father.* 11. *Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the booty from the robbers.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

229

1. Possum, pōtūi, possē,—to be able; can.¹

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. <i>Present.</i>		3. <i>Imperfect.</i>	
Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pōt-eram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis	Pōt-ērās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-est	Pos-sit	Pōt-ērāt	Pos-sēt
Pos-sūmūs	Pos-simūs	Pōt-ērāmūs	Pos-sēmūs
Pōt-estīs	Pos-sītīs	Pōt-ērātīs	Pos-sētīs
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pōt-ērant	Pos-sent
2. <i>Future-Simple.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
Pōt-ēro	(wanting.)	Pōt-ūi	Pōt-uērim
Pōt-ērīs		Pōt-uistī	Pōt-uērīs
Pōt-ērīt		Pōt-uīt	Pōt-uērīt
Pōt-ērīmūs		Pōt-uīmūs	Pōt-uērimūs
Pōt-ērītīs		Pōt-uistīs	Pōt-uērītīs
Pōt-ērunt		Pōt-uērunt (ērē)	Pōt-uērint

230

¹ Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, *I-am-able*, which passes into pōte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by putting pot- before the different parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking out f after t, e.g. pot-(f)ui; (2) changing t into s before s, e.g. pos-cum (not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essem into posse and possem.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>		6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Pōt-uēro	(wanting)	Pōt-uēram	Pōt-uissem
Pōt-uērīs		Pōt-uērās	Pōt-uissēs
Pōt-uērīt		Pōt-uērāt	Pōt-uissēt
Pōt-uērimūs		Pōt-uērāmūs	Pōt-uissēmūs
Pōt-uērītīs		Pōt-uērātīs	Pōt-uissētīs
Pōt-uērīnt		Pōt-uērānt	Pōt-uissent

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. Perf. and Plup.—Pōtuissē. Future
—wanting. (Participle pōtens, used only as Adjective,
powerful.)

- 231 As *possum* has no Participle in *-rus*, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in *-rus*, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used :

I will ask whether he will be *Interrogābo num fūtūrum sit*
able to help me. *ut possit mīhī subvēnīre, i.e.*
 whether it-will-come-to-pass
 that he may be able.

EXERCISE LXX.

- 232 Pōtui (and sometimes pōtēram) is sometimes followed, like oportuit above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive :

You could have come. Pōtuisti (or pōtēras) vēnīre.

1. Veniam si potero ; cura tu ut venire possis.
2. Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiorum eius plerumque immemor eras.
3. Interrogavi nonne possent trecenti nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milibus hostium resistere.
4. Non possumus justius quam a te gubernari.
5. Nonne potuistis melius scribere ? Frater vester optime scribere poterat (*used to be able*).
6. Nihil honestius Epaninondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima.
7. Quis dubitat quin urbs

a nostris (34) expugnari potuerit? 8. Interrogavi agricolam nonne potuisset quolibet tempore fundum suum vendere.¹ 9. Valde dubito num futurum sit ut possis voluptatis illecebris resistere. 10. Miserum est olim potuisse, nunc non posse, amicis subvenire.

1. *There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends.* 2. *I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy.*² 3. *Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you?* 4. *You could have written better, but you neglected the matter.* 5. *That you may be able to help others, acquire riches.* 6. *The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quolibet) to invade our territories.* 7. *Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements?* 8. *Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.*
2. **Vōlo, vōluī, vellē**,—*I am willing, wish.*
3. **Nōlo, nōluī, nollē**,—*I am unwilling, do not wish.*³
4. **Mālo, māluī, mallē**,—*I prefer, would rather, had rather.*³

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1 Present.

Vōlo	Nōlo	Mālo
Vis	Nōn vīs	Māvīs
Vult	Nōn vult	Māvult
Vōlūmūs	Nōlūmūs	Mālūmūs
Vultis	Nōn vultīs	Māvultīs
Vōlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. Future-Simple.⁴

Vōl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
Vōl-ēs, &c.	Nōl-ēs, &c.	Māl-ēs, &c.

3. Imperfect.⁴

Vōl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
Vōl-ēbās, &c.	Nōl-ēbās, &c.	Māl-ēbās, &c.

232a

¹ Where **suns** cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

233

² For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able*; and for *could, was, or were able*; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of **possum** into which *can* should be translated.

234

³ **Nōlo** is for **nē-vōlo**, and **mālo** for **ma-** (*i. e.* **māgis** or **māge**) **-vōlo**. The dropping of the **v** is illustrated by the forms **sīs** (for **si vīs, if you please**) and (**sultis** for **si vultis**).

⁴ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of **rēgo**.

4. *Perfect*.¹

Völ- <i>ui</i>	Nöl- <i>ui</i>	Mäl- <i>ui</i>
Völ- <i>uistī</i> , &c.	Nöl- <i>uistī</i> , &c.	Mäl- <i>uistī</i> , &c.

5. *Future-Perfect*.¹

Völ- <i>uëro</i>	Nöl- <i>uëro</i>	Mäl- <i>uëro</i>
Völ- <i>uëris</i> , &c.	Nöl- <i>uëris</i> , &c.	Mäl- <i>uëris</i> , &c.

6. *Pluperfect*.¹

Völ- <i>ueram</i>	Nöl- <i>uëram</i>	Mäl- <i>uëram</i>
Völ- <i>uërās</i> , &c.	Nöl- <i>uërās</i> , &c.	Mäl- <i>uërās</i> , &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present*.

Vël- <i>im</i>	Nöl- <i>im</i>	Mäl- <i>im</i>
Vël- <i>is</i>	Nöl- <i>is</i>	Mäl- <i>is</i>
Vël- <i>it</i>	Nöl- <i>it</i>	Mäl- <i>it</i>
Vël- <i>imūs</i>	Nöl- <i>imūs</i>	Mäl- <i>imūs</i>
Vël- <i>ītīs</i>	Nöl- <i>ītīs</i>	Mäl- <i>ītīs</i>
Vël- <i>int</i>	Nöl- <i>int</i>	Mäl- <i>int</i>

2. *Imperfect*.

Vel- <i>lem</i>	Nol- <i>lem</i>	Mal- <i>lem</i>
Vel- <i>lēs</i>	Nol- <i>lēs</i>	Mal- <i>lēs</i>
Vel- <i>lēt</i>	Nol- <i>lēt</i>	Mal- <i>lēt</i>
Vel- <i>lēmūs</i>	Nol- <i>lēmūs</i>	Mal- <i>lēmūs</i>
Vel- <i>lētīs</i>	Nol- <i>lētīs</i>	Mal- <i>lētīs</i>
Vel- <i>lent</i>	Nol- <i>lent</i>	Mal- <i>lent</i>

3. *Perfect*.¹

Völ- <i>uërim</i>	Nöl- <i>uërim</i>	Mäl- <i>uërim</i>
Völ- <i>uëris</i> , &c.	Nöl- <i>uëris</i> , &c.	Mäl- <i>uëris</i> , &c.

4. *Pluperfect*.¹

Völ- <i>uissem</i>	Nöl- <i>uissem</i>	Mäl- <i>uissem</i>
Völ- <i>uissēs</i> , &c.	Nöl- <i>uissēs</i> , &c.	Mäl- <i>uissēs</i> , &c.

¹ These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of *mōnēo*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Present.</i>	
(Wanting.)	Nōl-ī.	(Wanting.)
	Nōl-īte.	
	<i>Future.</i>	
	Nōl-īto.	
	Nōl-īto.	
	Nōl-itōte.	
	Nōl-unto.	

INFINITIVE MOOD

	<i>Present.</i>	
Vel-lě.	Nol-lě.	Mal-lě.
	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Vōl-uissě.	Nōl-uissě.	Māl-uissě.
	<i>Present Participle.</i>	
Vōl-ens.	Nōl-ens.	(Wanting.)
	<i>Gerunds and Supines.</i>	
(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)

EXERCISE LXXI.

Mālo, (being a contraction of **māgis—vōlo**, *I wish rather*), is naturally followed by **quam** *than*, coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

We had rather fight than yield. Pugnāre **quam** cēdēre **mālūmus**.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.¹
2. Imperator cum nollet mihi obesse, interrogavit fratrem meum num vellem clam ex urbe excedere.
3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (*adv.*) manere; sed excedendum tibi erit.
4. Māne nunc, si vis; sed si cras voles excedere, non tibi

¹ The Nom. to **est** is the sentence **īdem . . . nolle**. **Īdem** (not **īdem**, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by **velle**. Instead of **ea** we ought strictly to have **īd**, *i.e. that (thing)*, Nom. in Apposition to the sentence **īdem . . . nolle**. But **īd** is "attracted" into the gender of **āmicītiā**.

licebit. 5. Quid vultis, ignavissimi? Semper fugere quam mori maluistis. 6. Hoc vel voluisse mox tibi inhonestum videbitur.¹ 7. Curate, iudices, ut justa non solum dicatis sed etiam velitis. 8. Nolebam reum vinciri; sed, si praetor ita voluerit, vincendus erit. 9. Nunc quidem puer non vult discere; sed non dubium est quin futurum sit ut mox discere malit quam ludere.² 10. Interrogavi (133) fratrem eius num ludere quam discere maluerit. 11. Quam turpe est fallere! Nolite mentiri, ne multa, quae non vultis, pati cogamini. 12. Roganti mihi ut cenaret mecum, respondit se nolle foris cenare.³ 13. Nonne disciplinam quam fugam (62) mavis.

1. *What do you wish, citizens? Do you prefer six hundred kings to (quam) one?* 2. *Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius?* 3. *There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens.* 4. *When, if-not (nisi) now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city?* 5. *I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to (quam) slavery.* 6. *I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they (illi autem) replied that they preferred (217) to pay tribute rather than die.* 7. *To wish-for things-useful, is a great part of a happy life.* 8. *I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man.* 9. *Which (85) of you (93) two prefers to dine out of doors?* 10. *I am ashamed of having even (141a) wished-for this.*

Fĕro, tǎli, ferrĕ, lātum, *I bear, endure, bring.*

235 Fĕro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like rĕgo, except that, after fer-:

- (1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.⁴
fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

- (2) i is dropped before s or t.

fer-(i)s. fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

¹ The Subject of vidēbitur is a Clause. Hōc is Acc. governed by vōluisse.

² Not lūdĕrĕ mālīt. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in - - -, because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer "rēdrĕ stātīm vōlēbant" to "stātīm rēdrĕ vōlēbant."

³ Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Fōris is an Adverb.

⁴ The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dīco, dūco, and fācio: dīc, dūc, fāc.

The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from **tūli** (root **toll-o**, *I bear*), and, in the Passive, from **lātus** (another form of the same root).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indic. Present. **Fēr-o**, **fer-s**, **fer-t**, **fēr-īmus**, **fēr-tis**, **fēr-unt**.

Imperative Pres. **Fer**, **fer-tē**. *Fut.* **Fer-to**, **fert-o**, **fer-tōtē**, **fēr-unto**.

Subjunct. Imperf. **Fer-rem**, **fer-res**, **fer-ret**, **fer-rēmus**, **fer-rētis**, **fer-rent**.

Infinitive Pres. **Fer-re**.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. **Fēr-am**. *Imperf.* **Fēr-ēbam**. *Perf.* **Tūli**.

Fut. Perf. **Tūl-ero**. *Pluperf.* **Tūl-eram**.

Subjunctive Pres. **Fēr-am**. *Perf.* **Tūl-ērim**. *Pluperf.* **Tūl-issem**.

Infinitive Perf. **Tū-lisse**. *Fut.* **Lātūrū** **esse**.

Participle Pres. **Fērens**. *Fut.* **Lātūrū**.

Supines. **Lātum**, **lātu**.

Gerund. **Fērendi**, &c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Pres. **Fēr-or**, **fer-ris**, **fer-tur**, **fēr-īmur**, **fēr-īmīni**, **fēr-untur**.

Imperative Pres. [**Fer-re**],¹ **fēr-īmīni**. *Fut.* **Fer-tor**, **fer-tor**, **fēr-untor**.

Subjunctive Imperf. **Fer-rer**, **fer-rēris**, **fer-rētur**, **fer-rēmur**, **fer-rēmini**, **fer-rentur**.

Infinitive Pres. **Fer-ri**.

¹ There is no instance of this form occurring in Latin literature.

REGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Fut. Simple. Fēr-ar. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbar. *Perf.* Lātus sum.

Fut. Perf. Lātus ēro. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

Subjunctive Pres. Fēr-ar. *Perf.* Lātus sim. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

Infinitive Perf. Lātus esse. *Fut.* Lātum iri.

Participle Perf. Lātus.

Gerundive. Fēr-endus.

238 The following compounds of *fero* are noteworthy for the changes of the prefix:

Af-fēro (ad-fēro) af-ferrē, at-tūli, ad-lātum.

Au-fēro (ab-fēro) au-ferrē, abs-tūli, ab-lātum.

Ef-fēro (ex-fēro) ef-ferrē, ex-tūli, ē-lātum.

In-fēro (in-fēro) in-ferrē, in-tūli, il-lātum.

Of-fēro (ob-fēro) ob-ferrē, ob-tūli, ob-lātum.

Rē-fēro (rē-fēro) rē-ferrē, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{rē-tūli} \\ \text{ret-tūli} \end{array} \right\} \text{rē-lātum.}$

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

239 The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that take a question as their Subject or Object. Thus the Direct Question "*Quid fēcisti?*" *What did you do?* becomes:

<i>It is uncertain</i>	} <i>what you did.</i>	<i>Incertum est</i>	} <i>quid fēcēris.</i> ²
<i>Tell me</i>		<i>Dīc mīhī</i>	
<i>I shall ascertain</i>		<i>Cognoscam</i>	
<i>I know</i>		<i>Cognōvi</i> ¹	

¹ *Cognōvi* and *nōvi*, (Perf.) mean *I have ascertained*, and hence *I know*.

² Why *quid*, not *quōd*? Ans. because it is the construction of the Indirect Question. This constr. is used with *intērest* and *rēfert* (329); it matters not what he said, non *rēfert quid dixērit*.

After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the SEQUENCE of TENSES (Par. 136).

EXERCISE LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo laturos sitis hanc tantam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitantium (154a). 2. Ferebamus convicia eius, feremus maledicta; laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.¹ 3. Nonne reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit?² 4. Non dubium est quin Ariovisto, regi potentissimo, bellum illaturi simus. 5. Nonne miles es? Nonne vallum fers et arma? 6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent? cur tandem arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent.³ 7. Comperistine quot nostrorum in hoc tam (228) funesto proelio ceciderint? 8. De provinciis ad Patres consules rettulerunt; de legatis nihil relatum est. 9. Cognoscam per nuntium num legem a Graccho rogatam Patres aegre tulerint. 10. Cognoscere volumus num hae tot tantaeque calamitates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. 11. Quid obstat quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur? 12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate abstulisti. 13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne jam perficies?

1. *I have never been able to ascertain why the matter was referred to the senate.* 2. *Tell (237) me, friend, why you took away from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had.* 3. *Do not tell them how-many insults you endured, nor how many you are about to endure; for they will not believe you.* 4. *The consuls had referred the subject of the prisoners (trans. had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate.* 5. *The matter was referred to the senate: nevertheless you who (108) referred (it), now deny that you referred (it).* 6. *Tell me, Tullius (13), when (156) you will bring help to me.* 7. *I asked the soldier why he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the enemies of (his) country.* 8. *We could not (i.e. were-not-able to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken.* 9. *You who patiently endured so many great (i.e. so-many and so-great) calamities, will you not (see sent. 13, above, and Par.*

¹ (a) *Omnino nōn* means altogether not, i.e. not at all, certainly not; (b) *nōn omnino* means not altogether, not quite.

² Why quis, not qui?

³ Repeat *interrogavi* before *cūr*; look out *tandem*.

152a) endure this very (228) slight loss? 10. There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity (5a).

6. Ėo, ĭvī, ĭrē, ĭtum—I go.

INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Present.

Ė-o	E-am
ĭ-s	E-ās
ĭ-t	E-āt
ĭ-mūs	E-āmūs
ĭ-tis	E-ātis
E-unt	E-ant

2. Future-Simple.

ĭ-bo	ĭ-tūrūs sim
ĭ-bīs	ĭ-tūrūs sīs
ĭ-bīt	ĭ-tūrūs-sīt
ĭ-bīmūs	ĭ-tūrī simūs
ĭ-bitīs	ĭ-tūrī sitīs
ĭ-bunt	ĭ-tūrī sint

3. Imperfect.

ĭ-bam	ĭ-rem
ĭ-bās	ĭ-rēs
ĭ-bāt	ĭ-rēt
ĭ-bāmūs	ĭ-rēmūs
ĭ-bātīs	ĭ-rētīs
ĭ-bant	ĭ-rent

INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. Perfect.

ĭ-vī or	I-ī	ĭ-vėrim or I-ėrim
ĭ-vistī	&c.	ĭ-vėrīs &c.
ĭ-vīt	&c.	ĭ-vėrīt &c.
ĭ-vīmūs	&c.	ĭ-vėrimūs &c.
ĭ-vistīs	&c.	ĭ-vėritīs &c.
ĭ-vėrunt	&c.	ĭ-vėrint &c.
or I-vėrē		

5. Future-Perfect.

ĭ-vėro or I-ėro	(wanting)
ĭ-vėrīs	&c.
ĭ-vėrīt	&c.
ĭ-vėrimūs	&c.
ĭ-vėritīs	&c.
ĭ-vėrint	&c.

6. Pluperfect.

ĭ-vėram or	ĭ-vissem, I-issem,
I-ėram	or I-ssem
ĭ-vėrās	&c. ĭ-vissēs &c.
ĭ-vėrāt	&c. ĭ-vissēt &c.
ĭ-vėrāmūs	&c. ĭ-vissēmūs &c.
ĭ-vėrātīs	&c. ĭ-vissētīs &c.
ĭ-vėrant	&c. ĭ-vissent &c.

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Present.</i>	Ī	<i>Present.</i>	Ī-ens (<i>Gen.</i> ě-untĭs)
	Ī-tě	<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tūrŭs (ă, um)
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-to	GERUND.	
	Ī-to	<i>Gen.</i>	Ĕ-undi, &c.
	Ī-tôtě		SUPINE.
	Ĕ-unto		Ī-tum
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Pres. and. Imp.</i>	Ī-rě		
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	Ī-vissě, Ī-ĭssě, or ĭssě		
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tŭrus essě		

242 The Passive of *ĕo* is only used impersonally, *e.g.* *ĭtur*, *it is gone*, *i.e. they go* : see Par. 247.

243 1. The compounds of *ĕo* are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from *in-ĕo* and *praeter-ĕo* come the Pass. Participle *ĭn-ĭtus* and *praetěr-ĭtus*, and the Gerundives, *ĭn-ĕundus* and *praetěr-ĕundus*.

244 2. The compounds of *ĕo* generally omit *v* in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: *rěd-ii*, *trans-iĕrim*, *praeter-iĕram*, &c.

245 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by *sŭb-eo* (rarely), and *prae-eo*.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. Cum jam mulieres liberique flamen auctum imbribus transiissent, curavit imperator ut senes transirent. 2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris. 3. Cum ad ripam rediissem, alios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni. 4. Ibam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit. 5. I, decus nostrum, i pater patriae, ut mox triumphaturus redeas. 6. Praei iusjurandum mihi, pontifex. 7. Pudet me abiisse; redire statim volo. 8. Unus tantum (*adv.*) exiens ab hostibus captus est: ceteri, cum jam exeuntes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt. 9. Flumen quod heri transiistis, jam glacie plenum omnino (241) non transibitis. 10. Quid obstat quominus

redeas aditurus Apollinem? 11. Apollo aditus respondit mortem homini decimo die esse obeundam. 12. Praeterita (34) redire nequeunt.

1. *There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.*
2. *Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (imperf.) immediately to return (redeo) (236).*
3. *If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy.*
4. *Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting?*
5. *There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.*
6. *Returning to the city I met Balbus himself returning.*
7. *Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.*
8. *The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-swollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).*
9. *Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?*
10. *The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (143) charge the enemy.*

THE SUPINES.

246 1. The Supine in **-u** is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying *good* or *evil*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *fitness* or *unfitness*, &c., as “*āmārum gustātu*,” *bitter in the tasting*, i.e., *bitter to the taste*.

247 2. The Supine in **-um** is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition *ād*. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in **-u** cannot do:

He came to play.

Vēnit lūsum.

He went to see the city.

Īvit vīsum urbem.

248 3. Besides the form with *fōre* mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in **-um** is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of *eo*, *I go*, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive:

He said that the city would be taken.

Dixit īri captum urbem.¹

¹ The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but in practice, *īri* follows the Supine.

The literal rendering of this is, *He said that-there-was-a-going* (*īri* being used impersonally) *to take* (*captum* being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (*urbem* being Accusative after *captum*). So:

He said that we should be sent to the prison. *Dixit nōs ād carcērem ductum īri. (Parse nōs).*

EXERCISE LXXIV.

249 Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion; and so are the Nouns *dōmum* and *rūs*.

1. Dictu difficile est uter horum peccaverit (9a). 2. Venimus Romam spectatum ludos.¹ 3. Audierat pater non datum iri uxorem filio suo. 4. Inde Delum navigant consulturi Apollinem; qui respondit frustra se consuli, (32) urbem captum iri. 5. Nonne hoc nefas visu est? Nonne etiam dictu turpissimum? 6. Mittendi sunt Athenas legati pacem petitori. 7. Non dubium est quin qui urbem speculatum venerunt, re infecta redierint. 8. Diversas ob causas juvenes philosophum adierunt; alii quidem jocatum venerunt, alii autem ad descendum parati. 9. I tu consultum Jovem, equidem Delphos ibo Apollinem consulturus. 10. Interrogate nautas utrum Carthaginem an ad Italiam navigent.
1. *The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without-accomplishing anything.* 2. *The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy.* 3. *We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk.* 4. *I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or (171) sweet to taste.* 5. *When will you return home, my son?* 6. *The youth (monstrous to relate!) set-out-for the country from the city intending-to slay (trans. about-to slay) his own father.* 7. *Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out-for Carthage (196).* 8. *I asked the young man to come to dine with (see 'with') me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.*

¹ What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of "venimus"? Why is *uxōrem* (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?

THE GERUND.

- 250** 1. When an English Transitive Verbal, *e.g. writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

Writing letters is easy.
I prefer writing letters.

Facile est epistolās scribēre.
Mālo epistolās scribēre.

- 251** 2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by *of*, *for*, *to*, *towards*, *during*, *in*, *by*, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of*, *for*, &c., and the Latin Gerundive Adjective **scribendus**, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

The art of writing letters, i.e. of letters meet-to-be-written.

*Ars epistolārum scribend-
ārum.*

Let us pay attention to making a bridge, i.e. to a bridge meet-to-be-made.

Dēmus op̄eram ponti faciēdo.

During the building of a city i.e. during a city meet-to-be-built.¹

Inter urbem aedificandam.

In making a bridge, i.e. in a bridge-meet-to-be-built.

In ponte faciēdo.

Choiceness of expression is increased by reading orators and poets.

*Lōquendi ēlēgantia augētur
lēgendis oratōribus et
pōētis.²*

- 252** 3. If the Verbal (1) is Intransitively used, or (2) requires a Dative Case in Latin, the Latin Gerundive Noun is used, governing a Dative if necessary:

(1a) *The art of writing.*

Ars scribendi.

(1b) *We are born for acting.*

Nāti sūmus ad āgendum.

(2) *I am desirous of pleasing friends.*

Stūdīosus sum placendi āmicis.

¹ With the English Verbal, we may generally either insert or omit the . . . of : *in (the) building (of) a city*, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built, made, &c.*, is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.

² The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the *Ablative of the Instrument*, is rare.

- 253** 4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

*We must do our duty,
We must obey the laws.
We must not forget benefits.*

*Fungendum est officio.
Parendum est legibus.
Non est obliviscendum beneficiorum.*

EXERCISE LXXV.

- 254** RULE.—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.¹

1. Barbari legatos causa petendae pacis miserunt. 2. Quid vultis, legati? Nonne ad pacem petendam parati estis? 3. Tunc quidem ab inimicis nostris ridebatur; nunc nobis ridendum est. 4. Si vis scribere, si scribendi causa huc venis, cur non scribendo operam das? 5. Rogavit me ut venandi causa equos colligerem. 6. Traditum est Fabium Maximum rem Romanam cunctando restituisse. 7. Mors est omnibus (168) obeunda: nec nos flendo (170) morti moram afferemus. 8. Quis nescit mentem nutrirī legendo, disputando acui? 9. Duc (237) nos citius, centurio; utendum est occasione ab hoste nobis data.² 10. Vita et utenda est et fruenda.²

1. *They-live for the sake of eating; in-eating they consume their lives.* 2. *Do (237) something, my son; we are born to act (i.e. for acting), not to consume the fruits of the earth.* 3. *For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.*² 4. *By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad.* 5. *(We) must obey (our) elders; we must pity the poor.* 6. *The conspirators had conceived the hope (trans. had come into the hope) of slaying the consul.* 7. *He pays attention to writing verses.* 8. *Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or (171) for the sake of breeding dogs?* 9. *Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art (i.e. something of art); either (157a) lead better, Marcus, or-else do not lead.*

- 255** ¹ Of course in such sentences as *I will take-care-of the making of the bridge*, the "Case demanded by the English Preposition" is the Acc., because *take-care-of* is really a Transitive Verb, *cūrāre*.

- 256** ² The Verbs *fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *pōtior* (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, i.e. either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.

THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

- 257 (1) *He is persuaded.* Persuāsum est (167) ei.¹
 (2) *(It) is certain that he is persuaded.* Certum est ei persuāsum esse.
 (3) *He says he is persuaded.* Dicit sibi persuāsum esse.

258 2. The Verb **fīo**, *I am made, I become*, is used as the Passive of **fācio**. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of **audio**, except that **fīr-** is always written **fīēr-**; and the Infinitive is **fīēri** (not **fīrē** nor **fīēre**). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle **factus**.

259 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, *e.g. make, esteem, call, &c.* (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.

We will make you leader Te **dūcem** faciēmus.

260 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.

Balbus was made leader Balbus **dux** factus est.
He said that Balbus was made leader Dixit Balbum **dūcem** factum esse.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

1. Mulieres ob incolumitatem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt.
2. Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, cras fiet servus.
3. Quis nescit Palladis imaginem a Phidia factam esse?
4. Quid obstabat quominus mercator fieres? scio enim tibi in omnibus rebus a patre indultum esse.
5. Constat legibus obtemperatum esse, ab eis qui in leges jurati sunt.
6. Interrogavit cur nos, crudelitatem nostram jactare soliti, regem cenatum occidere noluissemus.
7. Scribit se philosophum fieri et ob hanc causam velle Athenas venire philosophos auditurum.
8. Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esse (32), nemini

261 ¹ Persuādētur ei would mean *it is being persuaded to him, i.e. he is being persuaded.*

a nobis parsum (214). 9. Breves esse cupientes, o pŏetae, obscuri fitis. 10. Admonete socios vestros ne arma contra patriam moveant.

1. *There was no doubt that the cruel Tullia had rejoiced on-account of the death of her own son.* 2. *You, who lately became a praetor, will soon become a consul.* 3. *I know that you have always been too-much indulged (257) by your father.* 4. *It is certain that the laws are not always obeyed.* 5. *What prevented you from becoming consul?* 6. *Having themselves been accustomed to spare no one, the barbarians declared that no one was spared.* 7. *Is it not well-known that Cincinnatus from (ex) a ploughman was made a consul?* 8. *The scout brought-word that a hundred of our men had been slain, (and) two hundred had been spared.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

262 The Accusative expresses extent (*a*) of *space*, and (*b*) of *time*; and therefore answers to the questions (1) *How far?* *high?* *long?* *deep?* *broad?* (2) *For, or during, how long a time?* and (313) sometimes (3) *How long ago?*

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (1) <i>The ditch is ten feet broad.</i> | Fossa dĕcem pĕdes est lĕta. |
| (2) <i>He sleeps all the night.</i> | Tŏtam noctem dormit. |
| (3) <i>He died two years ago.</i> | Ābhinc biennium ōbiit. |

263 ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.—Distinguish between the Accusative of *extent of time* (*how long?*), and (3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the *point of time or season* (*when?*)¹

He cannot sleep in the night. Nocte dormire nŏn pŏtest.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit. 2. Quis nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem anno septuagesimo veneno interfectum esse? 3. Decimo die post captam urbem,² fossam decem pedes altam arci

263_a ¹ The Ablative also answers to the question: *Within what time?* *We shall know everything in (the next) three days.* Omnia hīs tribus diēbus, or hoc trīduo, comperta hābēbimus: see Par. 30.

264 ² Note this idiom *after the city taken*, i.e. *after the taking of the city*; so ante urbem conditam, *before the foundation of the city*.

circumdedimus. 4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheniensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est. 5. Cum jam viginti milia passuum iter fecissemus, nuntiant exploratores bidui iter hostes abesse. 6. His auditis, imperator aggerem ducentos pedes latum, triginta altum, exstruere statuit. 7. Non erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum ab urbe posuissent. 8. Decima hora per exploratores compertum est hostes habere in animo nocte castra oppugnare. 9. Tullius, senex impigerrimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse. 10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decem annos obsessam, per Ulyssis dolos esse captam? 11. Tullius, pöeta praeclarissimus, dictitabat nunquam se plus agere quam cum nihil ageret. 12. Dicitur urbs abhinc centum annos floruisse.

1. Do you not remember that Plato lived eighty-one years?
2. When we had advanced forty days' journey it was found that the enemy were distant twenty-four miles.
3. I asked the workmen to build a wall thirty-five feet high.
4. Having crossed the river we shall have to journey for two-days through an uncultivated district.
5. For three-days our men resisted three thousand of the enemy.
6. When Balbus was sixty-three years old, he was struck by lightning and died (trans. having been struck . . . he died) in the third month of (his) sixty-fourth year.
7. Within the next three hours we shall take the city which has resisted our army for three-years.
8. Caesar writes that the territories of the Helvetii extend two hundred and forty miles in (in with Acc.) length.

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

- 265** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with *hūm-i*, on the ground; *dōm-i*, at home; *bell-i*,¹ in the wars; *militiae*, in the wars; *rūr-i*, in the country), the question *Where?* is answered by the old Locative Case, thus:

	Singular.	Plural.
First declension . . .	Rōm-ae	Athēn-īs
Second „ . . .	Cōrinth-i	Coriōl-īs
Third „ . . .	Carthāgīn-ē ²	Cūr-ībus

- 265a** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also with *dōmo* and *rūre*) the question *Whence?* is always answered by the Ablative.

266 ¹ *Militiae* and *belli* are seldom used except with *dōmī*.

267 ² The older form *Carthāgīn-i* is only to be used where the Acc. is in -im, as *Neāpōl-im*, *Neāpōl-i*. *Rōm-ae*, is a contraction for *Rōm-āl*.

268 RULE.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs **sum** and **do**.

He imputed it to me as a fault, Id mihi **vītio** dedit, or vertit.
lit., gave for a fault.

This will be (for) a proof to me. Hōc erit mihi **dōcūmento**.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. Num vitam rusticam crimini esse putas? 2. Pater meus litteris Epheso datis,¹ scribit se mihi libros hos dono daturum. 3. Hostemne oras ut te adjuvet? Num vis omnibus esse derisui? 4. Conjurati, Athenis capti, epistolam concremaverunt ne forte sociis suis, qui Corinthi tum erant, periculo foret. 5. Si domi manseris, ipse tibi dedecori eris; si ruri (id quod pater suadet) vitam ages, nunquam te facti poenitebit.² 6. Cur vitio mihi res domi militiaeque honestissime gestas dedisti? 7. Nobis, qui tum Romae vitam agebamus, Tullii crudelitas odio erat. 8. Eniti debes ut, non³ solum tibi ipsi, sed amicis omnibus qui Carthagine nunc sunt, adjumento esse possis. 9. Dum forte Neapoli moror, audiebam pullos sacros in aquam coniectos esse, quam rem Romani omnes religioni habuerunt.⁴ 10. Vobis qui Delphis vivitis, quique (not from quisque, 37) Apollinem veneramini, nonne turpissimum videtur Apollinis responsa simul quaestui simul derisui habere?⁵ 11. Audistine Cannis infelicitē pugnatum esse? Occidimus; actum est de exercitu. 12. I Roma.
1. *There is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends.* 2. *Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in-the-country is often happier than in the city.* 3. *I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the-fact-that (quod, i.e., because) I had departed from Carthage in-order-to live at Rome.* 4. *You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes.* 5. *When Socrates had been put-to-death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucus betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia.* 6. *I like to live at Rome; that-fellow (likes to live) in Campania;*

269 ¹ i.e. "dated from Ephesus," (not "at Ephesus," which would be **Ēphēsi**): see Par. 265a.

270 ² Note this use of **īd quōd**, that which, i.e. as, your father recommends: **īd** may be parsed as **Nom.** in *Apposition to the sentence* "rūri vitam ages."

271 ³ Not **nē**, because the **nōn** goes with **sōlum**.

272 ⁴ **Dum** is mostly used with the *Present*, though the Principal Verb is in the *Past*: "dum haec gēruntur, hostes terga dābant."

⁵ **Vōbis** is **Dat.** governed by **vidētur**.

you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua. 7. That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace (trans. at home). 8. There is no doubt that you remember (memini, Appendix II., page 216) when (156) the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae (239).

THE ABLATIVE.

- 273** 1. Since the Ablative denotes the *means* or *instrument*, it can express the *definite price*, by *means* of which anything is bought.

The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius. Piscis dēnārio emptus est.

- 274** 2. It can also express the *measure*, by *means* of which one thing *exceeds*, or *falls short of*, another.

The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon. Sōl multis partibus māior est quam luna.¹

- 275** 3. It can express that, by *means* of which anything is *filled*.

The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water. Amnis plēnus āquā est.²

- 276** 4. It can also express any *circumstance*, in which, or *with* which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (a) *manner*, or (b) *quality*.³ But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

(a) MANNER, *He answered in haste.* Respondit summā celeritāte, or cum celeritāte.

(b) QUALITY, *Tullius was a man of ability.* Tullius ingenio haud parvo, or magno, erat.

277 ¹ Hence "much better," "little better," should be rendered "multo paulo, mēlior," not multum.

278 ² But in the best writers plēnus more often takes the Genitive.

³ Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 28) that dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus, &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.

- 279** 5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying *need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from, &c.*

I am free from cares.

Vacuus sum cūris.

I have need of money.

Ōpus est mīhī argento.

- 280** RULE.—After Verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

I promise to come, or that I will come.

Prōmitto, or, polliceor, mē ventūrum esse.

I hope to see her to-morrow.

Spēro mē crās eam visūrum esse.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris. 2. Multo sanguine ea victoria nobis stetit. 3. Duabus uncis procerior eras quam frater tuus. 4. Fossae aqua plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus. 5. Compertum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse. 6. Magno timore sum, sed spero mox fore ut puer convalescat.¹ 7. Centurioni, viro summa probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonne tu credes? 8. Omitte timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedit.² 9. Divitiis facile carebis; nemo facile virtute caret. 10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliens promisisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (*see 'facio'*). 11. Balbus (multo felicior quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat. 12. Quod ne asse (*see 'as'*) quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.
1. *There is no need of excuses; promise to help us.* 2. *There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood.* 3. *We (can) easily do-without flesh, but (sed) we need water.* 4. *Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us.* 5. *Are you much taller than your brothers?* 6. *The more patiently he bore these insults, the more-steadily he was loved by the citizens.* 7. *I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies.* 8. *He answered in-anger (276)*

281

¹ Verbs ending in *-sco* commonly have the sense of *beginning* an action or state, and are called *Inceptives*. *Inceptives* rarely have a Fut. Part. in *-rus*, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis *forē ut*, like *possum* (Par. 231).

² Quo . . . eo, lit. *by how much . . . by so much*, i.e. *the more bravely . . . the more easily*. Why is *quo* Abl.? See Par. 274.

that there was no need of an axe. 9. *He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals.* 10. *What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now (jam) our leader (197) (5a)?*

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions :

282 1. (a) *Descriptively*, and (b) to express *quality*, as in English.

(a) *A fleet of two hundred vessels.* Classis dūcentārum nāvium.

(b) *He is a man of ability.* Vir est magni ingēni.

In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

283 2. To express (a) *estimation*, and (b) *indefinite price*.

(a) **RULE.**—Magni, plūris, plūrīmi, parvi, mīnōris, mīnīmi, tanti, quanti, and nīhīli, are used after Verbs of *estimation*, such as *pendo* (I *hang, weigh, value*), *fācio*, *aestīmo*.

284 (b) **RULE.**—Tanti, quanti, plūris, mīnōris (but *magno, parvo, plūrīmo, &c.*) are used after Verbs of *selling* and *buying*.

(a) *I do not count you worth a straw.* Nōn flocci tē fācio.

(b) *At what price was the corn bought? For a large sum.* Quanti frūmentum emptum est? Magno.¹

285 3. To express *plenty* or *want* (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).

The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, *indīgeo* generally takes the Genitive, and *ēgeo* the Ablative.

286 ¹ The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated *indefinitely* and regarded as a *quality*, the Abl. when it is stated *definitely* and regarded as the *instrument* whereby the purchase is effected.

- 287** 4. After Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, such as *consciūs*, *conscious of*, *nesciūs*, *ignorant of*, *insuētus*, *unaccustomed to*, &c.

He is ignorant of manners, but very learned in the law.

Mōrum impĕrītus est, *jūris* autem perītissimūs.

He informed me of his plan, i.e., he made me more certain of his plan.

Consīlii sui mē certiorē fēcīt.

- 288** 5. After Present Participles and Adjectives that have the force of Nouns, such as *āvidus*, *pōtens*, *insōlens*, *cūpīdus*, &c.

Patient (i.e. an endurer) of cold.

Pātiens frīgōris.

He was an extreme lover of his country.

Patriāe erat āmantissimūs.

- 289** 6. After a suppressed Noun, such as *nature*, *mark*, *duty*, *lot*, *part*, &c.

It is (the mark) of a wise man not to be easily disturbed.

Sāpientis est nōn fācile perturbāri.

It is (the duty) of a young man to respect his elders.

Ādūlescentis est mājōres nātū vērēri.

It is not (the luck) of every one to do this.

Nōn *cuiusvīs* est hōc fācēre.

- 290** 7. After a suppressed Noun, such as *charge*, *cause*, &c., with Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *convicting*, &c.

Having been accused (on the charge) of theft, Balbus was condemned to death.

Balbus (erīmīne) *furti* accusātus, cāpītis damnātus est.¹

EXERCISE LXXX.

1. Non cuiusvis est summos honores assequi. 2. Haruspices aut stultitiae aut vanitatis recte condemnamus. 3. Quanti praedium emptum est? Magno: sed equidem id parvi aestimo.

290a

¹ The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the *punishment*, but only the *charge*. But it is used of the *punishment* in the phrases, "*capītis*, *dupli*, *quadupli*, &c., (multā) condemnāre," to condemn (in the fine) of death, two-fold, four-fold, &c.

4. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota¹ perspicere.
 5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus ut classem centum navium compararent.
 6. Majestatis accusati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis damnati sunt.
 7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (*adv.*) virium veritas haberet.
 8. Rhodum aut aliquo (*adv.*) terrarum hinc migrandum est.
 9. Omnium regionum, id temporis,² Gallia et frugum et metallorum fertilissima esse videbatur.
 10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidos contemnere.
 11. Barbaros, insuetos laboris, disciplinae insolentes, rudes rei militaris, facile vicimus.
 12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.
1. *The Christians, having been accused of treason before (apud) the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.*
 2. *Where (292a) in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?*
 3. *Balbus, a man of incredible perfidy, was found guilty of bribery.*
 4. *I value the farm at-a-great-price; but it was sold for-a-small price.*
 5. *I asked why the farm had been sold for more than (quam) the house.*
 6. *It is not like a philosopher (i.e. the mark of a philosopher) to be disturbed by trifles.*
 7. *It is not the lot of everybody to persuade those-who-listen (202).*
 8. *His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.*
 9. *It requires (i.e. it is the part of) a great leader to effect this task; for effecting (186) which, Tullius has too-little ability.*
 10. *Whither in-the-world are you migrating from Athens?*

SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

- 291** I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is *subjoined* to a Principal Verb, to express (132) *purpose* or *indirect question*. But it is also *subjoined* to express (1) *result*, and (2) *reason*: (for *cum* causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

- 292** ¹ *Nōta* is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by *perspicis* understood: to perceive nothing unless (you perceive) things-known to all. The phrase *nīl nīsi* is often used thus with the force of *except*.

² Here *īd* is the Accusative of Duration (262); but instead of *tempus*, there is the Partitive Genitive *tempōris*.

- 292a** The Partitive Gen. often follows (a) Neut. Pronouns, e.g. "*quicquid, or si quid cibi habuimus*," *whatever food, or all the food, we had*; and also (b) Adverbs, e.g. *āliquo terrārum*, lit. *some-whither of lands*, i.e. *to some place or other in the world*; *ūbi terrārum*? *where in the world*?

- (1) *The fighting was so brisk that many were slain on both sides; among whom it happened that the leader himself fell.* Tam acriter pugnatum est ut multi utrimque **interficēntur**; inter quos **accidit** ut dux ipse **occidēret**.
- (2) *The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he had (said they) corrupted the youth.* Athēnienses Socrātem cāpītis damnāvērunt quod jūventūtem **corrūpisset**.¹

293 II. Besides its uses in the above *subjoined* clauses, the Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

- (1) *Hortatively, i.e. exhorting*: **āmēmus**, *let us love*.²
- (2) *Concessively, i.e. granting for the sake of argument*:
Grant that you expel nature, yet she will continually return. Nātūram **expellas**; usquē tāmen rēcurret.
- (3) *Optatively, i.e. wishing*: **pēreas**! *may you perish*!
- (4) *Conditionally, i.e. expressing a statement made subject to the fulfilment of a condition.*
I should like to come (i.e. if it could be allowed, &c.). **Vēlim** vēnīre.

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after **si**, *if*, to express a *condition*, and also (2) to express a *consequence*.³

If he came, (then) he would conquer. Si (1) **vēniat**, (2) **vincat**.

The *if-clause* is called the Protasis (see p. 238); the Consequent, or *then-clause*, is called the Apodosis (see p. 233).

293a ¹ The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of others, not the mind of the writer. **Corrūpērat** would have implied that the writer believed the charge: *because he had (as a fact) corrupted the youth*.

² This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

293b ³ **Si** with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.) is used in conditions *which are assumed to be true*, and is often equivalent to *when* or *since*.

294 RULE.—After *sī*, *nē*, *num*, use *quīs* for *any one*, *quando* for *at any time*, (“*sī āliquis*” would mean *if some one*; “*sī āliquando*,” *if at some time*).

295 The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The *Past Tenses* of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 *a*) *impossible* or (1 *b*) *regarded as impossible*.

The *Present* expresses (2 *a*) conditions *possible* or (2 *b*) though really impossible, *graphically regarded as possible*.

(1 *a*) *If I had received anything (which I have not done) I would have given it.* Si quid accēpisse, dēdissem (dārem would mean ‘I should now be giving’).

(1 *b*) *Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking likely) I would give it.* Si quid accipērem, dārem.

(2 *a*) *Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.* Si quid accipiam, dem, i.e. *imagine me receiving something.*

(2 *b*) *Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.* Si reviviscat Plāto; crēdē mīhī, haec dicens rūbēas, i.e. *I see you blushing.*

N.B.—The Tense is the same in the Protasis and Apodosis.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

296 RULE.—*Ut* . . . *non* is *not* to be changed into *nē* when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

So vigorous was the charge that they could not resist. Tantus erat impētus ūt rēsistere nōn possent.

1. Bonorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.¹
2. Peream nisi haec vere dico.
3. Plures cecidissent nī nox proelio intervenisset.
4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud sane praeceptore nobis opus foret.
5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

297 ¹ Note that, where in English we say “those of the bad,” the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, “mālorum exempla,” or (2), as above, leaves the Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts *ea*.

6. Si vir bonus hanc vim habeat ut verbo inimicos interficere possit, hac vi profecto (*adv.*) non utatur (295, 2 b). 7. At si Marco Crasso dares hanc vim ut digitorum percussione divitissimum quemque interficeret (32), divitias ipse acciperet, in foro (mihi crede) prae gaudio saltaret. 8. Cave ne quis tibi, epistola mea usus, ignaro noceat. 9. Num quis tam amens est ut filiis suis invidet? 10. Tanta vi hostes in urbem irruerunt ut nostri, tanta multitudine oppressi, in arcem se recipere non possent.

1. *By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by the arrows of the enemy.*¹ 2. *If the excellent Tullius had promised to (280) help a friend, he would have kept his word.* 3. *If any one asked (295, 2a) you whence you come, you would reply that you come from Carthage.* 4. *It cannot be (fieri) that a just man would wish to use an unjust power.*¹ 5. *If by some (quidam) magic art, Balbus were able to assume the form of any animal (he-pleased), he would choose a fish, that he might (131) not be compelled to speak.* 6. *The general was so greedy of fame as to envy (i.e. that he envied) even his own centurions.* 7. *How are you-getting-on (i.e. what are you doing, quid agis) at Athens, my son?* 8. *Write to me how you are getting-on at Corinth.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

298 Qui takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a Demonstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such as *and*, *but*, &c.²; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction denoting (1) *purpose*, (2) *consequence*, (3) *cause*, &c.

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. <i>At length we reached the enemy; who (i.e. but they) immediately fled.</i> | Tandem ventum erat ad hostes; qui statim terga dabant. |
| II. (1) <i>We sent ambassadors to (Lat. who should i.e. that they should) ask for peace.</i> | Misimus legatos qui (i.e. ut ei) pacem peterent. |
| (2) <i>There were some that (i.e. such that they) blamed you.</i> | Erant qui (i.e. aliqui tales ut) te culparent. |

299 ¹ See the use of *accidit* in the first example in page 150, above. The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of *happening*, *coming to pass*, &c. as if they implied a *result* consequent on something preceding.

299a ² Qui is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction, e.g. in the idiom "tū, cuius es sapientiae (282^h), non errabis," *you (of such wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*

- (3) *I congratulate you because you have such a son.* Grătător tîbi **qui** (i.e. quod tu) tălem filium hăbeăs.

300 After the antecedent **nemo**, or **quis**, you must not write **quī nōn**, nor **quō** (old form **quī**) **nōn**, but **quīn** (this applies to all Genders.)

- (2 a) *Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?* Quis est (or, Nemo est) **quīn** tē odērit?

There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. on-which-not T. walked with me. Dies erat nullus **quīn** (i.e. quo nōn) Tullius mēcum ambūlāret.

301 **Vērēor** means *I am anxiously on the watch*. Hence, when it is translated *I fear*, the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

- (1) *I fear he will not come.* Vērēor (or tūmeo) **ūt** vēniat, lit. *I am anxiously watching that he may come.*
 (2) *I feared he would come.* Vērītus sum (or tīmui) **nē** vēnīret, lit. *I anxiously watched that he might not come.*

N.B.—After *fear*, translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 **Nesciō ān**. Before **ān**, **utrum** is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions **ān** is used to introduce an *alternative* to which the speaker is driven, “(Utrum hōc fātēris) **ān** hōc nēgās?” (*Whether do you confess this*) Or must I suppose that you actually deny this? Similarly, in Indirect Questions, **nesciō ān** introduces an *alternative and more probable supposition*; thus, “Nesciō (utrum ventūrus sit) **ān** nōn ventūrus sit,” means, *I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come, i.e., I rather think he will not come*. Consequently, with **nesciō ān** (as with **vērēor**) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.

I do not know whether he will come. Nescio an **nōn** ventūrus sit, i.e. *I rather think he will not come.*

I do not know whether he will not come. Nescio an ventūrus sit,¹ i.e. *I rather think he will come.*

EXERCISE LXXXII.

303 RULE.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by **quo**, i.e. **ut ēo** (Par. 277):

In order that he might swim more quickly. **Quo** (i.e. **ut ēo**) cēlērius nāret.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fere est quin tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (i.e. quo non) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (i.e. ut eo) facilius hostibus resisteremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos deserat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successura sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne praeda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lege quādam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (see -ve) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (see Vocab. 'is') es qui mentiaris.²

1. *They sent ambassadors to (qui) ask for peace.* 2. *I am not the man (is qui) to use this opportunity.*² 3. *There was no one but wished to help him.* 4. *I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country.* 5. *All praise you for (298, 3) (qui) having conquered so many thousands of the enemy.* 6. *Even if it were possible,³ I should not wish to do this.* 7. *I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make (fērio) peace.* 8. *There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws.* 9. *How-few (quōtus-quisque with sing.) are there*

¹ These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

With **vēreor** and **nescio**

For English *yes*, put Latin *no*.

303^a

² Note that, after "**nōn** **ēgo** **is** **sum**, **tū** **is** **ēs**, **is** **est**, **qui**," the Relative agrees, in *Person*, with the Subject of the Verb to be, not with **is**.

304

³ *It is possible*, i.e. *it is able to be done*, "**feri** **pōtest**," not **pōtest** alone, except in the phrases "**ut pōtest**," "**si pōtest**," and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use **pōtest** to mean *it is able*, not *it is possible*. See Vocab. "*even*."

who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!
 10. There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests
 (i.e. his-things, 34) to mine.

Sē, ipsē, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that *sē*, *suus*, &c. (and not *eum*, *eius*) are used when they refer (in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal Verb. But there are exceptions to this Rule.

305 I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (*e.g.* one introduced by *because*) is really equivalent to a Co-ordinate Sentence introduced by *for*.

Marcus returned safe because I had spared him. *Marcus salvus rediit quod ei pēpercēram.*¹

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sentences, *Marcus returned safe : for I had spared him*, "*Marcus salvus rediit ; nam ei pēpercēram :*" and *ei* is therefore used, because *rediit* is regarded, not as a Principal, but as a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the *because-clause* be more closely connected with what precedes, and if some notion of *thought he, said he*, be introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, *not a historical fact*, but rather dependent upon *what Marcus thought, said, &c.*—then *sibi* must be used.

Marcus returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him. *Marcus grātiās ēgit mihi quod sibi pēpercissem.*¹

306 II. Occasionally *suus* is used of different persons in the same sentence. In such cases the *sense* must determine the translation.

The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them. *Vēnēti lēgātum ad Caesārem mīsērunt: "Si vellet suos rēcipere, obsides sibi rēmittēret."*²

¹ Note also that the Indicative *pēpercēram* is changed into the Subjunctive *pēpercissem* (293a).

² The construction of *rēmittēret* is explained more fully in the rules on Exercise XCIII.: here, *rēmitterēt* may be parsed as Subjunctive after *impēravērunt ut*, which is implied in *mīsērunt*, *they sent (with orders that)*.

- 307** III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by *sē*, so that the meaning of *sē* has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage* :

The captive besought the conqueror to spare him.

Captīvus victōrem obsecrāvit ut *sībī* parceret.

The father commanded the son to restrain himself.

Pāter filio impērāvit ut *sē* coerceret.

- 308** IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding *ipsē* to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which *se* refers :

(1) *Nature impels a child to love itself.*

Nātūra mōvet infantem ut *se ipsē* dilīgat.

(2) by placing *ipsē* in antithesis with *sē*, using *ipsē* to refer to the Principal Subject and *sē* to refer to the Subordinate Subject :

Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence.

Caesar quaesīvit (ex milītibus) cur de *suā* virtūte aut de *ipsius* dilīgentia despērarent.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

- 309** RULE.—*Quisquam*, and *ullus*, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

Quisquam is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes : *and no one nec quisquam* ; *and nothing, nec quidquam*. Similarly, *and never, neque unquam*, &c.

- 310** Distinguish between *quisquam* and *quisquē*, *each one* ; *quisquīs*, *whoever* ; *quīlibet* and *quīvis*, *any one you like* ; *quīdam*, *a certain (person)* ; *āliquis*, *some one*.¹

- 310a** ¹ *Quīdam* means *a certain person (whom I could mention by name, if I desired)*, *āliquis* *some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is)*. Note that *quisquīs* is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.

1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent. 2. Pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret. 3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens antea obtemperassent, jam obtemperare nollent. 4. Tum vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque salutis consulant, ipsum morientem neglegant.¹ 5. Quodam tempore natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit. 6. Non cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere. 7. Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus quidam (motus) datur. 8. Inest etiam superbis falsa quaedam modestiae species. 9. Interrogavi nonne major natu esset quam quisquam ex fratribus suis. 10. Dixerit aliquis (*some one may be inclined to say*) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam; sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non facio. 11. Neapoli praefectura subito obiit (265a).

1. *I hope that the city will soon be captured, and that no one (i.e. nor any one) of the enemy will escape.* 2. *They believed that the boy had departed from them and returned to his (friends.)* 3. *The general besought the soldiers to trust in their own valour and in his wisdom.* 4. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) who (240a) would (i.e. wished to) carry the letter, one² of my brother's servants replied that he would do it.* 5. *Some-one may say (see Sent. 10 above) that death is an eternal sleep: but, even among (apud) the ancients, most of the philosophers believed that there is something after death.* 6. *It is lawful to the actor to utter not any words he-likes, but certain fixed words.* 7. *Sometimes it is a kind-of virtue (see 'kind') even to abstain from vice.* 8. *Can any one (294) deny that we must beware lest any one of the spies should hear this?*

EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

- 311** Dea, -ae, f. goddess, makes Dat. Pl. deabus in classical authors: and filiabus is found in inscriptions and legal forms.

Bōs, c. ox or cow, Gen. bōvis, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. bōbus and būbus.

Vīs, f. sing. force, violence, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. wanting, and is declined Nom. vīs, Acc. vim, Abl. vī.

Vīres, f. pl. strength (Pl. of vīs, but not meaning violence), is formed regularly, virium, viribus, vīres.

¹ What case is quisquē? See the word in the Vocabulary.

² Trans. a certain one; not ūnus, which would mean one only.

Jūppītēr makes Jōvem, Jōvis, Jōvi, Jōve.

Dōmūs is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dōmūs, dōmui, domūum, dōmībus, and also the Abl. Pl. dōmībus; the rest are of the Second.¹

Jūs-jūrandum, *oath* (which has no Plural), and rēs-publica, *state*, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandi, rēipublicæ, &c.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

- 312** RULE.—Cēlo, dōceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive :

<i>Mercury taught Cupid letters.</i>	Mercūrius Cūpīdīnem littēras dōcuit.
<i>My son must be taught letters.</i>	Filius meus littēras est dōcendus.

- 313** RULE.—Antē, post (placed *Adverbially* between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ābhinc, *ago*, are used with the Abl. of *Measure* (274), to denote an interval before or after.

<i>He died a very few days before.</i>	Hōmo perpaucis antē diēbus ōbiit.
<i>Many years afterwards, he returned home.</i>	Multis post annis, dōmum rēdiit.
<i>They perished two years ago.</i>	Abhinc biennio pēriērunt.

1. Non dubium est quin solvērīt quod pro fratre spopondit. 2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an paucos procerum jure-jurando obstrinxisset. 3. Quibus domibus milites pepercerant eas cives ipsi incenderunt. 4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id cur tu occuluisti? 5. Num, te jubente, consul secures sumpsit posuitque? 6. Nolo exorsa (*see exordior*) vel potius fere detexta, postea, jam senex, retexere. 7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

- 313a** ¹ The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dōmōrum and dōmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:—

Si dēclināre dōmus vis

Tolle (*i.e. take away*) -mē, -mū, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dōmī, *at home*, is the Locative Case, see Par. 265.

alendis; mox juvenis, rei-publicae operam dedit.¹ 8. Si quid mihi humanitus (*adv.*) accidisset, liberi mei defensore caruissent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vivendum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri soror eius, perpaucis post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus² filium suum Mercurio literas docendum tradidisse. 12. Homo stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam testamento (*abl. instr.*) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. *The worthless Balbus was-uncwilling to support the parents who had supported him from boyhood.* 2. *I asked the husbandman when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.).* 3. *There is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general.* 4. *I asked Tullius why he was going-to-leave so-large a sum-of-money to his three daughters.* 5. *Did you, a few days afterwards, promise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow?* 6. *Do you, who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)?* 7. *At-first our men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they drove the enemy down from the hill.* 8. *Why have you pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money?* 9. *Because you are bankrupt, do not (ne) on that account make false promises.* 10. *Are-you-ignorant of the way in which (i.e. in-what-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?*

EXERCISE LXXXV.

- 314 1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77) are used, (1) where the same number applies to *each* of a class; (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, e.g. *litterae, castra* (so that the Noun implies a *group*, e.g. *litterae, a group of alphabetical letters*); (3) in poetry.³

- (1) *The men will be contented* *Hōmīnes bīnis, aut certo ternis*
with two or at all events three *dēnāriis contenti erunt.*
denarii a-piece.

¹ *Dat* governs *ēquis* as well as *rei-publicae*.

- 315 ² Note the Latin idiom. *It is reported that Venus did, &c., is never to be rendered "fertur Vēnērem fecisse," &c., but always Venus is reported to have done, &c., "fertur Vēnus fēcisse," &c. A similar construction is used with dicitur, see Par. 177.*

- 316 ³ Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection of units, but as a *group*, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c., which may belong to any number of persons *a-piece*, so that a kind of distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "couple" of darts, and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks of "*bīna hastilia*," in the hand of *Aeneas*, and "*centēnae mānūs*" belonging to a giant.

(2) *At that time I used to write one, two, three, four, sometimes five letters a day.*

Eo tempore singulis diēbus ūnas, bīnas, trīnas, quāternas, interdum etiam quīnas littēras scribēbam.¹

317 2. Cum . . . tum, used like *et* . . . *et*, sometimes mean *not only, but also*: see sentence 7 below.

(*Look out allīcio, diffīndo, inūro, oblīno.*)

1. Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit. 2. Hostes fusos fugatosque tanta vi nostri colle depulerunt ut ne equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent. 3. Vita eius tot tantisque flagitiis oblita fuerat ut turpitudinis nōtam non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inuississet. 4. Nonne apud Plinium, in *Naturali Historia*, legistis piscibus non supra quaternas pinnas esse, quibusdam binas, aliquibus nullas?² 5. Hujus urbis portas aurum vestrum, non virtus, diffidit.³ 6. Inter occulta et sepulta non multum interest. 7. Allexerunt audientium animos, eum oratoris eloquentia, tum jurisjurandi commemoratio, et hostium jam accedentium minae. 8. Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad seditionem impulerit. 9. Qui eum (i.e. *Now when he*) decemvir legibus scribendis⁴ delectus esset, statim intellexit Licinius rem non jam neglegendam esse. 10. Tanta erat hostium multitudo ut ne trina quidem castra eis sufficerent.

1. *To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree (unice), he left ten thousand denarii a-piece.* 2. *(His) sons he entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all the money—that (quantum pecuniae) he had collected.* 3. *The soldiers he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-piece.* 4. *The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her father had promised-her-in-marriage.* 5. *Having drawn the water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again.*⁵ 6. *At the command of the emperor the consul laid-aside the fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before.* 7. *I*

318. ¹ Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms *ūni, trīni* are used, instead of the ordinary distributives, *singŭli, terni*.

² For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.

³ It was a proverb of Philip of Macedon that any city could be taken, to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, i.e. a bribe, could make its way.

⁴ This dative (for “ad leges scribendas”) is rare, except in *official appellations*; and it is not to be imitated.

318a ⁵ Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 247.

fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent Tullius. 8. My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

- 319 *He is too cruel to be loved by any one.* Crūdēlior est quam qui (or ut) a quoquam amētur.
He is the same as he always was. Idem est ac (or qui) semper fuit.

(Look out accumbo, cōgo, comprēhendo, dēposco, nanciscor, rēgēro, pārio, excūtio.)

1. Proserpina, ut flores aspexit, "Accedite," inquit, "comites."¹
2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignosceret.
3. Sperasne ceteros poenas daturus, tibi uni indultum iri?²
4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam meminerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.³
5. Praetor eadem, quae antea, respondit, lege sanctum fuisse ne quis mortuum intra urbem sepeliret.
6. Homo cum inter cenandum obdormiisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una (adr.) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent.
7. Mulier cum tres liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina depoposcit.
8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox anulum nactus regerit.
9. Tum Balbus, quem facinorum quae coactus commiserat jam poenituerat, rem omnem consuli pandit.
10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem comprehensurus exsiluit foras.

1. When (she) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted the maiden's eyes.
2. (His) voice failed (desum) him when he attempted (i.e. attempting) to ask the tyrant what he wished to do.
3. Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped out of their beds.
4. We went yesterday to Rome to see a picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius.
5. If he had revealed the (295. 1a) matter of his own accord he would have been spared (167) by the conquerors.
6. It had been enacted that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece.
7. There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind himself by an oath.
8. Those who remained in Corinth were all taken and slain.
9. When will you go from Rome (265a)?

20 ¹ Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see page 215. For ūt with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.

² Esse is omitted after dātūros, a very common omission (211).

³ Centūrīōni is Dat. of Disadvantage; sībī, Dat. of Advantage; for ēt see Par. 146.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

- 321** THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE is used for the Indicative (always in the Present, and more commonly Active than Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions so confused together that the times and persons are not easily defined; so that the *Infinitive*, i.e. the *Infinite* or *Indefinite* form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that which arises from the omission of **sum**; and this Infinitive is often found in a sentence in which **sum** is actually omitted.

Horses and men, friends and foes were mingled together; all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things. Ēqui, vīri, hostes, cīves permixti; fors omnia **rēgēre**.

- 322** A Dative of *Purpose* (besides the Dat. of Possession or Reception) is used after **sum** and **do** (268):

He gave me the book (to serve) for a gift. Lībrum mīhi **dōno** dedit.
This will be (for) a help to me. Hōc ērit mīhi **adjūmento**.

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after **dūco**, **hābēo**, &c., meaning *consider*:

This was considered (for) a great insult. Hōc magnae **contūmēliae** hābitum est.
 (Look out allīcio, anquīro, excōlo, torreo.)

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii insequi; hi fugere, illi resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus, frumentis optime excultus, decem milia passuum in latitudinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres; uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curae¹ erant: una Proserpina liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam papavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis domum, forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruere; ibi clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Cur non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita est? 8. Credo fore ut mox iudices timeas, quamquam nunc

¹ Cūrae is Dative; rōsae and viōlae Nominative.

quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (*not from rûbeo*), sole tostis antepōnit?

1. *The false witnesses had not deceived (fallos) the judge, who favoured neither of us.* 2. *The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits.* 3. *The maiden whom your brother has demanded in (in with acc.) marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage.* 4. *The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley.* 5. *There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money.* 6. *When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones.* 7. *When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal (i.e. plan).* 8. *She did not confess her fault until (ante . . . quam) the king bound her by an oath.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

- 323 (1) *Quamquam*, *although*, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) *quamvis*, *however much*, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But *quamvis* is sometimes used as an Adverb: "*clige quamvis multa*,"¹ *choose however many, i.e. as many as you please.*

(*Look out pando, pręgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.*)

1. *Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat.* 2. *Hic, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse.* 3. *Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequibant.* 4. *Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero et maculis foedatam non patiar.* 5. *Legimus, apud Vergilium, Famam extremam prolem a Tellure progenitam.* 6. *Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit.* 7. *His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amicis adeuntibus; adeo (adv.) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidine, disceret.* 8. *Hanc occasionem delendae urbis minime sperendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos*

- 23a ¹ *Quamvis* is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. *Quamquam* is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the *Gnomic Subjunctive*), "*Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him*," "*Quamquam ignoscas, difficile est emendare*," (2) in statements expressing, not *fact*, but the *thought* of the writer.

impulit, jure-jurando se obstringens ita demum rem-publicam salvam fore.¹ 9. Itane mentieris? Nec nosti (*see* nosco), prout seres, ita te messurum esse? 10. Jure falluntur ei qui divitiis, non virtute, homines metiuntur.

1. *It is one-thing (34) to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach with food.* 2. *Did you envy that-vile (iste) tyrant, hedged-round with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear?* 3. *There is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old men we shall forget.* 4. *Having routed the enemy, why did you not pursue the fugitives (i.e. those fleeing)?* 5. *Thinking that this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his-soldiers to charge.* 6. *After you had bound yourself by an oath to spare us, did you then impel the king to (ad) slay us?* 7. *The disciples of Epicurus, measuring (i.e. having-measured) all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a sufficiently high value (283).* 8. *You who spurned her while-she-lived (i.e. living), will you spurn (her) (now-that-she-is) about-to-die?*

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

324 Jamprīdem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present into the English Complete Present (Perfect with *have*), and the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: "*Jam-dūdum opto, or optābam,*" *I have been, or had been, long desiring.*

(*Look out dīgēro, expērgiscor, lābor, quēror.*)

1. Ceres, diu secum quæsta, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta est. 2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, standum est promissis. 3. Nec fefellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim vi milites in castra irruperunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto nondum expectatum caperent. 4. Jampridem colonum admonebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram fulciret. 5. Circa amnem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum, armenta pingua pascebantur. 6. Quamvis multa dedecora in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis stetisset. 7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam sero digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectationis afferant?² 8. Num imperatorem incusas quod unius et alterius (*see* 'alter') salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?

325

¹ Dēmum adds emphasis to the word before it, and is often equivalent to *only*: tum dēmum, *only then, then and not till then.*

² Flōres is Nom. to afferant.

1. *Awake at-last, or sleep for ever* (in aeternum) *slaves.* 2. *If you had not made-this-bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered-over by the enemy.* 3. *It is reported that* (315) *Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida* (i.e. *Ida the mountain*).¹
4. *Our men, shut (in) on-one-side by the enemy, on-the-other by a river and by mountains, were cut-off-from (their) supplies.*
5. *It is (the part) of an orator not-only* (317) *to arrange (his) facts, but-also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged.*²
6. *You have caused me as-much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy.*
7. *When I asked* (i.e. *to me asking*) *why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn-away from (de) her embrace.*
8. *This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at-last to Fortune.*

EXERCISE XC.

1. *Apud antiquos cor (non cerebrum) visum est sapientiae esse sedes.* 2. *Nostri, cum ad collem confugissent, biduum ibi hostibus resistebant.* 3. *Nostris famem longam vix sustentantibus allatum est magnum gregem nuper ab hostibus in castra compulsus esse.* 4. *Fasces illos severos et secures sanguineas nemo plebis non formidabat.* 5. *Post tertium mensem, quum in eam vallem descendissemus quam nuntius indicaverat, nihil repperimus nisi tabescentia cadavera eorum quos pestis absumperat.* 6. *Hoc sermone perterriti, suam quisque (165) domum conjurati dilapsi sunt.* 7. *Nescisne Taurum montem, inter Asiam et Syriam interjacentem, a Livio cardinem quendam appellatum esse?* 8. *Hunc panem ne furi quidem invidere possim.* 9. *Jure dictitabat Menenius plerosque, ventre (197) pleno, humaniores esse.* 10. *Hinc orta est inter senatorium et equestrem ordinem summa discordia; quorum alter Caesari, alter Pompeio favebat.*
1. *Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons?* 2. *Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore-away the gate.* 3. *Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more* (i.e. *did not demand more-things*). 4. *Your sheep were lying under a beech-tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell.* 5. *By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old-men and young.* 6. *Near a very high hill was a narrow valley*

¹ In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class.

² Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. *facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain; making (facts) the Obj. both of arrange and of explain.*

watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. (Fair)-shone the ground (hūmus) painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers. 8. I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two months.

EXERCISE XCI.

327 *Quam, as far as, is sometimes put briefly for "quam pōtuit, pōteris," &c. : he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as he could, "cēnam quam (pōtnit) ōpīmam pārāvit."* This construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to be imitated : but with the Superlative it is common :

He hastened with as long marches as possible.

Quam (pōtuit) **maximis** itin-
eribus contendit.

Take care to come as often as you can. (Lat. shall be able.)

Cūrā ūt **quam** (pōteris)
saepissimē vēnias.

1. O sortem (206) infelicissimam ! Quibus pelagus pepercerat, eos fere in portu perire !¹ 2. Specum quendam, in ipso montis vertice, pumice exeso structum, anus haec incolere ferebatur. 3. Hic inter frutices viridissimos amnis parvus de gelido fonte defluens quam gratissimos latices nobis suppeditabat. 4. Tales sonos si quis e lyra elicere velit, Phoebeo pollice opus sit. 5. Nondum venenatum calicem reus exhauserat, cum accurrit nuntius clamans regem mortuum esse. 6. Tuas messes, ut aiunt, ussisti ; tua vineta cecidisti. 7. Aggerem illum altissimum decem diebus nostri extruxerant. 8. Balbone credis ? Peribis hercle, nisi anguem illum in herba latentem quam celerrime extimueris. 9. Has urbes Philippus ille magni aestimabat tamquam compedes ipsas Graeciae.² 10. Vergilius scribit Tartarearum portarum postes adamantinos ne a caelicolis quidem excindi posse.

1. *The open-sea (pēlāgus) is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship.*
2. *Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible.*
3. *The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet high.*
4. *We have four fingers and one thumb (314).*
5. *Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?*

328

¹ Trans. to think that they should perish ! and parse as *Exclamatory Infinitive*.

² *Compēdes* is Acc. governed by *aestimāret* understood : "tam quam (aestimaret)" as much as (he would value) the fetters, &c. The meaning is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisoner.

6. Horace says that (*uego*) he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love. 7. There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (*his*) destructive tooth. 8. Are you not ashamed (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (*in-numbers*)? 9. As-long-as you are (125) in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.

EXERCISE XCII.

329 With *intērest* and *rēfert*, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms *meā, tuā, nostrā, suā, &c.*, are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs *nihil, multum, tantum, quantum, quid*, and also by *magni, parvi, plūris, minōris, tanti*, as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as *maximē*.

What does it matter to me in what manner you compel me? *Quid meā rēfert quā rātiōne mē (240) cōgātis?*

Intērest, *it concerns*, is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but *rēfert* is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by *ūt* (or *nē*) with the Subjunctive.

It concerns the State and us that you should be well. *Ēt rei-publīcae ēt nostrā intērest tē vālēre.*

It is important for you to come. *Tuā intērest ūt vēniās.*

330 *Ūtīnam*, *would that!* or *O that!* is used to signify a wish, (1) with the Pres. Subjunctive for a *possible*, (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an *impossible* wish.

O that the past might return! *Ūtīnam praetērīta rēdīrent!*

O that he might arrive to-day! *Ūtīnam hōdiē advēniat!*

1. A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris.¹ 2. Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset. 3. Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse.² 4. Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere.³ 5. Quis tumidum guttur

¹ Why is *unguem* the Acc. (262)? *Nē* affects (129) the translation of *discesseris*.

² Parse *annis*: Par. 313.

³ Parse *mōris*: Par. 289.

in Alpibus miratur? 6. Qui humana carne vescebantur apud Graecos Anthropophagi nominati sunt. 7. Utinam ex hoc fonte nunquam pestis in totam rempublicam defluat! 8. Eligendum erat inter duo itinera, quorum alterum per montes altissimos ducebat, alterum trans angustum pontem, quo nuper annem junxeramus. 9. Dicebat homo sponte sua se venisse; sed frons ipsa testabatur eum adesse invitum. 10. Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quam celerrime venire. 11. Utinam fur pecuniâ multaretur, neve verbera passus esset! 12. Minoris refert qualibus in aedibus vivas (240), si modo Romae vivis. 13. Aere alieno quondam oppressus, ne nunc quidem se omnino liberavit.

1. *The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his envy.* 2. *He who had not feared even lashes and tortures, now hearing (abl. abs.) the words of the judge, trembled from-head to-foot (toto corpore).* 3. *It is reported that the raven, whereas (cum, with subjunct.) he ought to have brought (223) a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake had caused him delay.* 4. *The centurion, his eye having been struck out (effodio), was no longer fit for performing military service (stipendia merere, lit. to earn pay).* 5. *They spoke with-every-appearance-of-truth (trans. with a most true forehead); but, in my judgment, they were lying.* 6. *There is no doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country.* 7. *There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he was sent (i.e. had been sent) into exile (145b).* 8. *O-that you would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of your father!* 9. *He thought to himself (i.e., with himself) how important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home (Acc. and Pres. Inf.).* 10. *What does it matter whether these birds are fed or not?*

ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

331 Speech reported in the First Person ("*I* fear," said Balbus, "*I* am mistaken") is called Oratio Recta, or, *Direct Speech*; speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said that "*He* feared *he* was mistaken") is called Oratio Obliqua, or *Indirect Speech*.

In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, *I* into *he*, *am* into *was*:

Speech in First Person.

"I know," said Balbus, "that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."

Speech in Third Person.

Balbus said that "He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."¹

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows :

- 332 1. (a) *Principal Verbs in the Indicative* are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) *Inquit* is changed into *dixit* or some other Verb.

ORATIO RECTA.

"I know," said Balbus,
Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Balbus said that "He knew"
Balbus dixit "Sē scīre"

- 333 2. *Ēgo* and *nōs* are changed into *sē*; *vōs* into *eos*.
that you will help me. | that they would help him.
vos mīhī adfuturos. | eos sībī adfuturos.

- 334 3. *Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions*, are changed into *Subjunctives*.²

The cities that have been taken
before we came here, can be
recovered.

Quae urbes captae sunt, ante-
quam hūc vēnimus, rēcūpērāri
possunt.

The cities that had been taken
before they came there, could
be recovered.

Quae urbes captae fūissent,
antēquam illūc vēnissent,
posse rēcūpērāri.

¹ Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

² (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are *sēd, autem, tāmen, et, -que, nam, enim, itaque, igitur, &c.* (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are *ūt, quōd, quīa, cum, dōnēc, antēquam, postquam, sī, quamquam, &c.*

When the Relative, *e.g. quos*, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (*et eos*), it is *sometimes* followed by an Infinitive. But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.

335 4. *Imperatives* are changed into *Subjunctives*.*Take courage therefore.*

Ērigīte īgītūr ānīmos.

(He begged that) They should therefore take courage.

Ērigērent īgītūr ānīmos.

336 5. Questions asked in the *Second Person* are rendered by the *Subjunctive* in the *Third Person* (*being really Indirect Questions*).*Why do you delay?*

Cūr mōrāmīni?

(He asked) Why did they delay?

Cūr mōrārentur?

337 6. Questions asked in the *First* and *Third Person* are rendered by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.*Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight?*

Nonne hostis prōpē jam ābest?

Nonne ad pugnandum pārāti sūmus?

*Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?*Nonne hostem prōpē jam āb-esse? Nonne sē ad pugnandum pārātos esse?¹**338** 7. (a) *Sē, sībī, &c.*, are used for the *Person* speaking; (b) but where *sē, suus, &c.*, are needed to express the *Person* addressed, *ipse* is used for the *Person* speaking.*(a) Do not desert me.*

Nōlīte me dēsērēre.

(a) They should not desert him.

Nollent sē dēsērēre.

(b) Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence."

Spem in vestris dextris et in mea dīlīgēntia pōnīte."

(b) They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."

Spem in suis dextris et in ipsius dīlīgēntiā pōnērent."

EXERCISE XCIII.

To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.

A. His auditis, Tullius, ad amicos conversus, "Car" inquit (332 b) "moramini? Neque enim ego volo amicis exitium ferre neque vos jam potestis morituro prodesse. Hostes jam

338a

¹ These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: *The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not?* Hence, they are expressed by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.

prope absunt; mox aderunt. Urbs capietur. Fugite igitur. Quod facere potui, feci; nihil praeter mortem mihi jam restat. Quae vobiscum auferre potestis, ea auferte. Num respondetis vos hic mansuros? Antequam vos inter cohortes conscripsi promisistis vos (338*b*) mihi obtemperaturos, nec fidem fefellistis. Satis virtuti datum est: jam saluti consulite. At cur nos hic tempus inani colloquio terimus? Equidem,¹ quoniam necesse est, moriar. Vos (335) vivite et valete, et curate ut mortem meam ulciscamini."

(*B. is already in O. O. ; C. must be turned into O. O.*)

B. Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect: "Why did they (336) hesitate? Let them choose, if it was necessary, between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted the interest of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens now favoured the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act? When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more, for there was need not of words but of deeds."

*C. Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion. "Why," said he (332*b*), "do you fear the multitude of the enemy? We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand; but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery and guile; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one wolf? But why do I waste time in speaking? The enemy is-at-hand, the contest-is-to-be-waged (i.e. it-is-to-be-striven) not with tongues but with swords."*

¹ *Equidem* being (139) almost always used with the first person, should be changed into *quidem* when attached to *sē*.

² In turning this into O. O., *inquit* must not be used. You may either translate *Tullius having turned to . . . spoke to this effect, 'Why did they fear,'* &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood: *Tullius now turned . . . legion, 'Why did they fear?'* &c.

EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.¹

(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)

EXERCISE I.

1. Probo scribae. 2. Fabri (9a) pigri. 3. Molesto pediti. 4. Pavidorum nautarum. 5. Jucundā insulā. 6. 7. Temporum prosperorum. 8. Stultis principibus. 9. Parvi papilionis. 10. Ossium magnorum. 11. Ab indigno comite. 12. Insigni labore. 13. Meliorum judicum. 14. Scythā perniciosus. 15. Itineris longi. 16. Planitie vastae. 17. Velocium equitum. 18. Vigiliū tribunorum. 19. Regionum pulchrarum. 20. Morum antiquorum. 21. A benigno nauta.

1. *From the good leader.* 2. *To the wretched sailor.* 3. *Of frequent lightnings.* 4. *Of the poor girl.* 5. *To great hope.* 6. *Of the left horn.* 7. *To the wise charioteer.* 8. *Of the active inhabitants.* 9. *Of the black teeth.* 10. *By the difficult journey.* 11. *To the short bows.* 12. *Of the third tribe.* 13. *To the lean face.* 14. *O angry poet.* 15. *Of the stern leaders.* 16. *Of beautiful fountains.* 17. *To the useful bow.* 18. *Of high citadels.* 19. *By the enemy's camp.* 20. *To a few soldiers.* 21. *Of the second cohort.* 22. *By (13a) the king.* 23. *By great hope.* 24. *Of long days.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Maximus ille vir. 2. Pulcherrimarum urbium muri. 3. Optimorum poetarum dulcia carmina. 4. Majorum oppidorum arces. 5. Difficillimorum et maximorum operum. 6. Principum munificentissimorum jussa. 7. Harum tam miserarum calamitatum. 8. Pessima haec exempla. 9. Pulcherrimorum florum color. 10. Imbri tristi et pernicioso. 11. Quercus nigerrimae glandes paucae. 12. Ultimi illius diei memoria. 13. Morborum tetriciorum multitudo. 14. Aurigae maxime strenuo dona (95) dāmus. 15. Quis te pessimo hoc rege liberat? 16. Quis haec ei dat?

¹ These exercises may be heard *vivā voce*, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.

- 1.¹ *To this very wise girl.* 2. *The two brothers of the same woman.* 3. *The largest part of the outer wall.* 4. *Of very slender legs.* 5. *The girl loves his two brothers: which-of-the two do you love most (maximē)?* 6. *The very-old soldier loves older wine.* 7. *The very contemptible (superl. of humilis) memory of that most unhappy day.* 8. *With which of these two cities?* 9. *To the same woman he gives three apples.* 10. *To Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries.* 11. *To the other sea.* 12. *Of the same camp.* 13. *To one-man's spurs, to another-man's sword.* 14. *Of the younger soldiers.* 15. *By this most troublesome thirst.* 16. *By the older (61) soldier.*

EXERCISE III.

1. *Hic vi, ille sapientia, hostes superat.* 2. *Multos pericula minima terrent.* 3. *Alterius constantiam, alterius diligentiam laudamus.* 4. *Piscator tria milia piscium habet.* 5. *Nequissimorum puerorum versus non laudo.* 6. *Tussi febrique medicus te liberat.* 7. *Plura tibi quam nobis dat.* 8. *Pejor est iste pessimo meorum comitum.* 9. *Agricola optimus meliore fato dignus erat.* 10. *Nulli suorum carior erat quam sibi.* 11. *Haec tibi uni jucunda sunt.*
1. *Which of these two journeys do you praise?* 2. *To this very-tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen.* 3. *The boy is smaller than the largest of the men.* 4. *Wisdom frees him from anger.* 5. *To you he gives more gifts than to himself.* 6. *The memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to him.* 7. *This was more agreeable to you than to any of his companions.* 8. *By patience he delivers himself from fever.* 9. *What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his poems?* 10. *The former is wiser than the latter.*

II.—ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE IV.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. *Castigaberis.* 2. *Agros vastavisti.* 3. *Laudatus est.* 4. *Pugnabunt.* 5. *Ne erraveritis.* 6. *Vastate agros.* 7. *Pugnaverant.* 8. *Ut aedificet urbem.* 9. *Vulnerata est.* 10. *Vituperabimini.* 11. *Ambulaveratis.* 12. *Cantavissetis.* 13. *Ut cantarent.* 14. *Cantemus.* 15. *Dubitare.* 16. *Servemus urbem.* 17. *Ambulaveritis.* 18. *Oppidum aedificatum erat.* 19. *Ut servaremur.* 20. *Ut laudare.* 21. *Canta.*

¹ On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjective and Noun, see Vocabulary, *this*.

1. *You will sing.* 2. *He will have been wounded.* 3. *Ye must build (imper.).* 4. *The city had been built.* 5. *Let us praise them.* 6. *The fields have been laid waste.* 7. *You will be chastised.* 8. *That he might be wounded.* 9. *That we might sing.* 10. *Do not doubt, O friend.* 11. *We shall have preserved the city.* 12. *I should have carried.* 13. *They would have been blamed.* 14. *Ye will not be loved.* 15. *That ye may take-care.* 16. *We shall have been preserved.* 17. *You had sung, O daughter.* 18. *Sing, O daughter.* 19. *Ye were being preserved.* 20. *Ye will be wounded.*

EXERCISE V.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. *Puer valebat.* 2. *Terrebamini.* 3. *Timebere.* 4. *Territus fuerat.* 5. *Ut exerceceres corpus.* 6. *Monuisssem te.* 7. *Ut monereris.* 8. *Doce puerum.* 9. *Ne timmeris.* 10. *Exercueris.* 11. *Filia monita fuisset.* 12. *Ut terreare.* 13. *Valuistis.* 14. *Exercetor.* 15. *Exerceamus corpora.* 16. *Ne territa sis, O mulier.* 17. *Docebinur.* 18. *Terrebare.* 19. *Terres puerum.* 20. *Terremur.* 21. *Terruistis.*
1. *We had been terrified.* 2. *That he may fear.* 3. *Ye will be taught.* 4. *He was being advised.* 5. *We should have feared.* 6. *That they might exercise (their) bodies.* 7. *Ye have been advised, O citizens.* 8. *You will be terrified, O friend.* 9. *You have terrified us.* 10. *That you might be advised.* 11. *Let us terrify the enemy.* 12. *I used-to-have (115) a book.* 13. *You had taught us.* 14. *Do not teach him.* 15. *He will have terrified you.* 16. *You will have been terrified, O friends.* 17. *Exercise (your) bodies.* 18. *Ye would have taught him.* 19. *The soldiers terrified the woman.*

EXERCISE VI.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. *Duxeratis.* 2. *Contraxisti.* 3. *Quid homo dixerat?* 4. *Ut instruantur milites.* 5. *Ut instrueret aciem.* 6. *Scribes epistolam.* 7. *Hoc spem nostram minuerat.* 8. *Gloriam eius minuemus.* 9. *Agger structus fuerat.* 10. *Flumen ponte junxissemus.* 11. *Milites ducentur.* 12. *Ut ducare.* 13. *Libri scripti sunt.* 14. *Ut duceremini.* 15. *Quis legionem ducebat.* 16. *Ne nos duxeris.* 17. *Haec tibi dixissemus.* 18. *Dicamus vera (Par. 34).* 19. *Ducēris.* 20. *Ducēris.*
1. *That they might rule.* 2. *You will be led.* 3. *He would have said these-things.* 4. *You have piled up a mound, soldiers.* 5. *She has been led.* 6. *The mound has been piled up.* 7. *Be ye drawn-up, soldiers.* 8. *He had drawn together-foot-*

soldiers. 9. What will you say, friends? 10. His glory has been diminished. 11. That we may bridge the river. 12. The river would have been bridged. 13. You were being drawn-up, soldiers. 14. Do not say this. 15. Let us pile-up a mound. 16. You had written a letter, my brother. 17. Do not write these letters, friends. 18. I shall be led. 19. They are being drawn up. 20. They would have been led. 21. Our hopes were diminished. 22. They will write.

EXERCISE VII.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. Dormiisti. 2. Puniti erant. 3. Urbs muniatur. 4. Opus finitum est. 5. Ut erudiremini. 6. Nutriebantur. 7. Ut vestias puerum. 8. Opus finieris. 9. Custodiverat obsides. 10. Obsides custodiuntur. 11. Urbes custoditae fuissent. 12. Erudientur pueri. 13. Ut opus finiatur. 14. Custodiunt milites captivum. 15. A magistro erudiemur. 16. Dormiamus. 17. Erudiebamini. 18. Erudientur. 19. Ne puerum erudiveris. 20. Ut erudiremini. 22. Erudiēris.
1. *We had slept. 2. You will sleep. 3. That you may be punished, O citizens. 4. The girl had been clothed. 5. The boy will be guarded. 6. The camp would have been fortified. 7. That the boy might be instructed. 8. Let us guard the leader. 9. We shall clothe the boy. 10. The boy was being instructed. 11. That the tasks may be ended. 12. The boys must be instructed (imper.). 13. Nourish the boys. 14. We shall fortify the city. 15. That you may fortify the city, soldiers. 16. That you might sleep. 17. You were being instructed, boys. 18. You will have instructed the boys, most learned master. 19. The boys will have been instructed. 20. The boys will sleep. 22. They used-to-sleep (115). 23. You slept, boys.*

III.—GENERAL EXERCISES.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Exercises VIII. to XI. refer to *Par.* 1—129; see also page 186.)

1. Bidui iter fecēre. 2. Multi hoc negant. 3. Quantum pecuniae habes? 4. Et ego et tu hoc negamus. 5. Errare humanum est. 6. Multa eis dedimus. 7. Fato meliore digna est. 8. Puer matri est simillimus. 9. Plura tibi quam mihi dederunt. 10. Nonne equus est animalium utilissimum? 11. Utri plura dedisti? Neutri: eadem ambobus dedi.

1. *I will give a book to one of you.* 2. *Many of the children gave us flowers.* 3. *You and I have erred.* 4. *The girl is more like her father than her mother.* 5. *Let us hasten by night.* 6. *The soldiers are most worthy of punishment.* 7. *We led the army into the nearest city.* 8. *This work is not very easy.* 9. *The words of the unjust sailor are very base.* 10. *A hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly (men).* 11. *He was more worthy of punishment than you.*

EXERCISE IX.

1. *Uter fontium major est?* 2. *Decem millia passuum iter fecimus.* 3. *Tullius, rex crudelissimus, veniam Balbo dedit.* 4. *Nocte hostes castra nostra invaserunt.* 5. *Decem his diebus trecentos elephantos ad exercitum mittemus.* 6. *Equites peditesque plurimos habemus.* 7. *Regum fortium vitae nos delectant.* 8. *Hoc opus facilius est quam illud.* 9. *Et mihi et tibi feliciū supplicium verba jucunda sunt.* 10. *Nullius dona, quam fratris tui mihi jucundiora sunt.*
1. *What have you done worthy of praise?* 2. *He is worse than his brother.* 3. *The keenest soldiers fought most bravely.* 4. *You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a very rough country.* 5. *Neither of the fountains had very sweet water.* 6. *Which of the two girls loves her father more?* 7. *He is more like you than me.* 8. *Where is the book you gave me?* 9. *Do not say many-things.* 10. *All love themselves.* 11. *Do you say this?*

EXERCISE X.

1. *Pueri ludere amant.* 2. *Ne plura rogaveris.* 3. *Milites in campum ducamus.* 4. *Si venti flaverint, in portu manebimus.* 5. *Multas noctes in urbe mansimus.* 6. *Dicamus vera.* 7. *Senex septuagesimo altero anno uxorem tertiam duxit.* 8. *Senum memoria infirmior quam juvenum est.* 9. *Pejor morte est infamia.* 10. *Verba eius isti molesta sunt.*
1. *Very many say this.* 2. *You say the same.* 3. *He wounded me with a spear.* 4. *Let us walk six days.* 5. *His words are more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers.* 6. *The brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army.* 7. *Both to you and to me he gave the same gifts.* 8. *No poet blames his own poems.* 9. *If he comes by night, we will depart in three hours.* 10. *To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen, to the other two thousand sheep.* 11. *Do not sleep, boy.*

EXERCISE XI.

(*Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.*)

1. Clam parentibus huc venisti. 2. Ne tu quidem idem dedecus bis in te admittes. 3. Nostri ab hostibus superati sunt. 4. Quid obstat quominus patri tuo pareas? 5. Plura dicturum duae sagittae transfixerunt. 6. Interrogavi matrem num huc ventura esset. 7. Hostes urbem captam incendunt. 8. Non dubium est quin aurum in ea regione reppereris. 9. Captivos vinctos centurio ad imperatorem duxerat. 10. Quot dies hostibus resistebatis? 11. Tune times?

1. *There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man).* 2. *Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned.* 3. *Not even Tullius will spare this city.* 4. *Let us ask her on what day she will come.* 5. *What prevented you from pleasing his father?* 6. *I will do my best to pardon him.* 7. *They took and burned the city (Par. 159).* 8. *The leaders gave orders to their men not to resist the enemy.* 9. *There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion.* 10. *She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.*

EXERCISE XII.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est. 2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincerem. 3. Saepe me interrogavisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis. 4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est. 5. Aut vincendum est aut serviendum. 6. Oravi ducem ut captis parceret. 7. Interrogate hominem num coram iudice hoc dixerit. 8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit. 9. Dux suis imperavit ne acie cederent. 10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis. 11. Quis nescit urbem incendi?

1. *He was silent for two hours in-the-presence-of the judge.* 2. *He had reigned ten years as-far-as the Alps.* 3. *He was on the point of conquering.* 4. *The king asked us whether we were husbandmen or sailors.* 5. *There is no doubt that the cold hurt the beautiful pine-tree.* 6. *He asked me whether the centurion was worthy of this great (see Vocab. great) reward.* 7. *I advised the soldier to answer the leader with these words.* 8. *We must make-haste that we may not come late.* 9. *When the general had heard this, he ordered the line-of-battle to retire.* 10. *Answer-was-made to the king in these words.*

EXERCISE XIII.

1. *What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others.* 2. *He built a house twenty feet high.* 3. *I asked him, O citizens, to come by night.* 4. *I asked which of you two said these-things.* 5. *Did you say this to deceive us?* 6. *It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter.* 7. *The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you.* 8. *The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister.* 9. *There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me.* 10. *By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted.* 11. *He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.*

EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Come here in haste, my son.* 2. *Is he very poor?* 3. *When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar?* 4. *Do you call me a citizen?* 5. *There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens.* 6. *At last the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp.* 7. *Each of the two brothers pleased (placeo) himself alone.* 8. *Do not set-out from the city by night.* 9. *She is about-to-return to Asia.* 10. *The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp.* 11. *You slept the whole night.*

EXERCISE XV.

1. *He sent a letter to his friend.* 2. *Give that woman the same book you gave me.* 3. *Do not declare war, O king.* 4. *When will you quench your thirst?* 5. *Have you ever used a golden axe?* 6. *I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii.* 7. *What you say, is true.* 8. *What is more faithful than a faithful dog?* 9. *There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law.* 10. *You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone.* 11. *Do not stay.*

EXERCISE XVI.

1. *Some stood here, others there.* 2. *The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep.* 3. *On the fifth day you came to Egypt.* 4. *Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander.* 5. *You and I will pay attention to philosophy.* 6. *Who took the city (of) Corinth?* 7. *Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor.* 8. *He came a-second-time into the forum.* 9. *What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden?* 10. *Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector.* 11. *He is free from cares.*

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *This work is finished.* 2. *My son and I sent messengers to you.* 3. *My brother and sister are very happy.* 4. *There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer.* 5. *We ought to command (164); you ought to obey.* 6. *The city is being built; a great part of it is built already.* 7. *The small town (of) Corioli was taken (agrees with 'town') by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus.* 8. *Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them.* 9. *You praised both, you pleased neither.* 10. *Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. *Spem mihi ultimam eripuisti.* 2. *Sole orto, in campum descendsum est.* 3. *Hoc ad agros colendos erat utilissimum.* 4. *Romae biennium habitavimus.* 5. *Huic genti quis tributum imponere ausus est?* 6. *Capta urbe, arcem incendimus.* 7. *Nonne vis fateri quantum te tuae stultitiae pudeat?* 8. *Quando ibis Corinthum?* 9. *Hodie Arpinum eo, cras Romae manebo.* 10. *E malevolo, fis malevolentior; mox fies malevolentissimus.* 11. *Ego et frater hic (adv.) manemus.*
1. *Are you not weary of idleness?* 2. *He built walls twenty-five feet high.* 3. *Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys.* 4. *Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness?* 5. *He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep.* 6. *When will you come to see me?* 7. *No one pities the conquered.* 8. *He could have helped me, but he would not.* 9. *I can no longer bear these great insults.* 10. *I hear that he is becoming weaker.* 11. *Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth?*

EXERCISE XIX.

1. *Utrum duos an tres menses vis Carthagine manere?* 2. *Non facile istum tuli querentem de seditione.* 3. *Nostine quo velit ire?* 4. *Tot scelera fassus, num putas nos posse tui misereri?* 5. *Negavit se sui tanti flagitii poenitere.* 6. *Postquam ab hostibus clamatum est, nostri, Balbo hortante, e silvis erupere.* 7. *Aliorum oblitus num speras alios tui non oblituros esse?* 8. *Oportuit te non isti sed patri tuo placere.* 9. *Quantum pecuniae tibi pater ad emendos flores dedit?* 10. *Negari non potest ambos semper eadem voluisse, eadem noluisse.* 11. *Licuit tibi esse felici; sed noluisti mihi parere.* 12. *Operam dabat libris scribendis.*

1. *To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gaoii.* 2. *Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses?* 3. *Who ordered the fourth tribe to be-present?* 4. *Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others.* 5. *The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father.* 6. *In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth.* 7. *You might have dined with (183) your kind host; but you would dine at home.* 8. *I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge.* 9. *Who does-not-know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?*

EXERCISE XX.

(*Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.*)

1. *Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo.* 2. *Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia.* 3. *Virtutem maximi aestimate.* 4. *Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum exstruxerant.* 5. *His condicionibus pax ab utroque duce facta est.* 6. *Respondit se non assis me facere.* 7. *Certum erat fundum grandi pecunia emptum fuisse.* 8. *Patriae amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus.* 9. *Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere.* 10. *Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelleges quid his respondere oporteat.* 11. *Non est moris nostri quos praesentes laudavimus eos absentes condemnare.*
1. *He was acquitted of bribery.* 2. *Why did you, O judges, condemn the innocent Balbus to death?* 3. *He was endowed with a (see 'a') wonderful art of persuading.* 4. *By this road you will never come to Athens.* 5. *He sent a messenger to ask which of his two brothers lived at Gabii.* 6. *The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents.* 7. *Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of others?* 8. *He was learned in the law, and very brave, but greedy of wealth.* 9. *Are you certain of this thing?* 10. *My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. *Nescio an mulier Carthagine ventura sit.* 2. *Misi qui prae-dium magno pretio emat.* 3. *Vereor ut puer virtutem pluris quam voluptatem aestimet.* 4. *Si auxilium poposcisses, abhinc biduum misissem.* 5. *Nescisne inepti esse nunquam ridere?* 6. *Quis Thracum more velit bibere?* 7. *Non cuiusvis est multa bene facere.* 8. *Si illuc ibis, vereor ne*

serpentis morsu pereas. 9. Num quis audeat negare consules bene de republica meritos esse? 10. Duabus unciis procerior est quam quisquam nostrum.

1. *If any one had given me the book I would have read (it).* 2. *I feared he would be weary of the journey.* 3. *My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests.* 4. *It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage.* 5. *Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens.* 6. *I have long been desirous of hearing Tullius.* 7. *He came from the city to the country as speedily as possible.* 8. *Ask your brother who sang this song.* 9. *The elder of the two brothers died before the capture of the city (i.e. before the city having been captured).* 10. *He is a man of wisdom.*

[EXERCISE XXII.¹

1. Crudelior erat quam ut cuiquam parceret. 2. Quidquid armorum habuimus, id omne tradendum erat. 3. Quamvis errorem feceris, licebit tibi meliora facere. 4. Idem es qui semper fuisti. 5. Cuilibet licuisset mentiri nisi hunc testem produxisses. 6. Quid refert utrum haec vera sint annon? 7. Nostine plerisque piscibus pinnas binas esse? 8. Tanta multitudini trinis castris opus erat. 9. Si quis tibi Achillis arma promitteret se daturum esse, quid tandem faceres? 10. Balbus moriens fratrem admonuit ut se ipse servaret. 11. Mira quadam arte erat suadendi. 12. Fallacior est quam cui credas. 13. Haec, sive vera sunt sive falsa, nullo modo me movent.
1. *Whatever you wish to say must be said at once.* 2. *It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow.* 3. *There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities.* 4. *What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money?* 5. *He is too deceitful for you to converse with.* 6. *He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible.* 7. *He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city.* 8. *He is better than any of his brothers.* 9. *Two-days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth.* 10. *Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.*

¹ In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book: but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Promisit se Gades venturum. 2. Erant qui dicerent urbem nunquam captum iri. 3. Misit imperator centurionem qui captivos deposceret. 4. Non adhuc compertum habeo quis hunc tantum virum rhetoricam docuerit. 5. Aggerem extruxit quo facilius hostem prohiberet. 6. Nemini pepercit, nullius miseritus est. 7. Cur tam parvo fune uteris? 8. Turpior erat quam quocum colloquereris. 9. Dies fere nullus est quin eam querentem audiam. 10. Spero fore ut urbs decem his diebus capiatur. 11. Interrogavit utrum haec caedes abhinc biennium an triennium facta sit. 12. Respondit iste se tuas excusationes parvi aestimare.

1. *It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius.* 2. *Do not pardon that wicked soldier.* 3. *The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians.* 4. *Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty?* 5. *In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights.* 6. *Arivistus was answered in these words by Caesar.* 7. *Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps.* 8. *Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy?* 9. *Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors.* 10. *They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Cur me morbum fratris mei celasti? 2. Hoc te moneo ne quem, clam patre tuo, domi accipias. 3. Diceris, mi fili, ipse hunc pontem rescidisse. 4. Non dubium est quin in certamen eloquentiae ambo venerint. 5. Obsecravit ducem mater ne sibi filiam eriperet. 6. Nonne licuit tibi, divitiis his carenti, consulem (*see licet in Vocab.*) fieri? 7. Ego me Phidiam esse malleum quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium. 8. Illud permagni referre arbitror ut domestica cura te liberem. 9. Alii alibi steterunt; erant qui ne stare quidem possent sed humi occumberent. 10. Leonidas cum trecentis se multis milibus Persarum opposuit. 11. Alii capi; alii cadere; plurimi vulnera accipere. 12. In eo proelio trecenta milia hostium interfecti sunt.

1. *Who founded the city of Carthage?* 2. *He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing.* 3. *By this time the wall (murus) and the citadel had been taken by our men.* 4. *Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two*

thousand? 5. I do not know whether she will agree with you. 6. The consul was the first who was asked his opinion. 7. There is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price. 8. I was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli. 9. Will any one promise to go with him? 10. I fear that we shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced marches.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. Quis nescit nos omnes famae atque fortunarum expertes esse?
2. Decimo anno post conditam urbem in exsilium pulsus est.
3. Fac ut quam celerrime in Italiam ad amicos redeas.
4. Adulatores, turbam levissimam, dux contemnebat. 5. Interrogavit num crederem se tantum dedecus in se admittere potuisse. 6. Non est cur fugias, hominum turpissime.
7. Non dubium est quin tibi pater nimis indulserit. 8. Utra harum dearum Vulcano nupsit? 9. Tandem ei persuasit pater ut mulierem in matrimonium duceret. 10. Quis non huius tanti philosophi audiendi studiosus erit? 11. Speraveram fore ut frigus mitesceret. 12. Aurum, argentum, ferrum, utilia illa quidem omnia; sed non pariter utilia.¹
1. *The boy had concealed (celo) the fact from his father by a falsehood. 2. Having burnt the village, the cohort set out for the nearest river (amnis). 3. You ought to have consulted the interests of each of your two sisters. 4. After he had conquered the Scythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer peace. 5. I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not troublesome to you. 6. Having accused others of bribery, he was himself condemned on the same charge. 7. If you ever come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days. 8. There were some who said that it mattered little what Tullius decided. 9. There is no doubt that all the best of the citizens resisted this law. 10. This field was valued at a high rate, but bought by me for a small price.*

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus² an obeamus. 2. Quis negat Socratem parentem philosophiae jure dici posse? 3. Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus

¹ The redundant *illē* (sometimes *is*) is commonly found before *quidem* when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, 'Tuus dolor humanus *is quidem*, sed tamen moderandus,' Yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be modified."

² Not here *whether we live*, but *whether we are to live*.

tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. 4. Si qui capti sunt, omnes ad unum interfecti. 5. Et mea et tua interest ut huic legi resistamus. 6. Vereor ne ex hoc fonte magna pestis in rempublicam fluxura sit. 7. Nunc quidem valetudini tribuamus aliquid, cras autem rei-publicae. 8. Non tibi tantus dolor est quantus isti. 9. Victis hostibus, Caesar ab urbibus quinque trecentos obsides poposcit. 10. Credisne hanc perfidiam ei profuturam esse?

1. *In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the illustrious general Agesilaus.* 2. *It concerns the whole country that Catiline should perish.* 3. *Having bound yourselves by an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him?* 4. *It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of thirty thousand soldiers.* 5. *It is said that Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan.* 6. *In the reign of Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems.* 7. *I asked him why he did not do-his-duty to (trans. satisfy) his country.* 8. *Do not teach young boys philosophy.*¹ 9. *I do not care a farthing for any of you.* 10. *Ask the boy whether Cyrus conquered the Scythians.*

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Nunquam in dicendo irascor. An tibi irasci videor si quid acrius dico, permovendorum iudicium causa? 2. Constat Labienum dimidio exercitus a Caesare praefectum esse. 3. In summo monte casa quaedam erat; quo inter venandum rex ventitabat. 4. Philoctetes, Lemni relictus, multis post annis Trojam a Neoptolemo reductus esse fertur. 5. Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini.² 6. Quaeritur suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliquis virtus expetenda sit. 7. Caesar Aeduis quadringentos obsides imperaverat. 8. Non jam stulti eritis, sed turpissimi, si diutius ab illo stabitis. 9. Milites in verba imperatoris iurarunt. 10. Poma haec utilia quidem sunt, sed amariora gustatu. 11. Dixit se plura facturum fuisse, nisi sibi persuasum fuisset iudicem neutri favere. 12. Milites pugnam poposcerunt, quibus imperator "Cunctando," inquit, "rem restituemus."
1. *He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse the deed.* 2. *Before he bound the captives he compelled them to swear not to escape.* 3. *Do you doubt, O citizens, what is*

¹ For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis" as an Adjective.

² Supply "contigèrit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to "contigit."

to be done? 4. *Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm.* 5. *For the same price as Tullius sold it to me.* 6. *We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us.* 7. *Have you not sworn to obey this law?* 8. *Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former.* 9. *The work, I say (see say), is quite finished.* 10. *The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Medio in foro, coram rege ipso, a plebe turbatum est. 2. Terra marique diversis casibus jam multos annos pugnatum erat. 3. Te duce, vel ignavissimi nostrum tubam canentem libenter audient. 4. Post Corinthum captam magna praeda Romam a Mummio missa est. 5. Non ante venit nobis auxilio quam quinquiens misissemus. 6. Satis erat tibi semel ignoscere; quoniam bis peccavisti, non iterum es excusandus. 7. Corinthum, tribus his diebus, veniet tui visendi causa. 8. Apud Romanos arma in majore honore quam pacis artes habebantur. 9. Multa terra marique passus tandem se in Italiam contulit. 10. Aurum plurimis et viris et civitatibus plurimarum miseriarum causa est. 11. Haec urbs, gentis devictae caput, quam celerrime delenda est. 12. Tullia, regina miserrima, fertur veneno fuisse interfecta.

1. *After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city.* 2. *Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens.* 3. *You ought not to have promised to come before the third day.* 4. *She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents.* 5. *This field cost me more than that meadow.* 6. *In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers.* 7. *Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared.* 8. *You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city.* 9. *I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise.* 10. *It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum. juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliaene an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeduisset, jam pridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupo, cuius in faucibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id

extraheret. 8. Senex filios convocatos hortatur, ut fascem frangant. 9. Quod quum nequirent facere, singulis singulas virgas distribuit. 10. Quibus facillime fractis ita pueros docuit quam firma res esset concordia.

1. *Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours.* 2. *It is reported that the girl died of grief (trans. on account of grief).* 3. *By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring.* 4. *Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno?* 5. *Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup?* 6. *In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie.* 7. *The speech was too long for you to learn in three days.* 8. *It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons.* 9. *Did you come here hoping to see her?* 10. *The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. *Do you blame him who is praised by your brother?* 2. *Many-things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly.* 3. *No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity.* 4. *Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust-things?* 5. *The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us.* 6. *He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful.* 7. *We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts.* 8. *The fruits you give me are not good.* 9. *The queen is overcome by pity, of which (trans. of which thing) they are ignorant.* 10. *His son takes-care-of the pigs, of which he has very-many (trans. which he has very-many).*

EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. *Who is that-fellow whose threats terrify you?* 2. *For-the-whole-of that winter (31), which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease.* 3. *To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable.* 4. *To the butterfly, who lives (only) a few hours, life is very pleasant.* 5. *Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy.* 6. *Those whom virtue delights, vices do not*

delight. 7. Few of those who praise you blame me. 8. Who terrifies him? What does the man fear? 9. What do you avoid? What deed terrifies you? 10. What you love I do not love.

EXERCISE XXXII. C.

1. *Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother?*
2. *To what woman are you giving this?*
3. *These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer.*
4. *The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier.*
5. *This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army.*
6. *Whose threats terrify you?*
7. *During-the-whole-of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the-same-things in Balbus.*
8. *I praise the same-things as (i.e. which) you (praise).*
9. *The same woman who praises herself blames her friends.*
10. *Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.*

APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS
IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.¹

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the **a** or **e** of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into :

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
	i	ē or ī	a, e, or u	
Āgo	rēdīgo	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>reduce</i>
Cādo	occīdo	occīdi	occāsum	<i>die</i>
Rāpio	ērīpio	ērīpui	ēreptum	<i>snatch</i>
Fācio	confīcio	confēcī	confectum	<i>finish</i>
Sālio	prōsīlio	prōsīlui	prōsultum	<i>spring forth</i>
Fāteor	confīteor	confessus	confessus	<i>confess</i>
Tēneo	sustīneo	sustīnui	sustentum	<i>sustain</i>
Lēgo	ēlīgo	ēlēgi	ēlectum	<i>elect</i> ²
Ēgeo	indīgeo	indīgui	—	<i>need</i>

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of **scando**, [pleo], **tango**, [specio], **cedo**, **caedo**, **jacio**, **emo**, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, **pēpūli**, **cēcīdi**, **tētīgi**, **cēcīni**, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, **ex-pūli**, **con-cīdi**, **con-tīgi**, **con-cīnui**, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of **disco**, **posco**, **-dēre**, and sometimes of **curro**.

¹ The order of the *Public School Grammar* is adopted in this list.

² But note that three compounds of **lēgo**, viz., **neglēgo**, **intellēgo**, and **diligo**, make the perfects **neglexi**, **intellexi**, **dilexi**.

FIRST CONJUGATION.¹

Däre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give, put</i>
Stäre	stēti	[stātum] ²	<i>stand</i>
Iūv-äre	iūvi	iūtum	<i>help</i>
Lāv-äre ³	lāvi	lōtura	<i>wash</i>
Frīc-äre	frīcui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Sēc-äre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Crēp-äre	crēpui	crēptum	<i>creak, prattle</i>
Cūb-äre	cūbui	cūbitum	<i>lie down</i>
Dōm-äre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Sōn-äre	sōnui	sōnītum	<i>sound</i>
Tōn-äre	tōnui	tōnītum	<i>thunder</i>
Vēt-äre	vētui	vētītum	<i>forbid</i>
Plīc-äre	plīcāvi (-ui)	plīcītum (-ātum)	<i>fold</i>
Mīc-äre	mīcui (-āvi)	[-mīcātum]	<i>glitter</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mord-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
Pend-ēre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang</i>
Spond-ēre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>contract</i>
Tond-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shear</i>
Cāv-ēre	cāvi	cantum	<i>beware</i>
Fāv-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fōv-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Mōv-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move</i>

¹ Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus *.

² A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus *haesum* is not found, but *haesūrus* is; there is no *cārītum*, but there is *cārītūrus*; no *quītum*, but *quītus*; no *fūgītum*, but *fūgītūrus*. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.

Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, *e.g.* *sectum* but *sēcātūrus*, *sōnītum* but *sōnātūrus*, &c.

³ In classical prose, *sup. lāvātum*, *perf. part. lautus*.

Vōv-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow</i>
Pāv-ēre	pāvi	—	<i>quake</i>
Sēd-ēre	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
Vīd-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	<i>see</i>
Prand-ēre	prandi	pransum	<i>dine</i>
Cōnīv-ēre	[cōnīvi or -nixi]	—	<i>blink</i>
Strīd-ēre	strīdi	—	<i>creak</i>
Ferv-ēre	ferbui or fervi	—	<i>boil</i>
Dēl-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Fl-ēre	flēvi	flētum	<i>weep</i>
N-ēre	nēvi	nētum	<i>spin</i>
[-Plēre]	[-plēvi]	[-plētum]	<i>fill</i>
*Vi-ēre	[viēvi]	viētum	<i>bind with twigs</i>
Ci-ēre	cīvi	cītum	<i>stir up</i> ¹
-Ōlēre	[-ōlēvi]	[ōlītum]	<i>grow, &c.</i>
[Su-ēre]	suevi	suetum	<i>be wont</i>
Arc-ēre	arcui	—	<i>ward off</i>
Coerc-ēre	coercui	coercītum	<i>restrain</i>
Exerc-ēre	exercui	exercītum	<i>exercise</i>
Cār-ēre	cāruī	[cāritum]	<i>be without, be in want of</i>
Dēb-ēre	dēbui	dēbītum	<i>owe</i> ²
Dōl-ēre	dōlui	[dōlītum]	<i>grieve</i>
Hāb-ēre	hābui	hābītum	<i>have</i>
Jāc-ēre	jācui	[jācītum]	<i>lie</i>
Līc-ēre	līcui	līcītum	<i>be bid for</i>
Mēr-ēre	mērui	mērītum	<i>deserve, earn</i>
Mōn-ēre	mōnui	mōnītum	<i>advise</i>
Nōc-ēre	nōcui	nōcītum	<i>hurt</i>
Pār-ēre	pārui	[pārītum]	<i>appear, obey</i>
Plāc-ēre	plācui	plācītum	<i>please</i>
Praeb-ēre	praebui	praebītum	<i>afford</i>
Terr-ēre	terrui	terrītum	<i>affright</i>
Tāc-ēre	tācui	tācītum	<i>be silent</i>
Vāl-ēre	vālui	[vālītum]	<i>be strong, be well</i>
Dōc-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	<i>teach</i>
Misc-ēre	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	<i>mingle</i>

¹ The primitive form is *cio, cīre* (found in the compounds *accio, excio*).

² This is properly a compound of *hābeo*; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.

Tĕn-ĕre	tĕnui	tentum	<i>hold</i>
Torr-ĕre	torrui	tostum	<i>scorch</i>
Cens-ĕre	censui	censum	<i>value, vote</i>
Ĕg-ĕre	ĕgui	—	<i>want</i>
*[-Mĭn-ĕre]	[-mĭnui]	—	<i>jut</i>
Ol-ĕre	olui	—	<i>smell</i>
Sorb-ĕre	sorbui	—	<i>suck up</i>
Stŭd-ĕre	stŭdui	—	<i>study</i> ¹
Aug-ĕre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase (trans.)</i>
Indulg-ĕre	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Mulg-ĕre	mulsi	[muletum]	<i>milk</i>
Torqu-ĕre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Lŭg-ĕre	luxi	—	<i>mourn</i>
Muleĕre	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe</i>
Tergĕre	tersi	-tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Ardĕre	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire</i>
Rĭdĕre	rĭsi	rĭsum	<i>laugh</i>
Suādĕre	suāsī	suāsūm	<i>persuade</i>
Iŭbĕre	iussi	iussūm	<i>command</i>
Mānĕre	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
Haerĕre	haesi	[haesum]	<i>stick</i>
Algĕre	alsi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Fulgĕre	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
*Turg-ĕre	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Urg-ĕre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
*Frīgĕre	[-frixi]	—	<i>be cold</i>
Lŭcĕre	luxi	—	<i>shine</i>
Aud-ĕre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Gaud-ĕre	gāvĭsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Sŏl-ĕre	sŏlĭtus sum	—	<i>be wont</i>
Lĭc-ĕri	lĭcĭtus	—	<i>bid for</i>
Mĕr-ĕri	mĕrĭtus	—	<i>deserve</i>
Mĭser-ĕri	mĭsĕrĭtus	—	<i>pity</i>
Tu-ĕri	tuĭtus	—	<i>view, protect</i>
Vĕr-ĕri	vĕrĭtus	—	<i>fear, respect</i>
R-ĕri	rĭtus	—	<i>think</i>
Fāt-ĕri	fassus	—	<i>confess</i>
Mĕd-ĕri	—	—	<i>heal</i>

¹ Several Verbs that have an Adjective in ĭdus reject the Supine, e.g. stŭpeo, āveo, flōreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lāteo.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sĕpĕl-ire	sĕpĕlĭvi	sĕpultum	<i>bury</i>
Īre (eo)	ĭvi	ĭtum	<i>go</i>
Quĭre (queo)	quĭvi	quĭtum	<i>be able</i>
Săl-ire	sălui	(saltum)	<i>leap, dance</i>
Ăpĕr-ire	ăpĕrui	ăpertum	<i>open</i>
Ōpĕr-ire	ŏpĕrui	ŏpertum	<i>cover</i>
Compĕr-ire	compĕri	compertum	<i>find</i>
Repĕr-ire	reppĕri	rĕpertum	<i>discover</i>
Vĕn-ire	vĕni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Ămĭc-ire	ămĭxi & -ĭcui	ămictum	<i>clothe</i>
Farc-ire	farsi	fartum	<i>stuff</i>
Fulc-ire	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Sanc-ire	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate</i>
Sarc-ire	sarsi	sartum	<i>mend</i>
Vinc-ire	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Saep-ire	saepsi	sseptum	<i>hedge in</i>
Haur-ire	hausi	haustum	<i>drawn</i>
*Rauc-ire ¹	—	—	<i>be hoarse</i>
Sent-ire	sensi	sensum	<i>feel²</i>
Expĕr-iri	expertus		<i>experience</i>
Oppĕr-iri	oppertus		<i>wait for</i>
Ōr-iri	ortus		<i>arise</i>
Assent-iri	assensus		<i>agree</i>
Mĕt-iri	ensus		<i>measure</i>
Ord-iri	orsus		<i>begin</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Disc-ĕre ³	dĭdĭci		<i>learn</i>
Posc-ĕre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Pa-n-g-ĕre ⁴	pĕpĭgi	pactum	<i>fasten, covenant</i>

¹ There are also found *rausŭrus* and *ir-rausĕrit*; *denotes rare occurrence.

² Some Verbs, such as *gestio*, *I am eager*, and others which express only passions, e.g. *singultio*, *I sob*, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

³ Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Reduplication, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *sisto*, *-dĕre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

⁴ The *n* in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms *pĕpĭgi*, *pactum*, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, *covenant*; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are *pĕgi* or *panxi*, and *panctum*.

Pu- <i>n-g-ěre</i>	pŭpŭgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Ta- <i>n-g-ěre</i>	tĕtĭgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Sist- <i>ěre</i>	[-stĭti] ¹	[-stĭtum] ¹	<i>stop</i>
[-d- <i>ěre</i>] ¹	[-dĭdi]	[-dĭtum]	<i>put, give</i>
Tend- <i>ěre</i>	tĕtendi	{ tensum <i>and</i> } tentum	<i>stretch</i>
Căn- <i>ěre</i>	cĕcĭni	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Păr- <i>ěre</i>	pĕpĕri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Toll- <i>ěre</i>	sustŭli	sublŭtum	<i>take up</i>
Parc- <i>ěre</i>	pĕperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
Căd- <i>ěre</i>	cĕcĭdi	căsum	<i>fall</i>
Caed- <i>ěre</i>	cĕcĭdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Pend- <i>ěre</i>	pĕpendi	pensum	<i>weigh</i>
Tu- <i>n-d-ěre</i>	(tŭtĭdi)	tŭsum	<i>thump, pound</i>
Curr- <i>ěre</i>	cŭcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
Fall- <i>ěre</i>	fĕfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Pell- <i>ěre</i>	pĕpŭli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>
[-Cell- <i>ěre</i>] ¹	[cĕcŭli]	[-culsum] ¹	<i>push</i>
Făc- <i>ěre</i> (<i>i-o</i>)	fĕci	factum	<i>make, do</i>
Jăc- <i>ěre</i> (<i>i-o</i>)	jĕci	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Li- <i>n-qu-ěre</i>	lĭqui	[-lictum] [*]	<i>leave</i>
Vi- <i>n-c-ěre</i>	vici	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Ăg- <i>ěre</i>	ĕgi	actum	<i>do</i>
Fra- <i>n-g-ěre</i>	frĕgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Lĕg- <i>ěre</i>	lĕgi (-lexi) ²	lectum	<i>read, choose</i>
Căp- <i>ěre</i> (<i>i-o</i>)	cĕpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Ru- <i>m-p-ěre</i>	rŭpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ėm- <i>ěre</i>	ĕmi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
*Scăb- <i>ěre</i>	scăbi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Ėd- <i>ěre</i>	ĕdi	ĕsum	<i>eat</i>
Fŏd- <i>ěre</i> (<i>ŷ-o</i>)	fŏdi	fŏssum	<i>dig</i>
Fu- <i>n-d-ěre</i>	fŭdi	fŭsum	<i>pour</i>
Fŭg- <i>ěre</i> (<i>ŷ-o</i>)	fŭgĭ	[fŭgĭtum]	<i>fly</i>
Bĭb- <i>ěre</i>	bĭbi	bĭbĭtum	<i>drink</i>
Ĭcere	ĭci ³	ictum	<i>strike</i>

¹ Only found in Compounds.² The form -lexi is found only in *dĭ-lĕgo*, *neg-lĕgo*, *intel-lĕgo*.³ This form is non-classical.

Fi- <i>n</i> -d-ěre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Sci- <i>n</i> -d-ěre	scīdi	scissum	<i>cut</i>
Vert-ěre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
[-Cend-ěre]	[-cendi]	[-censum]	<i>set alight</i>
Cūd-ěre	cūdi	cūsum	<i>hammer</i>
[-Fend-ěre]	[-fendi]	[-fensum]	<i>strike</i>
Mand-ěre	mandi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
Pand-ěre	pandi	passum	<i>spread</i>
Prehend-ěre	prehendi	prehensum	<i>take, grasp</i>
Scand-ěre	-scandi	-scansum	<i>climb</i>
Sīd-ěre	sīdi ¹	—	<i>settle</i>
Lamb-ěre	[lambi] ²	[lambitum]	<i>lick</i>
Verr-ěre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Vell-ěre	{ velli } ³ { vulsi }	vulsum	<i>rend, pluck</i>
*Psall-ěre	psalli	—	<i>play (chords)</i>
Vis-ěre	vīsi	—	<i>visit</i>
Fidere	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Compesc-ěre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Ráp-ěre (<i>i-o</i>)	rapui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Al-ěre	ālui	altum	<i>nourish</i>
Cōl-ěre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Consūl-ěre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Occūl-ěre	occūlui	occultum	<i>hide</i>
Sēr-ěre	sērui	sertum	<i>join together</i>
*Pins-ěre	pinsui	pistum ⁴	<i>pound</i>
Tex-ěre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
*Deps-ěre	depsui	—	<i>knead, tan</i>
Stert-ěre	stērtui	—	<i>snore</i>
Strēp-ěre	strēpui	strēpitum	<i>rattle</i>
[-Cumb-ěre]	cūbui	cūbitum	<i>lie down</i>
Frēm-ěre	frēmui	[frēmītum] ⁵	<i>roar</i>
Gēm-ěre	gēmui	[gēmītum] ⁵	<i>groan</i>
Tēm-ěre	trēmui	[trēmītum] ⁵	<i>tremble</i>
Vōm-ěre	vōmui	vōmītum	<i>vomit</i>
Gign-ěre	gēmui	gēnītum	<i>beget</i>
Pōn-ěre	pōsui	pōsītum	<i>place</i>
Mōl-ěre	mōlui	mōlītum	<i>grind</i>

¹ More commonly, *sēdi*, from *sēdeo*.² The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.³ *Vulsi* is the rarer of the two forms.⁴ There are also *pinsi*, *pinsum*, and *pinaītum*.⁵ These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.

Velle (vōlo)	vōlui	—	<i>wish</i>
Nolle (nōlo)	nōlui	—	<i>wish not</i>
Malle (mālo)	mālui	—	<i>wish rather</i>
Mēt-ēre	messui	messum	<i>mow, reap</i>
*Frend-ēre	[frendui] ¹	fressum	<i>gnash, bruise</i>
Līn-ēre	lēvi	lītum	<i>smear</i>
Sīn-ēre	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow</i>
Cern-ēre	[crēvi]	[-crētum]	<i>sift</i>
Spern-ēre	sprēvi	sprētum	<i>spurn</i>
Stern-ēre	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
Sēr-ēre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
Cresc-ēre	crēvi	crētum	<i>grow</i>
Quiesc-ēre	quiēvi	[quiētum]	<i>rest</i>
Suesc-ēre	suēvi	[suētum]	<i>be wont</i>
(G)nosc-ēre ²	(g)nōvi	(g)nōtum	<i>know</i>
Pasc-ēre	pāvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
Cāp-ēre (i-o)	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>desire</i>
Pēt-ēre	pētīvi	petītum	<i>demand</i>
Quaer-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	<i>seek</i>
*Rūd-ēre	[rūdīvi] ³	[rūdītum]	<i>bray</i>
Sāp-ēre (i-o)	sapīi (-īvi) ⁴	—	<i>savour</i>
Tēr-ēre	trīvi	trītum	<i>rub, bruise</i>
Arcess-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	<i>fetch</i>
Incess-ēre	incessīvi	incessītum	<i>attack</i>
Cāpess-ēre	cāpessīvi	cāpessītum	<i>take in hand</i>
Fācess-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessītum	<i>cause</i>
Lācess-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessītum	<i>provoke</i>
Dīc-ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Dūc-ēre	duxī	ductum	<i>lead</i>
[-Lāc-ēre (i-o)] ⁵	[-lexi]	[-lectum]	<i>entice</i>
[-Spēc-ēre (i-o)] ⁶	[-spexi]	[-spectum]	<i>espy</i>
Cōqu-ēre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Cīng-ēre	cīnxi	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
Fīng-ēre	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
*Flīg-ēre	flixi	flictum	<i>smite</i>

¹ *Frendui* is not found; *frendēre* is found.

² *Nosco* has dropt *g* which reappears in *agnosco*, *agnōvi*, *agnītum*; *cognosco*, *cognōvi*, *cognītum*; *ignosco*, *ignōvi*: Adj. *ignōtus*.

³ *Rūdīvi* is only in *Apuleius*; *rūdītum*, nowhere.

⁴ But *dēsīpio*, *dēsīpui*. *Augustine* has *sāpui*.

⁵ Compare *al-līcio*, *il-līcio*, *pel-līcio*, *pre-līcio*, which make *-lexi*, *-lectum*. But *ēlīcio* makes *ēlicui*, *ēlicītum*.

⁶ Compare (*circum- con- de- in- per- pro- re-*)-*spīcio* -*spexi* -*spec-tum*. So *aspīcio*, *suspīcio*.

Frīg-ěre	frixi	frictum	<i>roast, fry</i>
Jung-ěre	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
*Ling-ěre	[-linxi]	[-linctum]	<i>lick</i>
*Mung-ěre	[-munxi]	[-munctum]	<i>wipe</i>
Ping-ěre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Plang-ěre	planxi	plactum	<i>beat</i>
Rěg-ěre ¹	rexi	rectum	<i>rule</i>
String-ěre	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
Sūg-ěre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Těg-ěre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
*Stingu-ěre	[-stinxi]	[-stinctum]	—
Tingu-ěre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>stain</i>
Ungu-ěre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Ningu-ěre	ninxi	—	<i>snow</i>
Ang-ěre	[anxi]	[anctum] ²	<i>squeeze</i>
*[Clang-ěre]	—	—	<i>rattle</i>
Trāh-ěre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Věh-ěre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Viv-ěre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
Stru-ěre	struxi	structum	<i>pile</i>
Fīg-ěre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Flu-ěre	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow</i>
Merg-ěre	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
Sparg-ěre ³	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Terg-ěre	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Flect-ěre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Nect-ěre	{ nexi }	nexum	<i>twine</i>
	{ nexui }		
Pect-ěre	pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Plect-ěre	—	[-plexum]	{ plait }
			{ smite }
Mitt-ěre	mīsi	missum	<i>send</i>
Quāt-ěre (i-o) ⁴	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Cēd-ěre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Claud-ěre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Divīd-ěre	divīsi	divīsum	<i>divide</i>
Laed-ěre	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lūd-ěre	lūsi	lūsum	<i>play</i>

¹ Compare *arrīgo, corrīgo, dīrīgo*; (e- per-)-*rigo -rexi -rectum*. Also *pergo, perrexi, perrectum*; *surgo, rise, surrexi, surrectum*, with its compounds: (as *con- ex- in- re-)-surg -surrexi -surrectum*.

² Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.

³ Compare *conspergo, dispergo*; (ad- in- re-)-*spergo -spersi -spersum*.

⁴ Compare (con- dis- ex- in- per-)-*cūtio -cussi -cussum*. So *réper-cūtio*.

Plaud-ĕre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Rād-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>shave</i>
Rōd-ĕre	rōsi	rōsum	<i>gnaw</i>
Trūd-ĕre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>
Vād-ĕre	[-vāsi]	[-vāsum]	<i>go</i>
Carp-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
*Clĕp-ĕre	clepsi	cleptum	<i>steal</i>
{ Rĕp-ĕre	repsi	[reptum]	<i>creep</i>
{ Serp-ĕre	serpsi	[serptum]	<i>crawl</i>
{ Scalp-ĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
{ Sculp-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>grave</i>
*Glāb-ĕre	[glupsi]	[gluptum]	<i>peel</i>
Nūb-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>wed</i>
Scrib-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Cōm-ĕre	compsi	comptum	<i>dress hair</i>
Dēm-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
Prōm-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Sūm-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take up</i>
Temn-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise</i>
Prēm-ĕre ¹	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Gĕr-ĕre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>
Ūr-ĕre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ācu-ĕre	ācui	ācūtum	<i>sharpen</i>
Argu-ĕre	argui	argūtum	<i>prove</i>
Exu-ĕre	exui	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Indu-ĕre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Imbu-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Lu-ĕre	lui	— ²	<i>alone</i>
Mīnu-ĕre	mīnui	mīnūtum	<i>lessen</i>
Nu-ĕre	nui	— ²	<i>nod</i>
Spu-ĕre	spui	spūtum	<i>spit</i>
Stātu-ĕre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Sternu-ĕre	sternui	[sternūtum]	<i>sneeze</i>
Su-ĕre	sui	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Tribu-ĕre	tribui	tribūtum	<i>assign, pay</i>
Solv-ĕre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose, pay</i>
Volv-ĕre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>

¹ Compare *imprimō, supprimō*; (com- de- ex- op- re-)-*primō -pressi -pressum*.

² No Supine is found; but the fut. part. *luītūrus* points to *luītum* as Supine; and *abnuītūrus* to *nuītum* for *nuo*.

Ru-ěre	ruĭ	rūtum (rūtum)	<i>rush</i>
*Batu-ěre	batui	—	<i>beat</i>
*-Gru-ěre	-grui	—	<i>cry like a crane</i>
Mětu-ěre	mětui	—	<i>fear</i>
Plu-ěre	plui or plĭvi	—	<i>rain</i>
Fung-i	functus		<i>perform</i>
Nĭt-i	nĭsus (nixus)		<i>strive</i>
Plect-i	[-plexus]		<i>twine</i>
Păt-i (i-or)	passus		<i>suffer</i>
Ūti	ŭsus		<i>use</i>
Grăd-i (i-or)	gressus		<i>step</i>
Lăb-i	lapsus		<i>glide, fall</i>
Môr-i (i-or)	mortuus		<i>die</i>
Quēr-i	questus		<i>complain</i>
Fru-i	frŭtus		<i>enjoy</i>
Lŏqu-i	locŭtus		<i>speak</i>
Sĕqu-i	secŭtus		<i>follow</i>
Āpisc-i	aptus		<i>obtain</i>
[-Mĕnisc-i] ¹	[-mentus]		<i>have in mind</i>
Ēxpergisc-i	experrectus		<i>wake up</i>
Fătisc-i	fessus		<i>be weary</i>
(g)nasc-i	(g)nātus		<i>be born</i>
Īrasc-i	īrātus		<i>be angry</i>
Nancisc-i	nactus or nactus		<i>find</i>
Oblivisc-i	oblītus		<i>forget</i>
Păcisc-i	pactus		<i>bargain</i>
Prŏfisc-i	prŏfectus		<i>set out</i>
Ulcisc-i	ultus		<i>avenge</i>
Vesc-i	—		<i>feed</i>
Lĭqu-i	—		<i>melt</i>
*Rĭng-i	—		<i>grin</i>

¹ Compare com-mĭniscor, -mentus, 3; rĕ-mĭniscor, 3.

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

(Alphabetically arranged.¹)

Abdo	-ĕre	abdĭdi	abdĭtum	<i>hide</i>
Abĭgo	-ĕre	ābēgi	ābactum	<i>drive away</i>
Abōleo	-ĕre	ābōlēvi	ābōlĭtum	<i>destroy</i>
Abripiō	-ĕre	abripi	abreptum	<i>snatch away</i>
Accendo	-ĕre	accendi	accensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Accumbo	-ĕre	accūbui	accūbitum	<i>recline at table</i>
Accurro	-ĕre	accŭcurri <i>and</i> accurri	accursum	<i>run up</i>
Acquiro	-ĕre	acquisīvi	acquisĭtum	<i>acquire</i>
Addo	-ĕre	addĭdi	addĭtum	<i>add</i>
Ādeo	-īre	ādii	ādĭtum	<i>go to</i>
Adīmo	-ĕre	ādēmi	ādemptum	<i>take away</i>
Adjūvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	<i>help</i>
Ādōleo	-ĕre	ādōlūi	ādultum	<i>to honour in wor- ship</i>
Ādōlesco	-ĕre	ādōlēvi	ādultum	<i>grow up</i>
Agnosco	-ĕre	agnōvi	agnĭtum	<i>recognize</i>
Āgo	-ĕre	ēgi	actum	<i>do, act, drive</i>
Algeo	-ĕre	alsi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Allicio	-ĕre	allexi	allectum	<i>entice</i>
Ālo	-ĕre	ālui	altum ²	<i>feed, nourish</i>
Āmicio	-īre	[āmīcui & -ixi]	āmictum	<i>clothe</i>
Āmitto	-ĕre	āmisi	āmissum	<i>lose</i>
Amplector	-i	amplexus (sum)	—	<i>embrace</i>
Anġo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>squeeze</i>
Anquiro	-ĕre	anquīsīvi	anquīsĭtum	<i>examine into</i>
Antecello	-ĕre	—	—	<i>surpass</i>
Āperio	-īre	āpēruī	āpertum	<i>open</i>
Appello ³	-ĕre	appŭlī	appulsum	<i>put into shore</i>

¹ The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

² *Ālĭtum* was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. *altus* *high*.

³ Distinguish this word from *appello*, *appellāre*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *call*.

Applico	-āre	applicui <i>and</i> applicāvi	applicitum <i>and</i> applicatum	<i>apply</i>
Arcesso	-ēre	arcessivi	arcessitum	<i>send for</i>
Ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum (neut.)	<i>take fire</i>
Arguo	-ēre	argui	argutum	<i>prove</i>
Ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	<i>ascend</i>
Attendo	-ēre	attendi	attentum	<i>attend</i>
Audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Aufugio	-ēre	aufūgi	—	<i>flee away</i>
Aufēro	-erre	abstūli	ablātum	<i>carry away</i>
Augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i>
Bībo	-ēre	bībi	—	<i>drink</i>
Cādo	-ēre	cēcīdi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Cāno	-ēre	cēcīni	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Cāpresso	-ēre	cāpessīvi	cāpessitum	<i>seize, take hold of</i>
Cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Carpo	-ēre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
Cāveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware</i>
Cēdo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Censeo	-ēre	censui	censum	<i>vote</i>
Cerno ¹	-ēre	—	—	<i>discern</i>
Cieo	-ciēre	[civi	cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cio	-ciēre	[civi	cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cingo	-ēre	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
Circumcīdo	-ēre	circumcīdi	circumcīsum	<i>clip</i>
Clango	-ēre	—	—	<i>resound</i>
Claudo ²	-ēre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Cō-ēmo	-ēre	cō-ēmi	cō-emptum	<i>buy up</i>
[Coepio]	-isse	coeptus (sum)	used with Pass. Inf.	<i>begin</i>
Cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognitum	<i>find out, know</i>
Cōgo	-ēre	cōēgi	cōactum	<i>compel</i>
Colligo	-ēre	collēgi	collectum	<i>collect</i>
Cōlo	-ēre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Cōmo	-ēre	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn</i>
Compello ³	-ēre	compūli	compulsum	<i>drive together</i>
Compērio	-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>ascertain</i>
Compesco	-ēre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Compleo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	<i>fill</i>
Comprē- hendo }	-ēre	comprehendi	comprehensum	<i>seize</i>
or				
Comprendo	-ēre	comprendi	compreensum	<i>seize</i>

¹ The Perfect and Supine *crēvi* and *crētum* are rarely used in this sense.

² The compounds of *claudio* are similar, except that they change *au* into *u*, e.g. *circumclūdo*, *conclūdo*, &c.

³ Distinguish this from *compellāre*, *accost*.

Concīdo	-ĕre	concīdi	concīsum	<i>cut in pieces</i>
Concīdo	-ĕre	concīdi	—	<i>fall in a heap</i>
Concīno	-ĕre	concīnui	—	<i>play together, harmonize</i>
Concurro	-ĕre	concurri	concursum	<i>run together</i>
Concūtio	-ĕre	concuſsi	concuſsum	<i>shake together</i>
Condo	-ĕre	condīdi	condītum	<i>found</i>
Confido	-ĕre	confisus (sum)	—	<i>confide</i>
Conjicio	-ĕre	conjeci	conjectum	<i>throw</i>
Cōniveo	-ĕre	[cōnivi & -ixi]	—	<i>wink</i>
Conscendo	-ĕre	conscendi	conscensum	<i>go up</i>
Consentio	-īre	consensi	consensum	<i>agree</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consēvi	consītum	<i>sow, plant</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consērui	consertum	<i>put close together</i>
Consīdo	-ĕre	consēdi	consessum	<i>sit down</i>
Conspargo	-ĕre	conspersi	conspersum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Consūlo	-ĕre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Contingo	-ĕre	contīgi	contactum	<i>touch, happen</i>
Convello	-ĕre	convelli	convulsum	<i>tear up</i>
Converto	-ĕre	converti	conversum	<i>turn towards</i>
Cōquo	-ĕre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Crēdo	-ĕre	crēdīdi	crēdītum	<i>believe</i>
Crēpo	-āre	crēpui	crēpītum	<i>creak</i>
Cresco	-ĕre	crēvi	[crētum]	<i>grow</i>
Cūbo	-āre	cūbui	cūbitum	<i>lie down</i>
[-cumbo	-ĕre	-cūbui	-cūbītum	<i>lie down]</i>
Cūdo	-ĕre	cūdi	cūsum	<i>fashion</i>
Cūpio	cupĕre	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>covet, desire</i>
Curro	-ĕre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
[-cūtio ¹	-ĕre	-cussi	-cussum	<i>shake]</i>
Dēcerno	-ĕre	dēcrēvi	dēcretum	<i>decree</i>
Dēcīdo	-ĕre	dēcīdi	—	<i>fall down</i>
Dēcīdo	-ĕre	dēcīdi	dēcīsum	<i>decide</i>
Dēcurre	-ĕre	dēcūcurri and decurri	dēcursum	<i>run a course</i>
Dēdisco	-ĕre	dēdīdīci	—	<i>unlearn</i>
Dēfendo	-ĕre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
Dēgo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>live</i>
Dēleo	-ĕre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Dēmo	-ĕre	dēmpsi	dēemptum	<i>take away</i>
Dēpello	-ĕre	dēpūli	dēpulsum	<i>drive down</i>
Dēpendeo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>hang down (intr.)</i>
Dēpendo	-ĕre	dēpendi	dēpensum	<i>pay down</i>
Dēposco	-ĕre	dēpoposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Descendo	-ĕre	descendi	descensum	<i>descend</i>
Dēsīno	-ĕre	dēsī [-ivi]	[dēsītum]	<i>cease</i>

¹ A form of *quātio* only found in the compounds *concūtio*, *percūtio*, &c.

Despondeo	-ēre	despondi [-spopondi]	desponsum	<i>pledge</i>
Dētergeo	-ēre	dētersi	dētersum	<i>wipe away</i>
Dēvincio	-īre	dēvinxi	dēvinctum	<i>bind down</i>
Dīco	-ēre	dīxi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Diffīdo	-ēre	diffīsus (sum)	—	<i>distrust</i>
Diffīndo	-ēre	diffīdi	diffissum	<i>cleave asunder</i>
Dīgēro	-ēre	dīgessi	dīgestum	<i>set apart</i>
Dignosco	-ēre	—	—	<i>distinguish</i>
Dilīgo	-ēre	dilēxi	dilectum	<i>love</i>
Dilūcesco	-ēre	diluxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Dīmētior	-īri	dīmensus (sum)	—	<i>measure out</i>
Dīmīco	-āre	dīmīcāvi & ui	dīmīcātum	<i>fight</i>
Dīrimo	-ēre	dīrēmi	dīremptum	<i>break off, or up</i>
Dīrīpio	-ēre	dīrīpui	dīreptum	<i>tear asunder</i>
Dīrumπο	-ēre	dīrūpi	dīruptum	<i>burst asunder</i>
Discēdo	-ēre	discessi	discessum	<i>depart</i>
Discīndo	-ēre	discīdi	discissum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Disco	-ēre	dīdīci	—	<i>learn</i>
Discumbo	-ēre	discūbui	discūbītum	<i>recline (at dinner)</i>
Discurro	-ere	discurri	discursum	<i>run in different directions</i>
Discūtio	-ēre	discussi	discussum	<i>shake asunder</i>
Disjīcio	-ēre	disjēcī	disjectum	<i>cast asunder</i>
Dispergo	-ēre	dispersi	dispersum	<i>scatter apart</i>
Dissentio	-īre	dissensi	dissensum	<i>disagree with</i>
Dissēro	-ēre	dissērui	[dissertum]	<i>set forth distinctly, discourse</i>
Dissīdeo	-ēre	dissēdi	dissessum	<i>be at variance with</i>
Dissīlio	-īre	dissīlui	dissultum	<i>leap apart</i>
Dissolvo	-ēre	dissolvi	dissolūtum	<i>dissolve</i>
Dissuādeo	-ēre	dissuāsi	dissuāsūm	<i>dissuade</i>
Distinguo	-ēre	distinxi	distinctum	<i>discriminate</i>
Disto	-āre	—	—	<i>be distant</i>
Distrāho	-ēre	distraxi	distractum	<i>draw apart</i>
Divello	-ēre	divelli	divulsum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Divīdo	-ēre	divīsi	divīsum	<i>divide</i>
Do	dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
Dōceo	-ēre	dōcui	doctum	<i>teach</i>
Dōmo	-āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Dūco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
Ēdisco	-ēre	ēdīdīci	—	<i>learn off</i>
Ēdo	ēdēre & esse	ēdi	ēsūm	<i>eat</i>
Ēdo	-ēre	ēdīdi	ēdītum	<i>give out</i>
Effervesco	-ēre	efferbui	—	<i>effervesce</i>

Effulgeo	-ĕre ¹	effulsi	effulsum	<i>shine forth</i>
Effundo	-ĕre	effūdi	effūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Ēlīcio	-ĕre	ēlīcui	ēlīctum	<i>entice forth</i>
Elīdo	-ĕre	ēlīsi	ēlīsum	<i>knock out</i>
Ēlīgo	-ĕre	ēlēgi	ēlectum	<i>choose out</i>
Ēmentior	-īri	ēmentitus (sum)	—	<i>lie outright</i>
Ēmīco	-āre	ēmīcui	ēmīcatum	<i>flash out</i>
Ēmo	-ĕre	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
Ēnēco	-āre	ēnēcui	ēnectum	
		[ēnēcavi]	[ēnēcātum] ²	<i>kill</i>
Ēnīteo	-ĕre	ēnītui	—	<i>shine out</i>
Ēnītor	-i	ēnīsus (enixus)	—	<i>strive hard</i>
Eo	īre	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
Ēvello	-ĕre	ēvelli	ēvulsum	<i>tear out</i>
Ēvōmo	-ĕre	ēvōmui	ēvōmītum	<i>vomit forth</i>
Excēdo	-ĕre	excessi	excessum	<i>retire from</i>
Excello	-ĕre	excellui	[excelsum]	<i>excel</i>
Excerpo	-ĕre	excerpsi	excerptum	<i>pick out</i>
Excīdo	-ĕre	excīdi	excīsum	<i>hew out</i>
Excīdo	-ere	excīdi	—	<i>fall out</i>
Excōlo	-ĕre	excōlui	excultum	<i>cultivate carefully</i>
Excūbo	-āre	excūbui	excūbītum	<i>lie out of doors</i>
Excūdo	-ĕre	excūdi	excūsum	<i>hammer out</i>
Excurre	-ĕre	excūcurri	excursum	<i>run out</i>
Excūtio	-ĕre	excussi	excussum	<i>shake out</i>
Exēdo	-ĕre	exēdi	exēsum	<i>gnaw out</i>
Exīno	-ĕre	exēmi	exemptum	<i>take out</i>
Exōlesco	-ĕre	exōlēvi	exōlētum	<i>grow out of date</i>
Expello	-ĕre	expūli	expulsum	<i>expel</i>
Expergis-	-i	experrectus	—	<i>awake oneself</i>
cor		(sum)		
Expērior	-īri	expertus sum	—	<i>test</i>
Expēto	-ĕre	expētīvi	expētītum	<i>seek out</i>
Expleo	-ĕre	explēvi	explētum	<i>fill up</i>
Explīco	-āre	explicāvi (-ui)	explicātum (-itum)	<i>unfold</i>
Explōdo	-ĕre	explōsi	explōsum	<i>hiss off the stage</i>
Expōno	-ĕre	expōsui	expōsitum	<i>set forth</i>
Exposco	-ĕre	expōposci	—	<i>demand earnestly</i>
Expriīmo	-ĕre	expressi	expressum	<i>squeeze out</i>
Exquīro	-ĕre	exquisivi	exquisītum	<i>search out</i>
Excīndo	-ĕre	excīdi	excīssum	<i>extirpate</i>
Exsēco	-āre	exsēcui	exsectum	<i>cut out</i>
Exsēro	-ĕre	exsērui	exsertum	<i>protrude</i>

¹ So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be *effulgo*, 3.

² The forms in *-āvi*, *-ātum*, are less classical; but note that *nēco* is of the first conj., and regular.

Exsilio	-ire	exsilui	exsultum	<i>leap forth</i>
Exsisto	-ēre	exstīti	[exstītum]	<i>come forth, arise</i>
Exsolvo	-ēre	exsōlui	exsōlūtum	<i>unloose</i>
Exstinguo	-ēre	exstinxi	exstinctum	<i>extinguish</i>
Exsto	-āre	exstiti	—	<i>project, be extant</i>
Exstrūo	-ēre	exstruxi	exstructum	<i>heap up</i>
Exsurgo	-ēre	exsurrexi	exsurrectum	<i>rise up, recover</i>
Extendo	-ēre	extendi	extentum (-tensum)	<i>stretch out</i>
Exuo	-ēre	exūi	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Fācesso	-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessītum	<i>accomplish</i>
Fācio	fācere	fēci	factum	<i>do, make</i>
Fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Farcio	-ire	farsi	fartum	<i>stuff</i>
Fāteor	-ēri	fassus (sum)	—	<i>confess</i>
Fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fērio ¹	-ire	—	—	<i>strike</i>
Fēro	ferre	tūli	lātum	<i>bear</i>
Ferveo & vo	-ēre	fervi and -bui	—	<i>boil</i>
Fido	-ēre	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Figo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Findo	-ēre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Fingo	-ēre	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
Fio	fīeri	factus sum	—	<i>be made, become</i>
Flecto	-ēre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	<i>weep</i>
Fligo	-ēre	flixi	flictum	<i>dash</i>
Fluo	-ēre	fluxi	[fluxum]	<i>flow</i>
Fōdio	fōdēre	fōdi	fossum	<i>dig</i>
Fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Frēmo	-ēre	frēmui	[frēmītum]	<i>mutter, murmur</i>
Frendo	-ēre	—	fressum & frēsum	<i>gnash</i>
Frīco	-āre	frīcui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Frīgeo	-ēre	frīxi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Frīgo	-ēre	frīxi	frictum	<i>roast</i>
Fūgio	fūgēre	fūgi	[fūgītum]	<i>flee</i>
Fulcio	-ire	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Fulgeo	-ēre	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
Fundo	-ēre	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour, rout</i>
Fūro ²	-ēre	[fūrni]	—	<i>be mad</i>
Gaudeo	-ēre	gāvīsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Gēmo	-ēre	gēmui	gēmītum	<i>groan</i>
Gēro	-ēre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>

¹ The perfect forms **percussi**, **percussum**, are supplied from **percūtio**.

² The perfect form generally supplied instead of **fūrui**, **insānīvi**.

Gigno	-ĕre	gĕnnui	gĕnĭtum	<i>produce</i>
Grādior	-i	gressus (sum)	—	<i>step</i>
Hāereo	-ĕre	haesi	haesum	<i>stick</i>
Haurio	-ire	hausi	haustum	<i>draw</i>
Īco	-ĕre	īci	ictum	<i>strike</i>
Ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	<i>pardon</i>
Illīno	-ĕre	illēvi	illĭtum	<i>smear</i>
Illūcesco	-ĕre	illuxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Illūdo	-ĕre	illūsi	illūsum	<i>make game of</i>
Imbuo	-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Immisceo	-ĕre	immiscui	immixtum(-inistum)	<i>intermix</i>
Impendo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>impend</i>
Impendo	-ĕre	impendi	impensum	<i>expend</i>
Impingo	-ĕre	impēgi	impactum	<i>thrust against</i>
Impleo	-ĕre	implēvi	implētum	<i>fill</i>
Incēdo	-ĕre	incessi	incessum	<i>step</i>
Incendo	-ĕre	incendi	incensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Incesso	-ĕre	incessīvi	—	<i>assail</i>
Incīdo	-ĕre	incīdi	[incāsūm]	<i>fall, light on</i>
Incīdo	-ĕre	incīdi	incīsūm	<i>cut into, engrave</i>
Incingo	-ĕre	incinxi	incinctum	<i>gird</i>
Inclūdo	-ĕre	inclūsi	inclūsūm	<i>shut in</i>
Incōlo	-ĕre	incōlui	incultum	<i>inhabit</i>
Incūbo	-āre	incūbui	incūbūtum	<i>brood over</i>
Incumbo	-ĕre	incūbui	incūbūtum	<i>lean on, bend one's mind to</i>
Incurro	-ĕre	incurri[-cūcurri]	incursum	<i>run towards, meet</i>
Incūtio	-ĕre	incussi	incussum	<i>strike against</i>
Indīgeo	-ĕre	indīgi	—	<i>need</i>
Indo	-ĕre	indīdi	indītum	<i>put in, apply</i>
Indulgeo	-ĕre	indulsi	indultum	<i>indulge</i>
Induo	-ĕre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Īneo	-ire	īnī	īnītum	<i>enter</i>
Inflūo	-ĕre	influxi	[influxum]	<i>flow into</i>
Insēro	-ĕre	insēvi	insītum	<i>sow in</i>
Insēro	-ĕre	insērui	insertum	<i>put in, mingle</i>
Insisto	-ĕre	instīti	—	<i>stand on, persevere</i>
Insto	-āre	instīti	[instātum]	<i>press on</i>
Insurgo	-ĕre	insurrexi	insurrectum	<i>rise up, or to</i>
Intellēgo	-ĕre	intellexi	intellectum	<i>understand</i>
Intendo	-ĕre	intendi	intentum, or -sum	<i>stretch, direct</i>
Intercēdo	-ĕre	intercessi	intercessum	<i>intervene, interpose</i>
Intēreo	-ire	intērī	intērītum	<i>perish</i>
Interīmo	-ĕre	interēmī	interemptum	<i>destroy</i>
Interlīno	-ĕre	interlēvi	interlītum	<i>smear, falsify by erasures</i>
Internosco	-ĕre	internōvi	—	<i>distinguish</i>

Intōno	-āre	intōnui	intōnitum	<i>thunder</i>
Intorqueo	-ēre	intorsi	intortum	<i>twist, hurl</i>
Intueor	-ērī	intuītus (sum)	—	<i>look on, regard</i>
Invideo	-ēre	invidi	invisum	<i>envy</i>
Jācio	-ēre	jēci	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	<i>command</i>
Jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
Jūvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	<i>help</i>
Lābor	-i	lapsus (sum)	—	<i>glide</i>
Lācesso	-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessitum	<i>provoke</i>
Laedo	-ēre	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lambo	-ēre	lambi	—	<i>lick</i>
Lāvo	-āre ¹	lāvi	lāvātum	} <i>wash</i>
			lautum, lōtum	
Lēgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	<i>read, choose</i>
Libet	-ēre	libītum est	—	<i>it pleases, suits</i>
Lingo	-ēre	linxi	linctum	<i>lick</i>
Līno	-ēre	līvi and lēvi	lītum	<i>smear</i>
Linquo	-ēre	līqui	[lictum]	<i>leave</i>
Lūceo	-ēre	luxi	—	<i>shine</i>
Lūdo	-ēre	lūsi	lūsum	<i>play</i>
Lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	<i>mourn</i>
Luo	-ēre	lui	luītum	<i>wash, atone</i>
Mālo	malle	mālui	—	<i>prefer</i>
Mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
Māneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
Mēdeor	-ērī	—	—	<i>heal</i>
—	mēmīn- isse	mēmīni	—	<i>remember</i>
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
Mētiōr ³	-īrī	mensus (sum)	—	<i>measure</i>
Mēto	-ēre	messui	messum	<i>mow, reap</i>
Mētuo	-ēre	mētui	—	<i>fear</i>
Mīco	-āre	mīcui	—	<i>glitter</i>
Mīnuo	-ēre	mīnui	mīnūtum	<i>lessen</i>
Misceo	-ēre	miscui	mistum or mixtum	<i>mix</i>
Misēreor	-ērī	mīsērītus (sum)	—	<i>pity</i>
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	<i>send</i>
Mōlo	-ēre	mōlui	mōlītum	<i>grind</i>
Mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
Mōrīor	-i	mortūus (sum)	—	<i>die</i>
Mōveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move</i>
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe</i>

¹ There is an ante-classical and poetical form *lāvēre*.² The form *libuit* is perhaps not found in Cicero.³ Distinguish this from *mentior*, *mentīri*, *mentītus*, *lie*.

Mulgeo	-ēre	mulsi	muletum	<i>milk</i>
Nanciscor	-i	nactus, nactus (sum)	—	<i>obtain</i>
Nascor	-i	nātus (sum)	—	<i>be born</i>
Necto	-ēre	nexui & nexi	nexum	<i>tie, bind</i>
Neglĕgo	-ēre	neglexi	neglectum	<i>neglect</i>
Neo	nĕre	nĕvi	nĕtum	<i>spin</i>
Ningo	-ēre	ninxi	—	<i>snow</i>
Nĭteo	-ēre	—	—	<i>shine</i>
Nĭtor	-i	nĭsus and nixus	—	<i>strive</i>
Nōlo	nolle	nōlui	—	<i>be unwilling</i>
Nosco ¹	-ēre	nōvi	nōtum	<i>come to know</i>
Nūbo	-ēre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>be married</i>
Ōbeo	-īre	ōbīi and īvi	—	<i>go towards, down</i>
Oblīno	-ēre	oblēvi	oblītum	<i>besmear</i>
Obliviscor	-i	oblītus (sum)	—	<i>forget</i>
Obrĕpo	-ēre	obrepsi	obreptum	<i>creep up to</i>
Obrūo	-ēre	obruī	obrutum	<i>overwhelm</i>
Obsĭdeo	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessum	<i>besiege</i>
Obsisto	-ēre	obstīti	[obstītum]	<i>oppose</i>
Obsōlesco	-ēre	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum	<i>wear out</i>
Obsto	-āre	obstīti	obstātum	<i>stand in the way of</i>
Obstringo	-ēre	obstrinxi	obstrictum	<i>bind (by oath)</i>
Obtĕro	-ēre	obtrivi	obtritum	<i>trample underfoot</i>
Occĭdo	-ēre	occīdi	occĭsum	<i>slay</i>
Occĭdo	-ēre	occīdi	occāsum	<i>fall, die</i>
Occūlo	-ēre	occūlui	occultum	<i>hide</i>
Occurro	-ēre	occurri	occursum	<i>meet, resist</i>
—	ōdisse	ōdi	[ōsum]	<i>hate</i>
Offendo	-ēre	offendi	offensum	<i>knock against</i>
Offero	-erre	obtūli	oblātum	<i>offer</i>
Ōmitto	-ēre	ōmīsi	ōmissum	<i>pass over</i>
Ōpĕrio	-īre	ōpĕrui	ōpertum	<i>cover</i>
Oppōno	-ēre	oppōsui	oppōsitum	<i>put in the way</i>
Opprĭmo	-ēre	oppressi	oppressum	<i>press down, over-</i>
				<i>power</i>
Ordior	-īri	orsus (sum)	—	<i>commence</i>
Ōrior	-īri	ortus (sum)	—	<i>arise</i>
Pāciscor	-i	pactus (sum)	—	<i>bargain</i>
Pando	-ēre	pandi	passum & pansum	<i>expand, spread</i>
Pango	-ēre	{ pĕpĭgi pĕgi panxi	{ pactum panctum	} <i>frame, fasten</i>
Parco	-ēre	pĕperci	parsum	

¹ Nosco means, *I make acquaintance with*; nōvi means, *I have made the acquaintance of*, i.e. *I know*.

Pārio ¹	-ēre	pēpēri	partum	bring forth
Pasco	-ēre	pāvi	pastum	feed
Pāveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	fear
Pecto	-ēre	pexui and pexi	pexum	comb
Pello	-ēre	pēpūli	pulsum	drive away
Pellīcio	-ēre	pellexi	pellectum	allure
Pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	—	hang (intr.)
Pendo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	hang, weigh (tr.)
Pērāgo	-ēre	perēgi	peractum	complete
Percello	-ēre	percūli	perculsum	strike (with terror)
Percūtio	-ēre	percussi	percutsum	strike
Perdo	-ēre	perdidī	perditum	lose, destroy
Pergo	-gēre	perrexi	perrectum	continue
Pērīmo	-ēre	perēmi	peremptum	make away with
Perlēgo	-ēre	perlēgi	perlectum	read through
Perpētior	-i	perpessus (sum)	—	endure
Persto	-āre	perstīti	perstatum	persevere
Pēto	-ēre	pētīvi & pētīi	pētītum	seek
Pingo	-ēre	pinxi	pictum	paint
Pinso	-ēre	pinsi & pinsui	pinsum	pound
Plango	-ēre	planxi	planctum	beat
Plaudo	-ēre	plausi	plausum	clap hands
Plecto	-ēre	—	—	lash
Plecto	-ēre	plexui, plexi	plexum	plait
[Pleo	plēre	plēvi	plētum	fill]
Plico	-ēre	plīcui	plīcatum & plīcītum	fold
Plūo	-ēre	plūit and plūvit	—	rain
Pōno	-ēre	pōsui	pōsītum	place
Posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	demand
Possum ²	posse	pōtui	—	be able
Pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	pōtātum & pōtum	drink
Praecāveo	-ēre	praecāvi	praecautum	take precautions
Praecello	-ēre	—	—	excel
Praecīdo	-ēre	praecīdi	praecīsūm	cut off, abridge
Praecīno	-ēre	praecīnui	praecentum	play before, fore- tell
Praecurro ³	-ēre	praecūcurri	praecursum	precede
Praedīco ⁴	-ēre	praedixi	praedictum	predict
Praeeo	-īre	praeīi, or -īvi	praeītum	go before, dictate
Praesto	-āre	praestīti	praestātum [-ītum]	excel, answer for

¹ Distinguish this from *pāreo*, *pārēre*, *pāruī*, *pārītum*, *obey*.

² Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb *pōtior*, *I gain possession of*.

³ Note that here, and in *excurro*, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.

⁴ Distinguish this from *praedīco*, *praedīcāre*, *praedīcāvi*, *praedīcātum*, *reclaim*.

Praetexo	-ĕre	praetexui	praetextum	<i>border, pretend</i>
Prandeo	-ĕre	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine</i>
Prĕhendo	-ĕre	prĕhendi	prensum	<i>seize, grasp</i>
Prĕmo	-ĕre	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Prĕcumbo	-ĕre	prĕcŭbui	prĕcŭbitum	<i>fall (on one's knees, wounded, &c.)</i>
Prōdeo	-īre	prōdī	prōditum	<i>go forth</i>
Prōdo	-ĕre	prōdīdi	prōditum	<i>betray</i>
Prōficiscor	-i	prōfectus (sum)	—	<i>set out</i>
Prōfiteor	-ĕri	prōfessus (sum)	—	<i>avow</i>
Prōfundo	-ĕre	prōfūdī	prōfūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Prōmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Prōmōveo	-ĕre	prōmōvi	prōmōtum	<i>move forward</i>
Prōpello	-ĕre	prōpŭlī	prōpulsum	<i>drive before one</i>
Proscribo	-ĕre	proscripsi	proscriptum	<i>publish, proscribe</i>
Prōvideo	-ĕre	prōvidī	prōvisum	<i>foresee, provide</i>
Psallo	-ĕre	psalli	—	<i>play on harp</i>
Pungo	-ĕre	pŭpŭgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Quaero	-ĕre	quaesivī	quaesitum	<i>seek</i>
Quātio	quātĕre		quassum	<i>shake</i>
Queo	quīre	quīvi	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Quĕror	-i	questus (sum)	—	<i>complain</i>
Quiesco	-ĕre	quīēvi	quīētum	<i>rest</i>
Rādo	-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>scrape</i>
Rāpio	rāpĕre	rāpui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Rēcīdo	-ĕre	reccīdi ¹	rēcāsum	<i>fall back, relapse</i>
Rēcīdo	-ĕre	rēcīdi	rēcīsum	<i>lop, retrench</i>
Rēcumbo	-ĕre	recŭbui	—	<i>lie down</i>
Reclūdo	-ĕre	reclŭsi	reclŭsum	<i>disclose</i>
Reddo	-ĕre	reddīdi	reddītum	<i>restore, render</i>
Rēdeo	-īre	rēdī	rēditum	<i>return</i>
Rēdigo	-ĕre	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>bring back, reduce</i>
Rēdīmo	-ĕre	rēdēmi	rēdemptum	<i>buy back, buy up</i>
Rĕfello	-ĕre	rĕfelli	—	<i>refute</i>
Rĕfercio	-īre	rĕfersi	rĕfertum	<i>cram</i>
Rĕfigo	-ĕre	rĕfixi	rĕfixum	<i>unfasten</i>
Rĕdōleo	-ĕre	rĕdōlui	—	<i>smell of</i>
Refrīgesco	-ĕre	refrixi	—	<i>grow cool, flag</i>
Refringo	-ĕre	rĕfrēgi	refractum	<i>break open, destroy</i>
Rĕgero	-ĕre	rĕgessi	rĕgestum	<i>cast back</i>
Rĕlēgo ²	-ĕre	rĕlēgi	rĕlectum	<i>gather up, go through again</i>
Rĕmaneo	-ĕre	rĕmansī	—	<i>stay behind</i>

¹ Other verbs that lengthen compound re- in the perfect, are, *rettŭli* and *reppĕri*.

² Distinguish this from *rĕlēgo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *banish*.

Rëor	-ëri	rätus (sum)	—	<i>think, suppose</i>
Rëpello	-ëre	reppüli	rëpulsum	<i>drive back</i>
Rëpendo	-ëre	rëpendi	rëpensum	<i>pay back</i>
Rëpërio	-ire	reppëri	rëpertum	<i>discover</i>
Rëpo	-ëre	repsi	reptum	<i>creep</i>
Rëquiro	-ëre	rëquësvi	rëquësitum	<i>seek again</i>
Rescindo	-ëre	rescëdi	rescisum	<i>break open, down, rescind</i>
Rësëco	-äre	rësëcui	rësectum	<i>prune</i>
Rësëdeo	-ëre	rësëdi	rësessum	<i>remain behind</i>
Rësëdo	-ëre	rësëdi	—	<i>sit down, settle</i>
Rësëpisco	-ëre	rësëpivi and ui	—	<i>recover one's senses</i>
Rësisto	-ëre	restiti	—	<i>halt, resist</i>
Respergo	-ëre	respersi	respersum	<i>besprinkle</i>
Respicio	-ëre	respexi	respectum	<i>have regard to</i>
Respondeo	-ëre	respondi	responsum	<i>answer</i>
Restinguo ¹	-ëre	restinxi	restinctum	<i>quench</i>
Resto	-äre	restiti	—	<i>remain, hold out</i>
Rëtexo	-ëre	retexui	rëtextum	<i>unweave</i>
Rëtundo	-ëre	rëtüdi & rettüdi	rëtusum	<i>blunt</i>
Rëvello	-ëre	rëvelli	rëvulsum	<i>tear away</i>
Rëverto ²	-ëre	rëverti	rëversum	<i>return</i>
Rideo	-ëre	rësi	rësum	<i>laugh</i>
Rödo	-ëre	rösi	rösum	<i>gnaw</i>
Rüdo	-ëre	[rüdïvi]	[rüdïtum]	<i>bray</i>
Rumpo	-ëre	rüpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ruo	ruëre	rui	ruïtum [rütum] ³	<i>rush, fall</i>
Saepio	-ire	saepsi	saeptum	<i>hedge in</i>
Sälio	-ire	säliui	[saltum]	<i>leap</i>
Sälio	-ire	—	salitum	<i>salt</i>
Sancio	-ire	sanxi [-ïvi]	sanctum [-ïtum]	<i>render sacred, enact</i>
Säpio	-ëre	säpivi and -ii	—	<i>savour of, have taste, or wisdom</i>
Sarcio	-ire	sarsi	sartum	<i>patch</i>
Scäbo	-ëre	scäbi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Scalpo	-ëre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
Scando	-ëre	—	—	<i>climb</i>
Scindo	-ëre	scëdi	scissum	<i>cut, tear</i>

¹ The obsolete **stinguo** is only found (in Present forms) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.

² In the Present and Present-derived Tenses **rëvertitur** is more common; in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses **rëverti, rëvertëram**, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle **rëversus**.

³ The Fut. Part. **ruüturus** points to sup. **ruütum**; but in an old legal word "**rüta**," *things dug up (on an estate)*, the vowel was long. In the compounds **obrütus, ërütus** and **surrütus** the vowel was short.

Scisco	-ĕre	scĭvi	scĭtum	<i>decree</i>
Scribo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Sculpo	-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>engrave</i>
Sĕco	-āre	sĕcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Sĕdeo	-ĕre	sĕdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
Sentio	-ĭre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
Sĕpĕlio	-ĭre	sĕpĕlĭvi	sĕpultum	<i>bury</i>
Sĕro	-ĕre	sĕrui	sertum	<i>join together</i>
Sĕro	-ĕre	sĕvi	sĕtum	<i>sow</i>
Serpo	-ĕre	serpsi	serptum	<i>crawl</i>
Sĭdo	-ĕre	sĭdi	—	<i>sit down</i>
Singultio	-ĭre	singultĭvi	—	<i>sob</i>
Sĭno	-ĕre	sĭvi	sĭtum	<i>allow</i>
Sisto	-ĕre	—	—	<i>stop, make stand</i>
Sŏleo	-ĕre	sŏlŭtus sum	—	<i>be accustomed</i>
Solvo	-ĕre	solvi	sŏlŭtum	<i>loosen</i>
Sŏno ¹	-āre	sŏnnui	sŏnĭtum	<i>sound</i>
Sorbeo	-ĕre	sorbui [sorpsi]	—	<i>suck up</i>
Spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
[Spĕcio	-ĕre	spexi	spectum]	<i>espionage</i>
Sperno	-ĕre	sprĕvi	sprĕtum	<i>despise</i>
Spondeo	-ĕre	spŏpondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise</i>
Stĕtuo	-ĕre	stĕtui	stĕtŭtum	<i>set up</i>
Sterno	-ĕre	strĕvi	strĕtum	<i>strew</i>
Sterto	-ĕre	stertui	—	<i>snore</i>
Sto	stāre	stĕti	stĕtum	<i>stand</i>
Strĕpo	-ĕre	strĕpui	[strĕptum]	<i>roar</i>
Strideo & Strido	-ĕre & -ĕre	} strĭdi	—	<i>creak, hiss, whizz</i>
Stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	<i>tie</i>
Struo	-ĕre	struxi	structum	<i>build, pile</i>
Suādeo	-ĕre	suāsi	suasum	<i>advise, persuade</i>
Sŭbĕo	-ĭre	sŭbĭi	subĭtum	<i>go under, spring up</i>
Sŭbĭgo	-ĕre	sŭbĕgi	subactum	<i>bring under, subdue</i>
Subnecto	-ĕre	subnexui	subnexum	<i>tie under</i>
Subruo, <i>see</i> surruo.				
Subsĭdo	-ĕre	subsĕdi	subsessum	<i>sink down</i>
Subvĕnio	-ĭre	subvĕni	subventum	<i>help</i>
Subverto	-ĕre	subverti	subversum	<i>subvert</i>
Succĕdo	-ĕre	successi	successum	<i>approach, follow</i>
Succendo	-ĕre	succendi	succesum	<i>set on fire</i>
Succurro	-ĕre	succurri	succursum	<i>help</i>
Suesco	-ĕre	suĕvi	suĕtum	<i>be accustomed</i>
Suffĕro	-erre	sustŭli	sublĕtum	<i>endure</i>

¹ Note *insŏnnui* and *consŏnnui*, but *rĕsŏnĕvi*.

Suffundo	-ĕre	suffūdi	suffūsum	<i>suffuse</i>
Suggĕro	-ĕre	suggessi	suggestum	<i>supply, subjoin</i>
Sūgo	-ĕre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Summōveo	-ĕre	summōvi	summōtum	<i>thrust off</i>
Sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
Suo	-ĕre	—	sūtum	<i>sew</i>
Suppĕto	-ĕre	suppĕtīvi	suppĕtītum	<i>be in store, suffice</i>
Suppleo	-ĕre	supplēvi	supplētum	<i>fill up</i>
Suppōno	-ĕre	suppōsui	suppōsītum	<i>substitute, counterfeit</i>
Supprīmo	-ĕre	suppressi	suppressum	<i>check, conceal</i>
Surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>arise</i>
Surrĕpo	-ere	surrepsi	surreptum	<i>creep up to</i>
Surrīgo ¹	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>raise</i>
Surrīpio	-ĕre	surrīpui	surreptum	<i>snatch by stealth</i>
Surruo	-ĕre	surrui	surrūtum	<i>undermine</i>
Suspendo	-ĕre	suspēdi	suspensum	<i>suspend</i>
Suspicio	-ĕre	suspexi	suspectum	<i>look up to</i>
Tango	-ĕre	tētigi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Tĕgo	-ĕre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
Temno	-ĕre	—	—	<i>despise</i>
Tendo	-ĕre	tētēdi	[tentum & tensum] ²	<i>stretch</i>
Tĕneo	-ĕre	tēnui	[tentum]	<i>hold</i>
Tergeo & tergo	-ĕre } -ĕre }	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Tĕro	-ĕre	trivi	tritum	<i>rub</i>
Texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
Tinguo	-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>dye</i>
Tollo	-ĕre	sustūli ³	sublātum ³	<i>take up</i>
Tondeo	-ĕre	tōtōdi	tonsum	<i>share</i>
Tōno	-āre	tōnui	tōnītum	<i>thunder</i>
Torqueo	-ĕre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
Torreo	-ĕre	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
Trādo	-ĕre	trādidi	trādītum	<i>hand over</i>
Trāho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Transeo	-ire	transī and -īvi	transītum	<i>pass over</i>
Transīgo	-ĕre	transēgi	transactum	<i>transact</i>
Transilio	-ire	transīlui [-īvi] ⁴	—	<i>leap across</i>
Trĕmo	-ĕre	trēmui	—	<i>tremble</i>
Trībuo	-ĕre	tribui	tribūtum	<i>assign</i>
Trūdo	-ĕre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>

¹ This is the uncontracted form of *surgo* used transitively.

² These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the Pass. Part. *tentus* and *tensus*.

³ These forms do not properly belong to *tollo*, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on *fūro* above.

⁴ *Livy* uses *-ui*; *Plautus* and *Pliny*, *-īvi*.

Tūeor[tuor]-ēri	tūstus <i>and</i> tūtus — (sum)		<i>regard, guard</i>
Tundo -ēre	tūtūdi	tūsum & tunsum	<i>thump</i>
Turgeo -ēre	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Ulciscor -i	ultus (sum)	—	<i>avenge myself on</i>
Unguo -ēre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Urgeo -ēre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
Ūro -ēre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ūtor -i	ūsus (sum)	—	<i>use</i>
Vādo -ēre	[vāsi]	[vasum]	<i>go</i>
Vēho -ēre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Vello -ēre	velli <i>and</i> vulsi	vulsum	<i>rend</i>
Vēneo -īre	vēnii	—	<i>be sold</i>
Vēnio -īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Vergo -ēre	[versi]	—	<i>bend</i>
Verro -ēre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Verto -ēre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
Vēto -āre	vētui	vētūm	<i>forbid</i>
Vīdeo -ēre	vīdi	vīsum	<i>see</i>
Vincio -īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Vinco -ēre	vici	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Viso -ēre	visi	—	<i>visit</i>
Vivo -ēre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
Vōlo velle	vōlui	—	<i>wish</i>
Volvo -ēre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>
Vōmo -ēre	vōmui	vōmūtum	<i>vomit</i>
Vōveo -ēre	vōvi	vōtum	<i>vow</i>

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs *coeipī*, *begin*, *mēmīnī*, *remember*, and *ōdī*, *hate*, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus *I remembered* is *mēmīnēram*; *that they may remember*, or *let them remember*, *mēmīnērint*; *I shall remember*, *mēmīnēro*; and the same of *ōdī*.

INDICATIVE.

	(1)	(2)	(3)
<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepī	Mēmīni	Ōdī
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coepēro	Mēmīnēro	Ōdēro
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepēram	Mēmīnēram	Ōdēram

SUBJUNCTIVE.			
<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepërim	Mëminërim	Ôdërim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepissem	Mëminissem	Ôdissem
IMPERATIVE.			
<i>Future.</i>	(wanting)	Mëmento Mëmentôte	(wanting)
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepissë	Mëminissë	Ôdissë
PARTICIPLE.			
<i>Future.</i>	Coeptûrûs	(wanting)	Ôsûrûs

4. Aio, *I say* :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>S.</i> Aio	—	<i>S.</i> Aiëbam	—
Ais	Aiäs	Aiëbäs	—
Ait	Aiät	Aiëbät	—
<i>P.</i> —	—	<i>P.</i> Aiëbämûs	—
—	—	Aiëlâtis	—
Aiunt	Aiant	Aiëbant	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

5. Inquam, *say I* :—

INDICATIVE.			
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Inquam	—	—	Inquï
Inquïs	—	Inquïës	Inquisti
Inquît	Inquïëbät ¹	Inquïët	—
Inquïmûs	—		
Inquîtis	—		
Inquïunt	—		

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Inquë	2 <i>Pers.</i> Inquïto.

N.B.—**Inquam** is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominative.

Then *Balbus* said, “*This I deny.*” Tum *Balbus*, “*Haec,*” inquit, “*nëgo.*”

¹ But this form is found without the e.

APPENDIX III.

HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example :

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in aequor
Trinacris, a positu nomen adepta loci.

I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, *Which is the Principal Verb?*
Ans., **procurrit**—*runs forth*.

2. *What is the Subject of the Principal Verb?* Ans.,
Terra, *a land*.

3. (a) *Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it (b) a Direct Object? (c) an Indirect Object?*

Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) *Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject?*
(b) *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

Ans., (a) **Trinacris** (*i.e. trin-acris, three-promontoried*) is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to **terra**, or as agreeing with it; (b) **Adepta**, from **adipiscor**, is a Participle agreeing with **terra**, meaning *having obtained*.

¹ Bear in mind that *two Adjectives* (unless connected by a Conjunction) rarely agree with the same Noun: *many serious sorrows*, *multi et graves dolores* (153). But an *Adjective and Participle* may agree with the same Noun, without a Conjunction.

5. *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

6. The next question is to ask, *Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb?* i.e. any Clauses answering to the question (a) *How?* (b) *When?* (c) *Where?* (d) *Whence?* (e) *Why, &c.*

Ans. *How?* **tribus scopulis**, with *three rocks*; (c) *Where?* or *Whither?* **vastum in aequor**, *into the vast sea*.

7. Coming to **adepta**, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (b). The Object is **nomen**, *the name*; (5) **loci**, of *the place*, is Gen. depending on **nomen** (or **positu**); (6) *Whence?* Ans., **a positu**, *from its position*.¹

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle **adepta**, a prose author might have written **quod**, or **quia adepta fuerat**, *because it had obtained*, and the Conjunction **quod** or **quia** would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) *How? When? Why? &c.*, may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, *because, though, when, in order that, &c.*: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, e.g. "**incertum est** (or **nescio**) **num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit**," *it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position*: here **est** (or **nescio**) is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "**num . . . fuerit**."

¹ Possibly, **loci** may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on **positu**: *from the position of the place*.

II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question *What Case?* it is not enough, for example, to say that “**loci** is Genitive because it means *of the place* ; ” the pupil must say “ Genitive Case, governed by **nomen** (or **positu**). ” In other words, the pupil *must give the Rule*.

The Rules for the Cases are as follows :—

1. NOMINATIVE.

1. *The Subject of a Verb.*
2. *In Apposition* to another Nominative.
3. *The Complementary Nominative* (Par. 260).
4. *By connection*, i.e. because it is connected with another Nom. by some Conjunction, **quam**, **vel**, **et**, &c.

2. ACCUSATIVE.

1. *The Subject of an Infinitive* (Par. 208, 209).
2. *The Object of a Verb.*

This includes the Accusative (often called *Cognate Accusative*) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the Verb and Noun are of kindred, i.e. *Cognate* meaning, e.g. “**ludo ludum**,” *I play a game* ; “**eo viam**,” *I go my way*.

3. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 183).
4. *In Apposition* to another Accusative (Par. 123).
- * 5. *The Accusative of Respect* (or *the Accusative of the Part affected*).

This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially with Passive Participles : “**tectus caliginē vultum**,” *covered with darkness as to his features*.

6. *The Accusative of Extension* of (a) time or (b) space (Par. 262).

* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in prose.

7. The *Accusative of Place Whither* (towns and small islands, Par. 249).

8. The *Exclamatory Accusative*: "**me miserum!**" *wretch that I am!* "**O sortem infelicem,**" *O, unhappy fate!* (206).

9. The *Double Accusative* (after Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*): Par. 312.

10. The (a) *Primary* and (b) *Complementary Accusative*: see Par. 259.

<i>We thought you a second Cato.</i>	Alterum te Catonem puta-
	bamus.
<i>They will create you king.</i>	Te regem creabunt.

Here the person (**te**) is (a) the *Primary* Object of the Verb, and requires (b) a *Complementary Accusative*, **Catonem** or **regem**, to make the meaning complete.¹

* 11. An *Adverbial Accusative* is sometimes formed from the Neuter of an Adjective, especially in poetry: "**torva tuens,**" *looking grimly*; "**dulce ridentem** Lalagen," *Lalage sweetly laughing*.

3. THE DATIVE.

1. *Of the Remote Object*: after Verbs of *giving, pleasing, helping, obeying*, and their opposites (Par. 142); also after *Verbs Compounded of Prepositions* (Par. 192); after many Adjectives signifying *nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

* 2. *Of Advantage or Disadvantage* (sometimes called "*Commodi et Incommodi*"):

<i>Thou soarest for thyself.</i>	Tibi seris.
<i>We desire office for thee.</i>	Tibi honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

¹ In the *Public School Grammar* this is called the *Oblique Double Accusative* with *Factitive Verb*.

3. *Of Purpose* (Par. 268): often accompanied by the *Dat. of Advantage* or *Disadvantage*, or some other Dative:

He came for a help to us.

Venit **auxilio** (*Dat. of P.*)

nobis (*Dat. of Advantage*).

He gave this for a present to me.

Hoc mihi (*Dat. of Recipient*.)
dono (*Dat. of P.*) dedit.

4. *Of the Recipient used for the Agent*, found only with Perfect Passive, Passive Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in *-bilis*.¹

I have now made up my mind.

Mihi jam consilium captum
est.

4. THE ABLATIVE (Par. 273—280).

1. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 178).

This includes the Ablative *of the Agent* with **a** or **ab**.

2. *Of the Instrument* (Par. 8).

3. *Of the Measure of Excess or Defect* (Par. 274).

4. *Of Definite Price* (Par. 273).

5. *Of Manner* (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbial Ablatives: **nomine**, *in name*; **re**, or **re ipsa**, *in fact*; **verbo**, *in word*; **specie**, *in appearance*; **jure**, *rightly*; **neque injuria**, *and not unnaturally*; **recte atque ordine**, *in due course*; **via atque ratione**, *methodically*; **vi**, *forcibly*; **dolo**, *craftily*.

6. *Of Quality*.

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. *Of the Point of Time* (Par. 30, 263).

8. *Of Comparison* (Par. 63).

9. *Absolute* (Par. 196).

¹ The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.

I am scarce heard by any. Vix audior ulli.—Ovid.

10. Used with *dignus, indignus, fretus* (Par. 28, 278).¹

11. Object of *fungor, fruor, utor, potior* (Par. 207).

12. (a) *Of Plenty and Want*; (b) with “opus est,” “usus est”; see Par. 279.

13. *Of the Place Where* (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.

* 14. *A Poetic Local Ablative*, where Prose writers would insert the Preposition *in*.

15. *Of the Place Whence* (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.

* 16. *Of Separation* (after a few words, mostly legal, “abdico me *magistratu*,” *I resign my office*; “moveo te *senatu*,” *I expel you from the senate*”).

Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an *Abl. of Separation* in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.

17. *Of Origin*, after *natus, ortus, genitus, satus, cretus*.

5. THE GENITIVE.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called *Subjective*; the latter, *Objective*.

Thus “*injuriae Æduorum*” may mean (i.) “wrongs inflicted by the Ædui” (i.e. “the Ædui wronged some one”), a *Subjective Genitive*; but it may mean (ii.) “wrongs inflicted on the Ædui” (i.e. “some one wronged the Ædui”), an *Objective Genitive*.

¹ The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives *contentus, fretus, onustus*, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.

(i.) THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Par. 281—292).

1. *The Possessive Genitive.*

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of, &c.*

2. *The Descriptive or Adjectival Genitive*; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun's light*), *a pine forest*, &c. So in Latin: "*lauri nemus*," *a laurel grove*;" *nomen regis*," *the name of king* (or *the royal name*); *virtus constantiae*, *the virtue of constancy*.

3. *Of the charge*, after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as *crimine*, *nomine*, *causa*, &c.: see Par. 290.

4. *Of Quality* (Par. 282), *Value*, or *Indefinite Price* (Par. 283).5. *The Partitive Genitive* (Par. 91).

*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: "*secreta silvarum*," *the secret place of the woods*.

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty* and *want* (285).¹

(ii.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

8. *Governed by a Noun.*

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: *auri fames*, *hunger for gold*; *militiae vacatio*, *exemption from military service*; *remedium irae*, *remedy against anger*; *incitamenta periculi*, *incitements to peril*; *quies laborum*, *rest from evils*. (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: *obsequium coelibis*,

¹ This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.

respect to a bachelor; praestantia animarum reliquarum, superiority to other souls.)

9. With *Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns* (Par. 288).

10. With *Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire* (Par. 287).

11. With *Impersonal Verbs* (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. With *Verbs of remembering and forgetting*: Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called *the Locative Case in -i*, is used in the Second Declension to represent *Place Where*, of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

6. ALL CASES.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) *Connection*, i.e. through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, e.g. *quam, vel, et*; or by (2) *Apposition*.

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed.

The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *viâ-voce*; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

“Rogāvērant cives ut urbs, incendio fērē dēlēta, a nostris restituerētur.”

ACCIDENCE.

SYNTAX.

Verb ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voice.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.	Agrees with what Nom.? Has what Object? Principal? or how de- pendent? ¹
Noun or Pro- noun.	Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Person.]	—	—	Why that Case?
Adjective ...	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Comp. Superl.]	—	—	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Participle ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voice.	Tense.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Preposition ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?
Adverb ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies what Verb?
Conjunction ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins what?

¹ (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (3) it may be (a) Principal, or (b) Coordinate, or (c) Subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.

"Rogaverant." <i>Verb.</i>	rogo	-ere 1st	-avi	-atum	Act.	Indic.	Pluperf.	Pl.	3rd	Agrees with Nom. "cives," has for its Obj. the sentence "ut urbs ... restitue- retur."
"Cives." <i>Noun.</i>	civis	civis	3rd	Masc.	Pl.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "rogave- rant."
"Ut." <i>Conjunction.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins "rogaverant" with "restituatur."
"Urbs." <i>Noun.</i>	urbs	urbis	3rd	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "resti- tuatur."
"Incendio." <i>Noun.</i>	incendium	-i	2nd	Neut.	Sing.	Abl.	—	—	—	Abl. of Instrument.
"fere." <i>Adverb.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies "deleta."
"deleta." <i>Participle.</i>	deleo	-ere 2nd	-avi	-atum	Passive	Perf.	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	Agrees with "urbs."
"a." <i>Preposition.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs the Abl. "nos- tris (hominibus)."
"nostri." <i>Pronoun Adj.</i>	noster, -ra, -rum	nostri, -ae, -i	2nd	Masc.	Pl.	Abl.	no Compar.	no Superl.	—	Agrees with "homi- nibus," understood, which is Abl. of the Agent, governed by "a."
"restituatur." <i>Verb.</i>	restitu	-ere 3rd	-it	-atum	Pass.	Subj.	Imperf.	Sing.	3rd	(1) Agrees with its Nom. "urbs"; (2) Subor- dinate to "rogave- rant," Subjunctive after "ut." Rule. Verbs signifying ask, command, &c., take "ut" with the Subjunctive.

APPENDIX V.

LATIN GENDERS.

Fem. Nouns are in black type; Neut., in CAPITALS; Masculine in ordinary type; (f. means sometimes fem.; m., sometimes masc.).

I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

FEMININE.¹

SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us. Neuter endings -UM.

Exceptions { **alvus, cōlus** (m.), **dōmus, hūmus, vannus**;
arctus,† **ātōmus,†** **carbāsus,†** **diālectus,†**
phārus,† **pēlāgus,†** **vīrus, vulgus.**

THIRD DECLENSION.

Masculine Terminations.

-er, -or, -os.

-es *increasing in the Genitive.*

-o (*when not -do, -go, -io*).

Principal Exceptions.

-er]	linter	CĀDĀVER
	ĪTER	PĀPĀVER ²
	ŪBER	VĒR
	VERBER	
-or]	arbor	ÆQUOR
	CŪR	MARMOR
-os]	cōs	dōs
	ŌS	ŌS
	CHAOST†	ĒPOST†
-es]	compēs	mercēs
	mergēs	quīēs
	rēquīēs	sēgēs
	tēgēs	ÆS
-o]	cāro	ēcho†

¹ Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names, such as Scythia, *a Scythian*, poeta, *a poet* &c.; for which see "Genders by Meaning" below. Add also the Greek-derived words cōmēta *m.*, and plānēta *m.*

² Also some other names of vegetable products, as ĀCER, CĪCER, PĪPER, SĪLER, SĪSER, TŪBER, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

Feminine Terminations.

- do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, x.
 -es, not increasing in the Genitive.
 -s, preceded by a consonant.
 -ūs (long) in words of more than one syllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-do]	cardo	cupīdo (f.)	ordo	
-go]	harpāgo	līgo	margo	
-io]	concrete nouns, such as pāpilio.			
	pūgio	ūnio		
-as]	as	ēlēphās†	vās	
	vās	fās	nēfās	
-is]	amnis	anguis	axis	cassis (-is)
	caulis	cīnis	collis	clūnis
	crīnis	cūcūmis	ensis	fascis
	fīnis (f.)	foliis	fūnis	fustis
	ignis	lāpis	mensis	orbis
	pānis	piscis	postis	pulvis
	sanguis	torris	unguis	vectis
	vermis			
-x]	āpex	cūlex	cōdex	cortex (f.)
	frūtex	grex	lātex	mūrex
	pollex	silex (f.)	thōrax	vertex
-es]	ācīnācēs			
ns, -ps, &c.]	bīdens (f.)	dens	fons	hydrops
	mons	pons	rūdens (f.)	

Neuter Terminations.

- C, -A, -T, -E, -L, -N.
 -AR, -UR, -ŪS (short).
 -ŪS (long) in monosyllable.

Principal Exceptions.

-L]	sāl	sōl
-N]	līēn	pectēn
	rēn	splēn
-UR]	fūr	furfūr
	turtūr	vultūr
-ŪS]	lēpūs	pēcūs (udis)
-ŪS]	grūs m.)	sūs (m.)
	mūs	

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

MASCULINE.

Except ācus, īdus (pl.), mānus, portīcus, trībus.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

FEMININE.

Except diēs (*f. in Poets*), mērīdiēs.

II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

A.—MASCULINE.

Names of (1) men, (2) men's occupations, (3) months, (4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples.¹ The exceptions arise from the terminations, such as :—

- Exceptions { (5) **Aetna, Hybla, Īda; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhōdōpē; Alpēs** (pl.); **PĒLĪON** and *Plurals implying ranges* (JŪGA) such as GARGĀRĀ, ISMĀRĀ, &c.; SŌRACTĒ.
(6) **Allia**, and others in -ā, **Lēthē, Styx**.

B.—FEMININE.

Names of (1) women, (2) plants, (3) countries, (4) islands, (5) cities.²

- Exceptions { (2) *Nouns of Decl. 2, in -us and -er, e.g. ācanthus, ōleaster; Nouns in -um, e.g. āPIUM; Nouns of 3rd Decl. in -er, e.g. āCER, CĪCER, PĀPĀVER, PĪPER, SĪLER, SĪSER, and SŪBER; also RŌBUR and TŪS.*
The following are common: bālānus, cŷtīsus, lōtus, rūbus, spīnus.
(3) *Masc. Decl. 2, Pontus; Neut. Nouns. in -um.*
(5) *Masc. (a) all Plurals in -ī, e.g. Cōrīōlī; also (b) Cānōpus and Orchōmēnus; (c) Nouns in -as, -ant, e.g. Acrāgas, -antis; (d) several in -o, -on, e.g. Hippo, -ōnis; (e) a few in -us, -unt, e.g. Pessīnus, -untis. Neut. (a) Nouns in -um, -on, -A (pl.) of Decl. 2; (b) most in -e, -ur, -os of Decl. 3.*

¹ These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and, (2) hōmo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) flūviūs, (7) lōpūlus.

² These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) mūlier, (2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insūla, (5) urbs.

APPENDIX VI.

RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH
FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the *Nones*, i.e. the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the *Ides*, i.e. the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the *Kalends*, i.e. the first day of the next month.

The Latin terms are—

(1) *Nōnae*, -ārum (f.), i.e. nine days before the *Ides*.¹

(2) *Idūs*, -ūum (f.), i.e. the dividing days of the month, falling about the middle.²

(3) *Kālendae*, -ārum (f.), i.e. the calling days (Old Latin *calāre*, *proclaim*), the day when the order of the days of the month was proclaimed to the people, the first day.

There is in every month an interval of 8 days between the *Nones* and the *Ides*. The *Nones* are on the 5th, and the *Ides* on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the *Nones* are on the 7th and the *Ides* on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:—

“In March, July, October, May,
The *Nones* are on the seventh day.”

I. When the day falls between the first and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and the *Ides*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) Add one to the *Nones* or *Ides* and subtract the day.

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the *Nones* of March; $7 + 1 = 8$. subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written “*antē diem quartum Nōnas Martias*.”³

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the *Ides* of April; $13 + 1 = 14$: subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written “*antē diem tertium Idus Apriles*.”³

II. When the day falls after the *Ides*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the *Kalends* of next month.

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the *Kalends* of February: and this is written thus “*ante diem tertium dēcimum Kāendas Februārias*.”³

III. If the day is (a) on, or (b) the day before, the *Nones*, *Ides* or *Kalends*, it is expressed by (a) the Abl., or (b) *Prīdiē*, followed by the Acc.: (a) 7th of May, “*Nōnis Maiis*”; (b) 12th of June, “*Prīdiē Idus Jūnias*”; 30th of June, “*Prīdiē Kāendas Quintiles*”; 4th of August, “*Prīdiē Nōnas Sextiles*.”

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, (“*antē diem*—*Kāendas*, *Nōnas*, *Idus*) *Jānuārias*, *Februārias*, *Martias*, *Apriles*, *Maias*, *Jūnias*, *Quintiles*, *Sextiles*, *Septembres*, *Octōbres*, *Nōvembres*, *Dēcembres*.”

¹ We should say “eight days before”: but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

² This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word *iduāre*, divide: but more probably from Sanscr. *indh-*, *idh-*, kindle, enlighten, (*indu*, moon) from being the days of light, the days of the full moon.

³ A rarer form is “*tertio*, *quarto*, *tertio dēcimo die antē*,” &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.

APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY
OF SYLLABLES*As a Guide to Pronunciation.*

I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (**aēs**, *brass*) and contracted syllables (**quīs** for **quībus**) are long.

2. A vowel before another vowel (**moněo**) is short.

3. A vowel naturally short (*e.g.* the **a** in **cāno**, *I sing*), when placed before two consonants (*e.g.* in **cantus**, *song*), is said to be *long by position*, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is *pronounced* in the same way as the **a** in **cano**, so that *length by position does not affect pronunciation*.

II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final **-ā** is *long*; exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also **itā**, **quīā**.¹

2. Final **-ě** is *short*; exceptions: (1) Adverbs in **-ē** derived from Adj. in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, as **maximē**, (save **běně**, **mālě**, **súperně**); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj.; (4) **nē**, **mē**, **tē**, **sē**.

3. Final **-ī** is *long*; but **-i** is mostly *short* in **mīhī**, **tībī**, **ūbī**, **ībī**, **sībī**, always in **nīsī**.

4. Final **-ō** is *long*; but mostly *short* in **ěgō**, **mōdō** (adv.) *only*.

5. Final **-ū** is *long*.

6. A vowel before **-c** is *long*; exceptions, **nēc**, **dōnēc**, **fāc**.

7. A vowel is *short* before final **-b**, **-d**, **-l**, **-n**, **-r**, and **t**.²

¹ None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.

² The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short **ō** in **mōneō** determines the quantity in **admōneō**, **commōneō**, **mōnītus**, **-us**, **mōnitor**, **-ōris**, **monumentum**, **-ī**, &c.: exceptions, **dūcis**, of a leader, **dūco**, *I lead*; **sēdēs**, a seat; **sēdeo**, *I sit*.

8. **-ās** and **-ēs** are *long*: but nouns in **-es**, increasing the Genit., are short, *e.g.* **mīlēs**, **mīlītis**; and **ēs** (*thou art*) is *short*, both in **sum** and in its compounds.

9. **-īs** is *short*: exceptions (a) Plural Cases, *e.g.* **insūlis**, **dōmīnis**, **nōbīs**; (b) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth Conj., **audis**; (c) **sīs** (Pres. Subj. of **sum**) and **vīs** (Pres. Indic. of **vōlo**), and their compounds, as well as **velis**, **mālīs**, **nōlīs**; (d) **vīs**, *violence*.

10. **-ōs** is *long*: exception, **ōs** (Gen. **ossis**).

11. **-ūs** is *short*: exceptions; (a) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and Acc. Pl., of Fourth Decl.; (b) nouns in **-us** which increase in the Gen. with a long penult, **virtūs**, **-ūtis**.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the commonest monosyllables are short; **ōb**, **sūb**, **ād**, **āt**, **ēt**, **īd**, **īn**, **ān**, **vēl**, **pēr**, **tēr**, **vīr**; also **īs**, and **quīs**.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) **-quē**, **-vē**, and **-nē**? are short, **nē** *lest* is long, and so are the pronouns **mē**, **tē**, **se**. Also **cūr**? *why*? is long.

APPENDIX VIII.

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

- Ablative** (Case) [L. *ab*, "from;" *latus*, "carried"]. The Case denoting, among other things, *ablation*, or *carrying away from* (8, 273).
- Absolute** (Construction) [L. *ab*, "from;" *solut*-, "loosed"]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, *i.e.* *loosed from*, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).
- Abstract** (Noun) [L. *abs*, "from;" *tract*-, "drawn"]. The name of an *abstraction*, *i.e.* of something considered by itself, apart from (*drawn away from*) the circumstances in which it exists.
- Accent** [L. *ad*, "to;" *cantus*, "song"]. Perhaps originally a *sing-song*, or modulation of the voice, added to a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.
- Accidence** [L. *accident*-, "befall"]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, "frequentissime in verbo quia plurima huic *accidunt*."
- Accusative** (Case). 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflection. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an *accused* person with the prosecutor.
- Active** (Voice). The form of a Verb that usually denotes *acting* or *doing*.
- Adjective** [L. *ad*, "to;" *jact*-, "cast or put"]. A word *put to* a Noun.
- Adverb** [L. *ad*, "to;" *verb*-, "word" or "Verb"]. A word generally joined *to* a Verb.
- Adversative** [L. *adversus*, "opposite"]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like "but") express *opposition*.
- Affix** [L. *ad*, "to;" *fix*-, "fixed"]. A syllable or letter *fixed* to the end of a word.
- Agreement**. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or *agree* with one another.
- Alphabet** [Gr. *alpha*, *beta*; "a," "b"]. The list of letters, so called from the names

of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. *a-*, "not;" *acolouthon*, "following"]. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or *following*.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning "unevenness," "irregularity."

Antecedent [L. *ante*, "before;" *cedent-*, "going"]. (a) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must *go before* its consequence. (b) Also used for the Noun that *goes before* a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodosis [Gr. *apo-dosis*, "a paying back"]. A Greek name for the "Consequent," or "Then-Clause," in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of *debt*, to be *paid* in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. *appella*, "call to"]. A name for the *Vocative* or *calling* use of a noun.

Apposition [L. *ad*, "near;" *posit-*, "placed"]. The *placing* of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek "not bound together."] The placing of words together without a Conjunction: see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. *attribut-*, "assigned"]. An Adj. *assigned* to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. *cardin-*, "hinge"]. That on which

anything *hinges* or turns: hence, "important." A name given to those more *important* forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. *casus*, "falling"]. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as "*erect*," and the other forms as more or less *falling* away from it. Hence "*oblique*," "*decline*," &c.

Clause [L. *claus-*, "enclosed"]. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. *co-*, "together;" (*g*)*nat-* "born"]. The name given to an object that denotes something *akin* to (*born together* with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is *common* to a class and not *peculiar* or *proper* to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is *compared*.

Complementary [L. *comple-* "fill up"]. That which completes, or *fills up*.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be *complete*.

Complex (Sentence) [L. *con-* "together;" *plic-*, "fold"]. A sentence that is *folded together*, or involved by con-

- taining one or more Subordinate sentences.
- Compound (Sentence) [L. *con*, or *com*, "together;" *pon*-, "place"]. A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences *placed together*.
- Concord. The name given to syntactical *agreement* between words, e.g. between Verb and Subject.
- Conjugation [*con*, "together;" *jungatio*, "joining"]. A number of Verbs *joined* together in one class.¹
- Conjunction [L. *con*, "together;" *junct*-, "joined"]. A word that *joins together* two sentences expressed or implied.
- Consequent. The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the *consequence* of the fulfilment of a *condition*. See *Antecedent*.
- Consecutive. The name sometimes given to a clause introduced by "ut" *so that*, expressing *result*, or *consequence*, of an *action*.
- Consonant [L. *con*, "together;" *sonant*-, "sounding"]. Letters (such as *p*) that can only be *sounded together with* a vowel.
- Coordinate [L. *co*-, "with;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. The name given to a Sentence that *ranks with* the Principal Sentence (334a): see Note following the Glossary.
- Correlatives. Words that are *related together* or mutually related, e.g., "either," "or;" "both," "and;" "when," "then."
- Dative [L. *dativus*,² "that which has arisen from giving"]. The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of *giving*, &c. (192)
- Declension. The bending or *declension* of the Oblique (see *Oblique* below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as "erect."
- Defective (Verbs) [L. *deficio*, "I fail"]. Verbs that are *deficient* in some of their forms: see p. 215.
- Degree (of comparison) [L. *gradus*, Fr. *degré*, "step"]. The forms expressing the *steps* or *degrees* in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.
- Dependent (Sentence). Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to *Subordinate* sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).
- Deponent (Verbs) [L. *deponens*, "laying aside"]. Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while *laying aside* Active forms: Par. 199.
- Diæresis [Gr. *diæresis*, "separation"]. The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

¹ Hence to *conjugate* a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or *conjugation*. But the Romans used *decline* and not *conjugate* in this sense (Madvig).

² Termination *-ivus* in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes that which has arisen from, e.g. "captivus," that which has arisen from "capture."

- pronounced *separately*, e.g. in "aërial."
- Diphthong [Gr. *di*, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]. Two vowel sounds pronounced as one.
- Direct (Object). The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the *direct object* of the action of a Verb.
- Ellipsis [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]. The *omission* of words (said to be "understood" i.e. implied) in a Sentence.
- Enclitics [Gr. "lean on"]. Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, e.g. -quē, -vē, -nē.
- Epithet [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]. An Adjective *placed* to a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.
- Final [L. *finis*, "end"]. A *final* clause expresses an *end* or *purpose*; and "ut" *final* ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).
- Finite (Verb). A name given to those parts of the Verb which are *defined* by Number and Person, as distinct from the *Infinitive* or *Infinite*.
- Frequentative (Verb). A Verb that expresses a *frequently* repeated action, e.g. "ventito," *I often come*.
- Gender [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]. Forms to denote *classification* according to sex.
- Genitive (Case) [L. *genitiv*-, "generating"]. The Case denoting *generation*, *origination*, *possession* (282).¹
- Gerund [L. *gero*, "I carry on"]. Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The *Gerundive* is Adjectival, the *Gerund* is a Noun (163, 170, 251).
- Gutturals [L. *guttur*, "throat"]. Throat letters, *k*, and hard *g*.
- Historic Infinitive. The Infinitive used for the Indicative, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical* narrative: see Par. 320.
- Idiom [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiarity"]. A mode of expression *peculiar* to a language.
- Imperative (Mood). [L. *impera*-, "command"]. The *commanding* Mood (129).
- Impersonal (Verbs). Verbs not used with a *Personal* Subject: see Par. 219.
- Indicative (Mood). [L. *indica*-, "point out"]. The Mood that *points out* or *indicates* an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.
- Indirect (Object). The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).
- Infinitive (Mood) [L. *in*, "not;" *finit*-, "limited"]. A Mood *not limited* by any definition of Person or Number.
- Inflection. [L. *inflecto*, "I

¹ The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic* case i.e. the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What *class* of life?" "Man's life."

- bend"]. The *bending* of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See *Oblique*.
- Interjection [L. *inter-ject*-, "thrown between"]. An utterance *thrown in between* words, to express emotion.
- Intransitive (Verb). [L. *in*-, "not"; *transitiv*-, "passing across"]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to *pass across* to any Object.
- Labials [L. *labium*-, "lip"].
Lip-letters: *f*, *v*, *p*, *b*, *m*, *hw* and *w*.
- Linguals [Latin *lingua*-, "the tongue"]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *tongue*: *sh*, *s* in *pleasure*.
- Locative (Case) [L. *locus*-, "place"]. A case expressing *place* (Par. 265).
- Liquids. Letters of a flowing, *liquid* sound, as *l*, *r*.
- Monosyllable [Gr. *mono*-, "only"]. A word of *only one* syllable.
- Mood [L. *mod*-, "manner"]. The form of a Verb expressing the *manner* of action.
- Mutes [L. *mut*-, "dumb"]. Letters that are *dumb* without the aid of a vowel: *k*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*.
- Nasal [L. *nas*-, "nose"]. Consonants sounded through the *nose*; *n*, *m*.
- Neuter (Gender). [L. *neuter*-, "neither"]. That Gender which is *neither* Masc. nor Feminine.
- Nominative (Case) [L. *nomina*-, "to name"]. A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing *named*.
- Noun [L. *nomen*-, Fr. *nom*-, "name"]. The *name* of anything.
- Object. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the *object* or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions.
- Oblique (Case). A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as *erect*, and all the other forms as *fallings* or *oblique* deviations from the Subjective.
- Oblique (Speech). Speech reported, not *directly* in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but *indirectly* or *obliquely* in the Third Person.
- Ordinal (Adjective) [L. *ordin*-, "order"]. An Adjective, that answers to the question "in what *order*."
- Palatals. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *palate*: *ch*, *j*.
- Participle [L. *particip*-, "participating"]. A form of a Verb *participating* in a Verb and an Adjective.
- Particle. A "little part": a name given to the four undeclined "*parts* of speech," Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition.
- Partitive (Genitive). A Genitive implying *partition* (91).
- Passive (Voice). A form of the Verb expressing *passiveness* rather than *activeness*.
- Perfect (Tense) [L. *perfect*-, "complete"]. The Name

- for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.
- Period [Gr. *peri*, "round" ; *od-*, "path"]. (1) The full, rounded path of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.
- Person [L. *per*, "through" ; *son-*, "sound" ; hence, *persona* "a mask through which an actor sounds ;" "an actor's part in a play"]. The part played in conversation, (1) speaking ; (2) spoken to ; (3) spoken of.
- Phrase [Gr. *phrasis*, a "saying"]. A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.
- Pluperfect (Tense) [L. *plu-*, "more ;" *perfect-*, "complete"]. A more than complete Tense. The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).
- Plural (Number) [L. *plu-*, "more"]. The form denoting more than one.
- Polysyllable [Gr. *poly*, "many"]. A word of many syllables.
- Positive. The simple form of an Adjective ; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but positively.
- Possessive [L. *possess-*, "possessed"]. The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting possession.
- Predicate [L. "*praedica-*," "proclaim," "state"]. A word or group of words making a statement about a Subject.
- Prefix [L. *prae*, "before ;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A letter, syllable, or word fixed before another word.
- Preposition [L. *prae*, "before ;" *posit-*, "placed"]. A Word (not a Verb) generally placed before a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.
- Pronoun [L. *pro*, "for ;" L. *nomen*, "noun"]. A word used for a Noun.
- Proper (Noun). [L. *propri-*, F. *propre* ; "peculiar"]. A name that is peculiar or proper to the individual, not common to a class.
- Prose [L. *prosa*, for *prorsa*, for *pro-versa*,¹ i.e. "turned forward"]. Writing that does not turn like verses but runs straight on. Hence, the straightforward arrangement of prose.
- Prosody [Gr. *prosodia*, a "song"]. Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.
- Protasis [Gr. *pro*, "before ;" *tasis*, "stretching"]. Literally, stretching before. Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See *Apodosis*.
- Punctuation [L. *punctum*, "point"]. Dividing a sentence by means of points representing the pauses.
- Quantity. The quantity of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

¹ Compare our *é'er*, *o'er* for *ever*, *over*.

- Reduplication.** The *reduplicating* or *redoubling* of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, e.g. "tendo," "te-tendi."
- Reflexive (Pronoun)** [*reflexus*, "bent back"]. A Pronoun which is as it were *bent back* on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.
- Relative (Pronoun)** [L. *re*, "back;" *lat*-, "carried"]. A name given to *qui*, *quae*, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to *carry one back* to the Antecedent.
- Root.** A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a *root* to branches.
- Sentence** [L. *Sententia*, a "meaning"]. A group of words of *meaning* so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.
- Sibilant L.** [*sibila*-, hiss]. *Hissing* letters: *s*, *z*, *sh*.
- Stem.** That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.
- N.B.**—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, e.g. the "o" which is part of the True Stem of "dominus" is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of "dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-." This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)
- Subject** [L. *subject*-, "placed under"]. That which is *placed under* one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).
- Subjunctive (Mood)** [L. *subjunct*-, "subjoined"]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., *subjoined* to some statement, question, or answer.
- Subordinate (Sentence)** [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. See Note p. 239.
- Substantive (Noun)** [L. *substantia*, "substance"]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the *substance* or *ground standing beneath* the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the *Substantive Verb*, "to be."
- Suffix** [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *fix*-, "fixed"]. Same as *Affix*.
- Supine.** A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most *supine* of all the parts of the Verb: see Par. 246, 247.
- Superlative (degree)** [L. *super*, "above;" *lat*-, "carried"]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree *carried above* other degrees.
- Syllable** [Gr. *syn*, "together;" *lab*-, "take"]. A group of letters *taken together* so as to form one sound.
- Syntax** [Gr. *syn*, "together;"

taxis, "arranging"]. The arrangement of words together in a sentence.

Temporal (Clause) [L. *tempus*, "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of *time*.

Tense [L. *tempus*, Fr. *temps*, "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the *time* of an action.

Transitive [L. *trans*, "across; it-, "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called

because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or *going across* to the Object.

Verb [L. *verb-*, "word"]. The chief *word* in a sentence.

Vocative [L. *voca-*, "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is *called to*.

Vowels [L. *vocalis*, "having voice"]. The letters that *have a voice* or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: *a, e, i, o, u*.

NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.¹

(1) (**Noun**) { (a) (Subject.) "WHEN *he-will-come* is uncertain."
(b) (Object.) "I say THAT *he-will-come*."

(2) (**Adjective**.) "The battle *that-was-fought at Cannæ* was gained by Hannibal."

(3) (**Adverb**.) (a) (When?) "WHEN *he-had-heard-this* he departed"; (b) (Why?) "I will strive THAT *you-may-succeed*"; (c) (How?) "He behaved so gently THAT *he-surprised-everybody*"; (d) (Where?) "WHERE *the-Turk's-horse-goes*, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334a.

¹ A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.

APPENDIX IX.

VOCABULARIES.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>adj.</i>	= adjective
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb
<i>c.</i>	= common gender
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction
<i>f.</i>	= feminine
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive
<i>indecl.</i>	= indeclinable
<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative

<i>m.</i>	= masculine
<i>n.</i>	= neuter
<i>pl.</i>	= plural
<i>prep.</i>	= preposition
<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun
<i>sing.</i>	= singular
<i>v.</i>	= verb

EXERCISE I.

ăqua, f. water
ăquīla, f. eagle
filīa, f. daughter
insūla, f. island
nauta, m. sailor
pēcūniā, f. money
pūella, f. girl
rēgīna, f. queen

violentiā, f. violence
ămat, v. loves
dăt, v. gives
lăvat, v. washes
liberat, v. frees, delivers
monstrat, v. points out, shews
sūperat, v. overcomes
vōrat, v. devours
et . . . et, conj. both . . . and

EXERCISES II.—VI.

constantia, f. constancy
culpa, f. blame, fault
dextra, f. right hand
expērientiā, f. experience
fēmīna, f. woman
intempērantīa, f. intemperance
ira, f. anger
pātientiā, f. patience
patriā, -ae, f. native land
prōcella, f. storm
prūdentiā, f. prudence
săpientiā, f. wisdom
stella, f. star

EXERCISE VII.

dōmīnus, m. lord, owner
ēquus, m. horse
filiūs, m. son
flūvīus, m. river
glădius, m. sword
hortus, m. garden
măgister, m. master (mostly teacher)
mīna, f. threat
mīnister, m. serrant, attendant
servus, m. slave
hăbet, v. has
tīmet, v. fears
terret, v. terrifies, frightens

EXERCISES VIII.—XI.

āger, *m. field*
 agrīcōla, *m. husbandman*
 āper, *m. boar*
 arbiter, *m. umpire*
 Auster, *m. south wind*
 cancer, *m. crab*
 cāper, *m. goat*
 cōlūber, *m. snake*
 culter, *m. knife*
 fāber, *m. artificer, workman*
 gēner, *m. son-in-law*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 invidīa, -ae, *f. envy*
 liber, *m. book*
 Liber, *m. Liber, the god of wine*
 libēri, *m. pl. children*
 pūer, *m. boy*
 sōcer, *m. father-in-law*
 vesper, *m. evening*
 vīr, *m. man, hero*
 culpat, *v. blames*
 laudat, *v. praises*
 nēque, or nēc, *conj. and not,*
 neither
 nōn, *adv. not*
 ā (āb *before vowels or h*), *prep.*
 by
 sūpērantur, terrentur, *see p. 11*

EXERCISE XII.

argentum, *n. silver*
 arvum, *n. cornfield*
 aurum, *n. gold*
 diligētia, *f. diligence*
 dēnum, *n. gift*
 mūrus, *m. wall*
 Neptūnus, *m. Neptune*
 oppidum, *n. town*
 porta, -ae, *f. gate*
 praeмиūm, *n. reward*
 terra, *f. land*
 templum, *n. temple*
 dēlectat, *v. delights, charms*

EXERCISE XIII.

aurīga, *m. charioteer*
 bōnus, -a, -um, *good*
 dīrus, -a, -um, *terrible*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 ēpistūla, -ae, *f. letter*
 impāvidus, -a, -um, *fearless*
 imprōbus, -a, -um, *dishonest*
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jussum, *n. command*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
 parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*
 pāvīdus, -a, -um, *fearful*
 pēlāgus, *n. sea*
 pēricūlum, *n. danger*
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest*
 scriba, *m. scribe, clerk*
 splendīdus, -a, -um, *splendid*
 strēnūus, -a, -um, *vigorous*
 tīmīdus, -a, -um, *timid*
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
 vīa, *f. way*

EXERCISES XIV. AND XV.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ailing*
 āla, *f. wing*
 albus, -a, -um, *white*
 altus, -a, -um, *high, tall*
 Brītanīia, *f. Britain*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 impīger, -gra, -grum, *active*
 incōla, *m. inhabitant*
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad*
 mācer, -era, -erum, *lean*
 mīser, -era, -erum, *wretched*
 morbus, *m. disease*
 nīger, -gra, -grum, *black*
 pīger, -gra, -grum, *sllothful*
 pōeta, -ae, *m. poet* [perous
 prosper, -era, -pērum, *pros-*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-*
 ful
 rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*
 sācer, -era, -erum, *sacred*

stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*
 vāfer, -fra, -frum, *cunning*
 vālidus, -a, -um, *strong*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 est, *v. (he) is ; (there) is*
 sunt, *v. (they) are ; (there) are*

EXERCISE XVI.

ācūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*
 aestās, aestatis, *f. summer*
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
 bellum, -i, *n. war*
 clārus, -a, -um, *renowned*
 cōmēs, cōmitis, *m. companion*
 dignus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*
 dux, dūcis, *m. leader*
 ēquēs, ēquitis, *m. horse-soldier*
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*
 ignāvia, -ae, *f. sloth, cowardice*
 impērātor, -ōris, *m. general*
 indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*
 ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing*
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 jūdex, jūdīcis, *m. judge*
 lāpis, -īdis, *m. stone*
 lēx, lēgis, *f. law*
 mālus, -a, -um, *bad*
 mēmōria, *f. memory, recollection*
 milēs, militis, *m. soldier*
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
 nox, noctis, *f. night*
 obscurus, -a, -um, *dark*
 pēdēs, pēditis, *m. foot-soldier*
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*
 rēx, rēgis, *m. king*
 sīnister, -tra, -trum, *left*
 spīna, -ae, *f. thorn*
 verbum, -i, *n. word*
 dēlectat, *v. (he) delights*
 laedit, *v. hurts*

EXERCISE XVII.

annus, -i, *m. year*
 ēlēphās, elephantis, *m. elephant*
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage*
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*
 hiemps, hiēmis, *f. winter*
 hōmo, hōmīnis, *m. human being*
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
 lēo, lēōnis, *m. lion*
 longitūdo, -tūdīnis, *f. length*
 longus, -a, -um, *long*
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 multitūdo, -tūdīnis, *f. multitude*
 multus, -a, -um, *many, much*
 pāpīlīo, pāpīlōnis, *m. butterfly*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 princeps, principis, *m. chief*
 terra, -ae, *f. land*
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 virgo, virginis, *f. maiden*
 vivit, -unt, *v. (he) lives, (they) live*

EXERCISE XVIII.

āmīcus, -i, *m. friend*
 āmor, āmoris, *m. love*
 anser, ansēris, *m. goose*
 arbor, arbōris, *f. tree*
 causa, -ae, *f. cause*
 cīnis, cīnēris, *m. ashes*
 clāmōr, clāmōris, *m. clamour*
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, renowned*
 cōlor, cōlōris, *m. colour*
 consul, consūlis, *m. consul*
 flōs, flōris, *m. flower*
 frāter, -tris, *m. brother*
 frīgīdus, -a, -um, *cold* [*able*
 injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagree-*
 jussum, -i, *n. command*
 māter, mātīs, *f. mother*
 ōcūlus, -i, *m. eye*
 pāter, patris, *m. father*
 paucus, -a, -um, *(mostly pl.) few*
 sēpulcrum, -i, *n. sepulchre*
 tīmor, timōris, *m. fear*
 vōx, vōcis, *f. voice*

EXERCISE XIX.

căput, căpîtis, *n. head*
 carinen, carmînis, *n. poem, song*
 cîbus, -i, *m. food*
 corpus, corpôris, *n. body*
 Dêus, -i, *m. God*
 doctrîna, -ae, *f. learning*
 factum, -i, *n. deed*
 frûtex, frûtîcis, *m. shrub*
 fulmen, fulmînis, *n. lightning*
 (that strikes)
 jûs, jûris, *n. right or law*
 longus, -a, -um, *long* [*chant*]
 mercător, mercătôris, *m. mer-*
 nomen, nômînis, *n. name*
 mens, mentis, *f. mind, under-*
 standing
 ôpus, ôpêris, *n. work*
 pōeta, -ae, *m. poet*
 scêlus, scêlêris, *n. crime*
 sîdus, sîdêris, *n. star*
 verber, verbêris, *n. lash, stripe*
 -quê, *conj. and*
 êrat, *v. (he) was; there (was)*
 êrant, *v. (they) were; (there) were*

EXERCISE XX.

ănîmal, ănîmălis, *n. animal*
 ăvidus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 aurêus, -a, -um, *golden*
 Britannus, -i, *m. adj. used as*
 noun, a Briton
 calcar, calcăris, *n. spur*
 certămen, certămînis, *n. contest,*
 strife
 cîvis, cîvis, *m. citizen*
 cîvitas, cîvîtătis, *f. state,*
 country, citizenship
 crêber, -bra, -brum, *repeated,*
 frequent
 dêcus, dêcôris, *n. honour*
 exîtiûm, -i, *n. destruction*
 ferrum, -i, *n. iron, sword* [*rage*]
 fûror, fûrôris, *m. madness,*

gens, gentis, f. nation
gênus, gēneris, n. kind, race
hostis, hostis, m. enemy; oft.
 pl. in Lat. where Eng. is
 sing.; hostiûm castra, the
 camp of the enemy
ignăvus, -a, -um, slothful
ignis, ignis, abl., -i, m. fire
imber, imbris, abl., -i, m. shower
măre, măris, n. sea
năvis, năvis, f. ship
notûs, -a, -um, known
nûbês, nûbis, f. cloud
ôs, ôris, n. mouth, countenance
ôs, ossis, n. bone
pastor, pastôris, m. shepherd
răpidus, -a, -um, rapid
rôbur, robôris, n. strength
saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
tempestăs, -tătis, f. tempest
tôtus, -a, -um, whole
urbs, urbis, f. city
nêque . . nêque, conj. neither
 . . . nor
saepê, adv. often
consumit, v. (he) consumes

EXERCISE XXI.

ăcer, *m. âcris, f. âcre, n. keen*
 ănîmus, -i, *m. mind*
 audăx, *gen. audăcis, bold*
 cêlêr, *m. cêlêris, f. celêrê, n.*
 swift
 consîliûm, -i, *n. plan* [*gent*]
 dilîgens, *gen. dilîgentis, dili-*
 divês, *gen. divîtis, rich*
 dulcis, *m. & f. dulce, n. sweet*
 êquester, *m. -tris, f. -tre, n.*
 equestrian
 fêrăx, *gen. ferăcis, fruitful*
 fêlix, *gen. felîcis, happy*
 fortis, *m. & f., forte, n. brave*
 infelix, *gen. infelîcis, unhappy*
 insignis, *m. & f. insigne, n.*
 distinguished, illustrious

lābor, lābōris, *m. labour*
 laetitia, -ae, *f. joy*
 laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*
 mēlior, *m. & f. mēlius, n. better*
 mors, mortis, *f. death*
 prūdēns, *gen. prūdētis, prudent*
 sālūber, *m. -bris, f. -bre, n. healthful*

sāpiēns, *gen. sāpiētis, wise*
 sēditiō, sēditiōnis, *f. sedition*
 tergum, -i, *n. back*
 tristis, *m. & f. triste, n. sad*
 tristior, *m. & f. tristius, n. sadder*
 verber, -ēris, *n. lash, stripe*
 vestis, -is, *f. garment*
 vīta, -ae, *f. life*

EXERCISE XXII.

ālmus, -a, -um, *loving*
 ātrōx, *gen. ātrōcis, stern, gloomy*
 āter, -tra, -trum, *dark, black*
 bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*
 brēvis, *m. & f. brēve, n. short*
 cōhors, cōhortis, *f. a cohort, the tenth part of a Roman legion*
 fāma, -ae, *f. reputation, fame*
 fēritās, fēritātis, *f. savageness*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 infirmus, -a, -um, *weak*
 inhōnestus, -a, -um, *dishonourable*
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
 omnis, *m. & f. omne, n. all, the whole*
 poenitentia, -ae, *f. penitence*
 prīmus, -a, -um, *first*
 sēnex, sēnis, *m. old man*
 tēner, -ēra, -ērūm, *tender*
 turpis, *m. & f. turpe, n. disgraceful, base*
 vētus, *gen. vētēris, old*

vīnum, -i, *n. wine*
 virtūs, virtūtis, *f. virtue*
 vītium, -i, *n. vice*
 quem, *pron. acc. m. whom?*
 quīs, *pron. nom. n. who?*

EXERCISE XXIII.

ācūs, -ūs, *f. needle*¹
 adversus, -a -um, *adverse*
 arcus, -ūs, *bow*
 auditus, -ūs, *hearing*
 Caesar, -āris, *m. Caesar*
 cervus, -i, *m. stag*
 cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty*
 cornū, -ūs, *n. horn*
 cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*
 dīgītus, -i, *m. finger* [*ferent*]
 dīversus, -a, -um, *diverse, different*
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*
 fructus, -ūs, *m. fruit*
 frūmentum, *n. corn*
 gēlū, -ūs, *n. frost*
 gēnū, -ūs, *n. knee*
 glans, glandis, *f. acorn*
 mūliēr, mūliēris, *f. woman*
 myrtus, -i or -ūs, *f. myrtle*
 perniciosus, -a, -um, *destructive*
 pīnus, -ūs, or -i, *f. pine-tree*
 plebs, plēbis, *f. the common people*
 portus, -ūs, *m. harbour*
 quercus, -ūs, *f. oak*
 rāmus, -i, *m. branch*
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*
 sāgitta, -ae, *f. arrow* [*perous*]
 sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous*
 sīnister, -tra, -trum, *left*
 Scythā, -ae, *m. a Scythian*
 sollertia, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*
 taurus, -i, *m. bull*
 tribus, -ūs, *f. tribe*

¹ For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Pl. which are long.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*
 ūtilis, *m. & f. ūtile, n. useful*
 ūtilitās, ūtilitātis, *f. utility*
 vĕnātor, vĕnātōris, *m. hunter*
 ventus, -i, *m. wind*
 vĭsus, -ūs, *sight*
 vulpēs, vulpis, *f. fox*
 dātur (not datur) *v. is given*
 āgīt, *v. drives*
 compārat (-ant), *v. obtains (-ain)*
 expectat, (-ant), *v. awaits (-ait)*
 intellēgit, *v. understands*
 vitat, (-ant) *v. avoids (-oid)*
 vulnĕrat (-ant), *v. wounds (-nd)*
 nāvēs longae, *long ships, i.e. ships of war*

EXERCISE XXIV.

āciēs, -iēi, *f. line (of battle)*
 āpricus, -a, -um, *sunny*
 cālor, calōris, *m. heat*
 densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*
 diēs, diēi, *f. day*
 dōlor, dolōris, *m. grief*
 exercitus, -ūs, *m. army*
 faciēs, -iēi, *f. face*
 flumen, -inis, *n. river*
 fūga, -ae, *f. flight*
 glāciēs, -iēi, *f. ice*
 inimicus, -a, -um, *hostile*
 lūx, lūcis, *f. light*
 mōra, -ae, *f. delay*
 mĕridiēs, -iēi, *f. mid-day*
 nōvus, -a, -um, *new*
 nūmerus, -i, *m. number*
 pars, partis, *f. part*
 planitiēs, -iēi, *f. level ground*
 rēs, rei, *f. thing; rēs adversae, adverse things, i.e. adversity; rēs sĕcundae, prosperity*
 sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*
 spēs, -ei, *f. hope*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
 tĕnuis, *m. & f. tenue, n. thin*
 āgītur, *v. (he) is (being) driven*
 interdum, *adv. sometimes*
 tam, *adv. so*

EXERCISE XXV.¹

āmīcitiā, -ae, *f. friendship*
 āsinus, *m. ass*
 asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough, rugged*
 āvis, *f. bird*
 brāchium, -i, *n. arm*
 campus, -i, *m. a plain*
 cānis, is, *m. dog*
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*
 difficilis, -e, *difficult*
 discipūlus, -i, *m. pupil*
 dissimilis, -e, *unlike*
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*
 grācilis, -e, *slender*
 hūmilis, -e, *low, low-minded*
 iter, itinĕris, *n. journey*
 nihil, indecl. *n. nothing*
 pātria, -ae, *f. native land*
 praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
 procĕrus, -a, -um, *tall*
 rĕgiō, -iōnis, *region, district*
 sāgax, sāgācis, *sayacious*
 similis, -e, *like*
 sōror, ōris, *sister*
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*
 testūdo, -inis, *f. tortoise*
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
 uxor, ōris, *f. wife*
 vallis, -is, *f. valley*
 vĕlōx, -ōcis, *swift*
 virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valour*
 autem, conj. *in the second place, however, but, (never comes after a stop)*
 māgis, *adv. more*

¹ The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of hūmīlior, for example, he will only find hūmilis, the Positive

quam, *conj. than*
 quidem, *conj. in the first place,*
indeed
 complet, *v. fills*
 dūcit, *v. leads*

EXERCISE XXVI.¹

Ālexander, -dri, *m. Alexander*
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
 bēnēvolus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,*
benevolent
 castra, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*
 contio, -iōnis, *f. speech*
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*
 maxīmē, *adv. very greatly, most*
 mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
 nātus, -ūs, *m. (used only in*
Abl. nātu, by birth)
 pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*
 ratio, -iōnis, *f. reason*
 rēvērentia, *ae, f. reverence*
 Sōcratēs, -is, *m. Socrates*
 tempus, -ōris, *n. time*
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
 quid, *pron. (nom. and acc.) n.*
what?

EXERCISE XXVII.

antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*
 centūriā, -ae, *f. century*²
 centurio, -iōnis, *m. a centurion*
 cērāsum, -i, *n. cherry*
 December, *gen. -bris, adj. of*
December
 Germānus, -a, -um, *German*
 Jānuārius, -a, -um, *adj. of*
January
 iuvēnis, -is, *m. young man*
 lēgio, -iōnis, *f. legion*

mānīpūlus, -i, *m. manipule*²
 Martius, -ia, -ium, *of March*
 mensis, -is, *m. month*
 nux, nūcis, *f. nut*
 ōvum, -i, *n. egg*
 patrimōnium, *n. patrimony*
 pauper, -ēris, *poor*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 Septēمبر, *gen. -bris, adj. of*
September
 tribūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
 nunc, *adv. now*
 quondam, *adv. formerly, once*
 solum, *adv. alone*
 tum, *adv. then, during that*
period
 tunc, *adv. then, at that moment*
 castigātur *v. (he) is chastised*

EXERCISE XXVIII.

armentum, -i, *n. herd*
 āvārus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 cārus, -a, -um, *dear*
 cōrōna, -ae, *f. crown*
 ensis, -is, *m. sword*
 laus, laudis, *f. praise*
 mālum, -i, *n. evil*
 mōres, mōrum, *m. pl. conduct*
 mōs, mōris, *m. custom*
 nēmo, *gen. nullius, dat. nēmīni,*
acc. nēmīnem, abl. nullo, no
one
 scūtum, -i, *n. shield*
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many*
 ūterquē, utraqūē, utrumquē,
adj. either, both
 valdē, *adv. strongly, exceed-*
ingly
 vōluptās, -tātis, *f. pleasure*
 clāmānt, *v. (they) cry out*
 vitāre, *v. to avoid*

¹ The irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.

² These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.

EXERCISES XXIX. AND XXX.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*
 crudēlis, *m. & f. -e, n. cruel*
 ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*
 immēmor, *gen. -ōris, adj. un-*
mindful
 mēmor, *gen. -ōris, mindful*
 -nē? *enclitic, asks a question*
(emphasizing the word to
which it is attached)
 nōnū, *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'Yes')
 num? *interrog. adv. (expects*
the answer 'No')
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*
 sēd, *conj. but (on the other*
hand); but yet; but still
 tālis, -e, *adj. such*
 cūrat, *v. (he) takes-care-of*

EXERCISES XXXI. AND XXXII.

Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 finitimus, -a, -um, *bordering on*
 fons, fontis, *m. fountain, source*
 Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hūc, *adv. hither*
 indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*
 jūre, *rightly, see Par. 38*
 maximē, *adv. very greatly, espe-*
cially, most of all
 mīserīcordia, -ae, *f. pity*
 nūnīs, *adv. too much*
 nōmen, -inis, *n. name*
 pārīter, *adv. equally*
 pārens, -rentis, *c. parent*
 patriā, -ae, *f. native land*

poena, -ae, *f. (mostly pl.) penalty*
 prāvus, -a, -um, *depraved*
 proxīmus, *see Par. 69*
 semper, *adv. always*
 sūi, -ōrum, *m. pl. (adj. used as*
noun) his (own) men
 vestis, -is, *f. garment*
 Virgilius, -i, *(more correctly*
Vergīlius) m. Virgil
 vītīōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-vice*
 errat, *v. (he) errs*
 gustat, *v. (he) tastes*
 intrat, *v. (he) enters*
 laedit, *v. (he) hurts*
 sērit, *v. (he) sows, plants*
 do poenas, *I pay the penalty*

EXERCISE XXXIII.¹

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]

Castigo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *punish,*
chastise
 culpo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *blame*
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give*²
 dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, *present*
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *excellent*
 ēmendo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *im-*
prove
 erro, -avi, -ātum, 1, *err*
 īnīmicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*
 laudo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *praise*
 monstro, -avi, -ātum, 1, *show,*
point out
 opīmus, -a, -um, *very good*
 rōgo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *ask*
 saepē, *adv. often*
 sī, *conj. if*
 Tullia, -iae, *f. Tullia*
 vītūpēro, -avi, -ātum, 1, *revile*

¹ Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 248-327.

² This Verb is irregular.

APPENDIX X.

VOCABULARY—I.

LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	=	ablative	<i>indef.</i>	=	indefinite
<i>acc.</i>	=	accusative	<i>interj.</i>	=	interjection
<i>adj.</i>	=	adjective	<i>inter.</i>	=	interrogative
<i>adv.</i>	=	adverb	<i>m.</i>	=	masculine
<i>c.</i>	=	common gender	<i>n.</i>	=	neuter
<i>comp.</i>	=	comparative	<i>num.</i>	=	numeral
<i>conj.</i>	=	conjunction	<i>p.</i>	=	page
<i>dat.</i>	=	dative	<i>part.</i>	=	participle
<i>def.</i>	=	defective	<i>pass.</i>	=	passive
<i>dep.</i>	=	deponent	<i>pl.</i>	=	plural
<i>f.</i>	=	feminine	<i>prep.</i>	=	preposition
<i>g. gen., dat.,</i>	=	governs the gen.,	<i>pron.</i>	=	pronoun
<i>abl., &c.</i>)	dat., abl., &c.	<i>rel.</i>	=	relative
<i>gen.</i>	=	genitive	<i>sing.</i>	=	singular
<i>impers.</i>	=	impersonal verb	<i>sup.</i>	=	superlative
<i>indecl.</i>	=	indeclinable	<i>v.</i>	=	verb.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

Ab (*ā*, *abs*), *prep.* with *abl.* *from*,
by

ābēo, -*ī* or -*īvi*, -*ītum*, -*ire*, 4, *to go*
away

ābhinc, *adv.* (216) (313) *ago* (*with*
acc. or *abl.*)

abjicio, -*jēci*, -*jectum*, 3, *cast away*

absens, -*entis*, *absent*

abstūli, *see* *anfēro*

absūm, *afui*, *abesse*, *I am absent*;

minimum ābest quān pēcam, *I*

am almost perishing, Par. 195 ;

ābest quinquē mīlia passūm, *he*

is five miles off; *prōpē ābest ā*

nōbis, *he is close to us* [*the forms*

abfui, *abfūtūrus*, &c., for *āfui*,

āfūtūrus, &c., are incorrect]

absūmo, -*mpsi*, -*imptum*, 3, *consume*,
destroy

absurdus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* *absurd*

ābundo, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, 1, *abound*

ābūtor, -*ūsus*, 3, *v. dep.* *misuse*, *use*

ac, a form of atque
 accēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, approach
 accīdo, -idi (no sup.) 3, n. v. to
 happen (of ill fortune) [take
 accīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, receive,
 accumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, re-
 cline (at dinner)
 accurro, -eūcurri & -curri, -cursum,
 3, run up, or towards
 accūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, accuse (g.
 gen. of the charge)
 ācer, -cris, -cre, keen, sharp, active
 ācerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful
 Āchillēs, -is, m. Achilles
 ācies, -iēi, f. line (of battle)
 ācūo, -ni, -nitum, 3, I sharpen
 ācus, -ūs, f. needle
 ācūtus, -a, -um, sharp
 ād, prep. (g. acc.) to, at, near,
 towards, for (185, 186)
 ādāmantīnus, -a, -um, adamantine
 ādēo, adv. so, to such an extent
 ādēo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, go to, come
 to, visit, consult (g. acc.)
 ādeptus, see ādīpiscor
 ādhībēo, -ui, -itum, 2, apply
 ādhūc, adv. as yet
 ādīpiscor, -eptus, 3, acquire, obtain
 adjūmentum, -i, n. assistance
 adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, 1, assist
 admīror, -ātus, 1, wonder at, admire
 admitto, -mīsi, -misum, 3, to ad-
 mit; admīsit in se (are) scelus,
 he gave crime entrance into him-
 self, i.e. committed a crime
 admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2, warn; re-
 mind, (eum eius rei)
 ādōlescens, see ādūlescens
 adsum, affui, ādesse, I am present,
 stand by, side with
 ādūlatiō, -iōnis, f. flattery
 ādūlātor, -ōris, m. flatterer
 ādūlescens, -ntis, m. young man
 advēniō, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive
 adventus, -ūs, m. arrival
 adversus, -a, -um, adverse; res
 adversae, adversity

adversus or -um, prep. (g. acc.) to-
 wards, against
 aedēs, -is, f. sing. temple; pl. house
 aedificiūm, -ii, n. building
 aedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, build
 Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl. the Aedui, a
 Gallic tribe
 aeger, -gra, -grum, sick; aegrō
 iēro hoc, I bear this ill, i.e. I
 resent this
 Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt [just
 aequus, -a, -um, adj. level, even,
 āēr, āēris, m. the air
 aes, aeris, n. brass, money; aes
 āliēnum, debt
 aestas, -ātis, f. summer
 aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I value;
 with magni, pluris, &c. (283)
 aetas, -ātis, f. age, time of life
 aeternus, -a, -um, adj. eternal
 aether, -ēris, m. the upper air,
 heaven
 affēro, attūli, allātum, afferrō, I
 bring to, cause; (impers.) allatum
 est, word was brought
 afficiō, -fēcī, fectum, 3, treat; aff.
 te hōnōre, voluptāte, supplicio,
 mētū, I treat you with honour,
 pleasure, &c., i.e. I honour you,
 cause you pleasure, visit you with
 punishment, &c.
 affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assert
 affligo, -ixi, -ietum, 3, I cast down,
 prostrate
 Africa, -ae, f. Africa
 āger, -gri, m. field, lands
 agger, -ēris, m. a mound
 agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, recognize
 āgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3, drive, lead,
 act, do; id āgo ut, I am doing
 my best to; grātiās āgēre, to re-
 turn thanks; causam a., plead
 a cause; vitam a., lead a life;
 nihil a., do nothing; actum est
 de nobīs, it is all over with us;
 hōc āgitur, this is being done, i.e.
 this is the point, or question

agrīcōla, -ae, *m. husbandman*
 aīo, *v. def. say, see p. 215; ut aiunt,*
as they say, i.e. as the proverb
goes

āla, -ae, *f. wing*

Albānus, -a, -um, *Alban*

albus, -a, -um, *white*

Alcibiādes, -is, *m. Alcibiades*

Ālexander, -dri, *m. Alexander (the*
Great) [time]

ālias, *adv. at one time, at another*

ālībi, *adv. at one place, at another*
place; alii a. stant, some stand
in one place, others in another

aliēnus, -a, -um, *another's; āliēna*
sūis antēpōnit, he places the in-
terests of others above his own;
acs āliēnum, debt; in aerē ā iēno
esse, to be in debt [place]

ālīo, *adv. to one place, to another*
 āliquando, *adv. sometimes, at some*
time or other

ālīquis, -quae, -quid, *pron. some one,*
something, decl. like quis

ālīquo, *adv. somewhere; āliquo*
terrārum, (part. gen.) to some
place in the world

ālīter, *adv. otherwise, differently*

ālīus, -a, -ud, *irr. adj. one of any*
number, one another. See Par. 86

allātum, *see affero*

allīcīo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *allure*

Allōbrōges, -um, *m. the Allobroges*

allōquor, -lōcūtus, 3, *dep. speak to,*
accost (g. acc.)

almus, -a, -um, *loving*

ālō, alūi, altum, 3, *nourish, rear*

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl. the Alps.*

alter, -tēra, -tērum, (*gen. -erius,*
dat. -erī), one of two, second, the
other; unus et a. one or two;
vicēsīmus a., twenty-first

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

āmābīlis, -e, *adj. lovely* [Par. 288]

āmāns, -ntis, *adj. loving, (g. gen.*

āmārus, -a, -um, *bitter*

ambo, -ac, -o, *both. See Par. 77*

ambūlo, -āvi, -ātum, *I walk*

āmens, -ntis, *senseless, mad*

amīcīo, -īcui or -ixi, -ictum, 4,
cover, clothe

āmīcīūa, -ae, *f. friendship*

ānīcus, -i, *m. friend*

āmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *love*

āmor, -ōris, *m. love*

āmitto, -misi, -misum, 3, *lose*

amnis, -is, *m. river*

ān, or (in *dep. quest.*, see Par. 171);
 (also in *direct quest.*, an *altern-*
ative being understood), An nōs
 prōdēs? *i.e. (you will be faith-*
ful, will you not?) Or will you
actually betray us? (171, 302)

Angli, -ōrum, *m. pl. Englishmen*

anguis, -is, *m. snake*

angustus, -a, -um, *adj. narrow*

ānimadverto, -i, -sum, 3, *observe*

ānīmāl, -ālis, *n. animal.*

ānīmus, -i, *m. mind, soul, courage*

annōn, *see Par. 172*

annus, -i, *m. year* [restigate]

anquīro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, 3, *in-*
anser, -sēris, m. goose

antē, *prep. (g. acc.) before, (183);*

adv. paucis ante annis, a few
years before; N.B.—distinguish
the prep. from the conj. ante...
quam, or antequam; antea, adv.
before those things, beforehand

antēpōno, -pōni, -pōsītum, 3,
prefer (g. acc. and dat.) (192)

antequam, *conj. before, until*

Anthrōpophāgi, -ōrum, *m. pl. man-*
caters, cannibals

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*

ānūlus (not annūlus), -i, *m. ring*

ānūs, -ūs, *f. old woman*

aper, -pri, *m. wild boar*

āpērio, āpērui, āpertum, 4, *open*

āpertus, -a, -um, *open, clear*

Āpollo, -īnis, *m. Apollo*

appello, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *call*

apricus, -a, -um, *sunny*

āpūd, *prep. g. acc. See Par. 183*

aptus, -a, -um, *fît*
 âqua, -ae, *f. water*
 âquila, -ae, *f. an eagle*
 arbiter, -tri, *m. umpire*
 arbîtror, -âtus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *consider, judge*
 arbor, -ôris, *f. tree*
 Archimêdês, -is, *m. Archimedes*
 arcî, *see arx*
 arcus, -ûs, *m. bow*
 ardêo, arsi, -sum, 2, *v. intr., I burn, am on fire*
 ardûus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, steep, difficult*
 argenteus, -a, -um, *silver*
 argentum, -i, *n. silver; money*
 Ariovistus, -i, *m. Ariovistus*
 arma, -ôrum, *n. pl. arms*
 Armênia, -ae, *f. Armenia*
 armentum, -i, *n. herd*
 arnio, -âvi, -âtum, 1, *arm, equip*
 âro, -âvi, -âtum, 1, *plough*
 Arpînum, -i, *n. Arpinum, the birth-place of Cicero*
 ars, artis, *f. art, handicraft*
 arvum, -i, *n. corn-field*
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*
 as, assis, *m. the smallest Roman coin; it may be translated a further thing (used in the genit. of indef. price; see Ex. LXXX.)*
 Asîa, -ae, *f. Asia (mostly Æ)*
 âsînus, -i, *m. ass*
 asper, -êra, -êrum, *rough, rugged*
 aspernor, -âtus, 1, *v. dep. reject, despise*
 aspîcio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look at*
 assêquor, -secutus, 3, *attain*
 ât, *conj. but (more abrupt than sed)*
 âter, atra, atrum, *black, gloomy*
 Athênæ, -ârûm, *f. pl. Athens*
 Athênîensis, -e, *Athenian*
 atquê (*or ac, but not before vowels*).
conj. and further, and; often used to couple words of similar meaning, e.g. sôcii atquê âmîci, hônêstissîmus atquê ornâtissîmus

âtrox, -ôcis, *stern, gloomy*
 auctor, -ôris, *m. adviser, author;*
Tullio auctôre, at the advice of
Tullius (197)
 auctôrîtâs, -âtis, *f. authority*
 auctumnus, -i, *m. autumn*
 audactêr, *adv. boldly, daringly*
 audâx, -âcis, *bold*
 audêo, ausus sum, audêre, 2, *to dare, venture*
 audio, -îvi, -îtum, 4, *hear*
 auditus, -us, *m. hearing*
 aufêro, abstûli, ablâtum auferrê,
I carry away, take away
 augeo, auxi, auctum, 2, *augment*
 Augustus, -i, *m. Augustus, the first emperor of Rome*
 aurêus, -a, -um, *golden*
 aurîga, -ae, *m. charioteer*
 aurîs, -is, *f. an ear*
 aurum, -i, *n. gold*
 ausus, *see audeo*
 Auster, -tri, *m. South wind [173]*
 aut...aut, *either...or else (151a,*
autem, conj. but, in the second place
(placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs);
see quidê (67)
 auxiliûm, -i, *n. help, aid*
 âvârus, -a, -um, *avaricious, greedy*
 âvidus, -a, -um, *greedy*
 âvis, -is, *f. bird*
 âvus, -i, *m. a grandfather*
 Bâbylôn, -ônîs, *f. Babylon*
 bâlaena, -ae, *f. a whale*
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*
 barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*
 bêtê, *adv. happily*
 bêtus, -a, -um, *adj. happy*
 Belgæ, -ae, *m. a Belgian*
 bellicôsus, -a, -um, *adj. warlike*
 bello, -âvi, -âtum, 1, *I wage war*
 bellum, -i, *n. war*
 bêtûa, -ae, *f. a great beast*
 bêtê, *adv. well*
 bêtêficiûm, -ii, *n. benefit*

bēnēficius, -a, -um, *beneficent*
 bēnēvolentia, -ae, *f. benevolence*
 bēnēvōlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing, benevolent. See Par. 68a*

bēnignē, *adv. kindly*

bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*

bestia, -ae, *f. a beast*; damnāri ad bestias, *to be condemned to be exposed to the beasts (in the amphitheatre)*

bībo, bībi, bībītum, 3, *I drink*

Bībūlus, -i, *m. Bibulus*

bīdūm, -i, *n. two days*; bīdūi iter, *two days' journey*

biennium, -i, *n. two years*

būi, -ae, -a, *two apiece (314)*

bīs, *adv. twice*

blandior, -ītus, with *dat. 4, v. dep.*

I flutter, win upon

bōna, -ōrum, *n. pl. goods, blessings*

bōnus, -a, -um, *adj. good* [311]

bōs, bōvis, *c. ox, cow, see Par.*

bracchium, -i, *n. arm*

brēvis, -e, *short, brief*

Britannia, -ae, *f. Britain*

Britannus, -i, *m. a Briton*

Brūtus, -i, *m. Brutus*

būbus, *see bōs*

Cādāver, -ēris, *n. corpse*

cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3, *I fall*; N.B.

distinguish this from cēcīdi

caecus, -a, -um, *adj. blind*

caedēs, -is, *f. slaughter*

caedo, cecīdi, caesum, 3, *strike, cut down, slay*; N.B. *distinguish this from cēcīdi*

caelestis, -e, *celestial*

caelicolae, -ārum, *m. pl. lit. heaven-dwellers, i.e. gods*

caelum, -i, *n. heaven*

Caesar, -āris, *m. Caesar*

cālāmītas, -ātis, *f. calamity*

calcār, -āris, *n. spur*

cālix, -icis, *m. cup*

cālor, -ōris, *m. heat*

Cāmillus, -i, *m. Camillus*

Campānia, -ae, *f. Campania*

campus, -i, *m. plain*

cancer, -eri, *m. crab*

cānis, -is, *c. dog*

Cannae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cannae, a village where Hannibal defeated the Romans*

cāno, cēcīni, cantum, 3, *sing*; tūbā cēcīnit, *the trumpet sounded*

canto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I sing*

cantus, -ūs, *m. song*

cāper, -pri, *m. goat*

cāpillus, -i, *m. hair (pl. once in Cicero, but in poetry often)*

cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3, *take* [*ive*

captivus (or captus) -a, -um, *capt-*

Cāpua, -ae, *f. Capua, the most luxurious city in Italy*

cāpūt, -ītis, *n. head*; gentis cāput, *the capital city of the nation*;

cāpīte multo, *I punish with death*; cāpītis damno, *I condemn to death (Ec. LXXX.)*

carcer, -ēris, *m. prison*

cardo, -īnis, *m. hinge*

cāreo, -ni, 2, *I am without (g. abl.)*;

fācīle c. vīno, *I easily do without wine*

carmēn, -īnis, *n. song*

cāro, carnis, *f. flesh* [*ginian*

Carthāgīniēsis, -e, *adj. Cartha-*

Carthāgo, īnis, *f. Carthage*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*

cāsa, -ae, *f. cottage*

cāsēus, -i, *m. cheese*

castīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *chastise punish*

castrā, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*

cāsus, -ūs, *m. chance, accident*; dīversis cāsibus, *with varied fortunes*

cātēna, -ae, *f. chain*

Cātilīna, -ae, *m. Catiline*

Cāto, -ōnis, *m. Cato*

causa, -ae, *f. cause*; andīendi causā, *for the sake of hearing*;

causam ēgit, *he pleaded a cause*

cāvĕo, cāvī, cautum, 2, *beware, beware of (g. acc.)*; cāvĕ nē faciās, *take care not to do*; cāvĕbātur, *precautions were taken*

cēdidi, *see cādo and caedo*

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *yield*; c. tibi, *I yield to you*; c. āciē or ex āciē, *I retire from the battle*; cēler, -ēris, -ēre, *swift*; cēlēriter, *adv. swiftly* (61)

cēlēritas, -tātis, *f. speed*

cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *conceal, (g. two acc.)*. *See Par. 312*

celsus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, tall*

cēna, -ae, *f. dinner*; cēno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dine (perf. also cēnātus sum)*; cēnātus, *having dined*

centum, *see Par. 81*

centūria, -ae, *f. a (military) century (see Ex. XXVII., sent. 8)*

centūriō, -iōnis, *m. centurion (the officer of a century)*

cērāsus, -i, *n. cherry*

cērāsus, -i, *f. the cherry-tree*

cērebrum, -i, *n. brain*

Cērēs, Cērēris, *f. Ceres*

certāmen, -inis, *n. contest, strife*; in certāmen hōnōris vĕnērunt, *they entered into a competition for distinction*

cerno, 3, *I see, discern*

certus, -a, -um, *adj. certain*; certīorem te fēci, *I informed you (foll. by Gen., or Object Infinitive)*; *fixed*, certum ōpus, *a fixed task*

cervus, -i, *m. stag*

[cēter], -ēra, -ērūm, *adj. the rest, the rest of (see Eng. Latin Vocab., of)*; pl. cēteri, *the others*

cibus, -i, *m. food*

Cicēro, -ōnis, *m. Cicero*

cinis, cinēris, *m. ashes*

cingo, -nxī, -nctum, 3, *I surround*

circā, circum, *prep. (g. acc.) around*

circit̄r, *prep. with acc. about*

circumdo, -dāre, -dēdi, dātum, 1,

(1) *to put round (acc. and dat.)*;

(2) *to surround (acc. and abl.)*

circumspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look round*

circumsto, -stēti, -stāre, *stand round*; (part. as noun) circumstantes, -ium, *by-standers* [cf. cis, citrā, *prep. (g. acc.) on this side*]; Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine*

cithāra, -ae, *f. lute* [quickly]

cito, *adv. quickly*; citius, *more*

civilis, -e, *adj. belonging to a citizen, civil*

civis, -is, *m. citizen*

civitas, -tātis, *f. state, citizenship*; dōnant eum civitātē, *they present him with the citizenship*

clādēs, -is, *f. slaughter*

clam, *adv. secretly*; *prep. (g. abl.) without the knowledge of*

clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry out, shout*

clāmor, -ōris, *m. clamour, shout*

claudio, -si, -sum, 3, *shut*

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, renowned*

classis, -is, *f. a fleet*

clēmenter, *adv. gently, mercifully*

coactus, *see cōgo*

coelestis, *see caelestis*.

coelum, *see caelum*

coena, *see cēna*

coeno, *see cēno*

cōeo, -ivi or -iī, itum, 4, *join together (r. intrans.)*

cōercēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *restrain*

cōgito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think, meditate*

cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, *learn, ascertain*

cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, 3 *compel*

cōhōrs, -rtis, *f. cohort, a tenth part of the legion*

cōhortor, -ātus, 1, *r. dep. encourage*

colligo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, *collect*

collis, -is, *m.*, *hill*
 collōquium, -i, *n.* *conversation*
 collōquor, -cātus, 3, *v. dep.* *I converse*
 collūvies, (*acc.* -em, *abl.* -ē) *f.*
medley, confusion
 cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3, *cultivate,*
worship, cherish
 cōlōniā, -ae, *f.* *a colony*
 cōlōnus, -i, *m.* *farmer*
 cōlor, -ōris, *m.* *colour*
 cōlumba, -ae, *f.* *dove*
 cōlūber, -bri, *m.* *snake*
 cōmēs, -itis, *m.* *companion* [*pany*
 cōmītor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep.* *I accom-*
commēātus, -ūs, m. provisions,
supplies
 commēmōrātiō, -iōnis, *f.* *com-*
memoration, mention
 commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* *fellow-soldier*
 comminus, *adv.* *hand to hand*
 committo, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *com-*
mit; c. proelium, join (lit. send
together) battle
 compāro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *get to-*
gether, obtain
 compello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *drive*
together
 compērio, -pēri, -pertum, 4, *find,*
ascertain; compertum hābeo, I
have (it) ascertained (with acc.
and inf.)
 compēs, -pēdis, *f.* *fetter*
 compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *fill*
 comprēhendo (*or* *comprendo*), -di,
 -sum, 3, *I seize* [*retire*
 concēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, *yield,*
concordia, -ae, f. concord
 conerēmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *burn up*
 condemno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *condemn*
 condīciō, -iōnis, (*less correctly con-*
dītiō), *f. condition; (in pl.) terms*
(of peace, &c.)
 condūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *hire*
 condo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *found;*
post conditam urbem, after the
foundation of the city

confēro, -tūli, collātum, conferre,
 3, *irr.* *I bring together, betake;*
se contūlit rūs, he betook him-
self to the country
 confessus, *see* confitēor
 conficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *I finish,*
accomplish
 confido, -īsus -sum, 3, *g. dat.* *I*
trust
 confitēor, -fessus, 2, *confess*
 confūgio, -fūgi, 3, *I flee for refuge*
 conſicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *hurl*
 conjūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* *a conspiracy*
 conjūrātus, -i, *m.* *conspirator*
 cōnor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep.* *attempt*
 conscendo, -di, -sum, 3, *mount,*
go on board (ship)
 conscientia, *ae, f. conscience*
 conscribo, -scripsi, -scriptum, 3,
enrol (soldiers)
 consentio, -nsi, -nsum, 4, *agree*
 conservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I preserve,*
maintain
 consiliūm, *ii, n. plan, purpose,*
wisdom
 constanter, *adv.* *steadily, firmly*
 constantia, -ae, *f. constancy, firmness*
 constat, -stitit, 1, *impers. v. it is*
agreed, well-known &c.
 constitūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *determine*
 consuetudo, -inis, *f. habit*
 consul, -ulis, *m. consul; Gaio et*
Balbo consūlibus, Gaius and
Balbus being consuls
 consūlātus, -ūs, *m. office of consul,*
consulate
 consūlo, -lūi, -ltum, 3, *consult; c.*
tibi, I c. your interests; c. te, I
consult you
 consumo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3, *con-*
sume, waste away
 contemno, -mpsi, -mptum, 3,
despise
 contemplor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. con-*
template
 contendo, -di, -sum, *or* -tum, 3
gaze at, hasten (278)

contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)

contineo, -ui, -entum, 2, *I hold together*

contingo, -tigi, 3, *be full*; contigit mihi, *it was my good luck*

continuo, *adv. forthwith*; *N.B. not continually*

contio, -iōnis, *f. speech, harangue*

contra, *prep. (g. acc.) against*

contraho, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*

contrarius, a, -um, *contrary* (189)

contumelia, -ae, *f. an insult*

convalesco, -vālui, 3, *recover from illness*

convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*

converto, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*

conviciūm, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*

convoco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *call together*

cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty*; cōpiaē, -ārum, *f. pl. forces*

cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*

cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*

Cōrinthus, -i, *f. Corinth*

Cornelia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*

cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*

cōrōna, -ae, *f. a crown*

corpus, -ōris, *n. body*

corrigo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*

corripio, -rīpiui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*

cotidie, *see quotidiē*

crās, *adv. to-morrow*

Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*

crēator, -ōris, *m. creator* [peated

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, re-*

crēdibilis, -e, *adj. credible* [dat)

crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *believe (g.*

crēo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I create, make*

Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*

crīmen, -īnis, *n. charge, accusation*

crīnis, -is, *m. hair*

cruciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*

crūdēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*

crūs, crūris, *n. leg*

culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*: *see extra*

culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*

culter, -tri, *m. knife*

cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*

cum, (*sometimes wrongly spelt quum*) *conj. when*, (Par. 151)

since: cum . . . tum *not only . . . but also*; *N.B. — cum is*

never interrogative: *see quando*

Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cumae, (a city)*

cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*

cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*

cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*

cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*

cūpio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*

cūr, *adv. why?* (*also conj. in dep. sent.*); nōn est cūr timēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*

cūra, -ae, *f. care*

cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *take care*;

cūrā ut, or nē, ēās *take care to, or not to, go*

curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *run*

currus, -ūs, *m. chariot*

cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*

custōdio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*

custos, custōdis, *m. a guardian*

Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*

Damno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *condemn*

Darius, -i, *m. Darius*

dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*

dēa, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. dēabus)* *see Par. 311*

dēbēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *owe*: dēbui

dāre, *I ought to have given* (223)

dēbilis, -e, *adj. feeble*

dēcem, *see Par. 81*

Dēcember, -bris, -bre, *of December.*

See Appendix VI., p. 229

dēcemvir, -virī, *m. decemvir, one of ten commissioners*

dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it becomes, befits, Par. 220.*

dēcimus, -a, -um, *Par. 81.*

dēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *I deceive*

dēcōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *honour, distinguish*

dēcus, -ōris, *n. ornament, honour, glory; Horace addresses his patron as "my guardian and glory (dēcus)"*

dēdēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it misbecomes*

dēdēcus, -ōris, *n. disgrace, baseness*

dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3, *defend*

dēfensor, -ōris, *a defender*

dēflāgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to be burnt down*

dēfluo, -fluxi, 3, *flow down*

dēformis, -e, *ugly*

dējicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3, *cast down*

dēlecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *delight*

dēlectus, -ūs, *m. a levy* [out

dēlēo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *destroy, blot*

dēlibēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *deliberate*

dēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, *choose*

Dēlōs, -i, *f. the isle of Delos, the seat of an oracle of Apollo*

Delphi, -ōrum, *m. pl. Delphi, the city containing the principal oracle of Apollo*

dēmo, deimpsi, demptum, 3, *subtract*

Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, *m. Demosthenes*

dēmum, *adv. indeed; id dēmum, that, and nothing else; tum dēmum, then, and not till then*

dēnārius, -ii, *m. a denarius, a Roman coin worth about 9d.*

dēnīquē (*adv.*) *finally, in short*

densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*

dens, -ntis, *m. tooth*

dēpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *drive down*

dēplōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lament over, deplore*

dēposco, -poposci, 3, *demand*

dērīsūs, -ūs, *m. laughing-stock*

descendo, -scendi, -scensum, 3, *come, or go, down*

descisco, -scēvi, -scitum, 3, *rerolt*

dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3, *I abandon*

dēsīdēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *long for (what is absent)*

dēsum, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*) *be wanting to, fall short, fail*

dētēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *reveal, disclose*

dētērrō, -ūi, -itum, 2, *frighten*

dētēxo, -texui, -textum, 3, *finish weaving, finish*

dētīneo, -ui, 2, *detain, keep back*

dētrāho, -traxi, -tractum, *take away, withdraw*

Dēus, -i, *m. God*

dēvinco, -vici, -victum, 3, *subdue*

dextra, -ae, *f. right hand*

Diāna, -ae, *f. Diana*

dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *say, speak; dicī-tur Tullius, &c., it is said that Tullius, &c. (Par 177)*

dīctō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *say often*

dīctum, -i, *a saying*

dīcs, -cē, *m. (f. in poets) day*

difficīlis, -e, *difficult (60)* [trust

diffido, -fisis sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *dis-*
diffindo, -fīdi, -fissum, 3, *cleave asunder*

dīgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *arrange*

dīgītus, -i, *m. finger* [authority

dīgnitas, -ātis, *f. dignity, worth,*

dīgnus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*

dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, *slip away in different directions*

dīlīgēns, -ntis, *adj. diligent, careful*

dīlīgēnter, *adv. carefully*

dīlīgēntia, -ae, *f. diligence*

dīlīgēntissimē, *adv. most carefully*

dīlīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *love, esteem*

dīmīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight (a battle)*

dīmīdīum, -i, *n.* half
 dimitto, -isi, -issum, 3, *I let go, dismiss*
 Dīōnysius, -ii, *m.* Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse
 diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *plunder*
 discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *depart*
 disciplīna, -ae, *f.* discipline
 discipulus, -i, *m.* pupil
 disco, didici, 3, *learn*
 discordia, -ae, *f.* discord
 displicēo, -ui, -itum, (*g. dat.*) 2, *displease*
 dispūto, -avi, -atum, 1, *discuss*
 dispūtatio, -ōnis, *f.* discussion
 dissimilis, -e, *adj.* unlike; *g. gen. or dat.* (see Par. 66, 60)
 distrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw asunder*
 distribuo, -ui, -utum, 3, *distribute*
 diū, *adv.* long. *for a long time*
 diūtius, *adv.* longer
 diversus, -a, -um, *diverse, different*
 divēs, -itis, *rich* [*parate*
 divido, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3, *divide, se-*
 divinus, -a, -um, *divine*
 divitiāe, -arum, *f. pl.* riches
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give*; do
 litteras, *I date a letter*
 docēo, -ui, -ctum, 2, *I teach* (*g. two acc.*) See Par. 312
 doctē, *adv.* learnedly, skilfully
 doctrīna, -ae, *f.* learning
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*
 dōlēo, -ui, 2, *grieve*
 dōlor, -ōris, *m.* pain, grief
 dōlus, -i, *m.* craft, treachery; per
 dolum, *treacherously*
 domestīcus, -a, -um, *domestic*
 dōmicīlium, -ii, *n.* an abode
 dōmīna, -ae, *f.* mistress
 dōminātus, -ūs, *m.* rule, sovereignty
 dōmīnus, -i, *m.* master, owner
 dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1, *tame, subdue*
 dōmus, -i, *f.* house, home; dōmi,
at home; dōmum, *homeward*,
 Pars. 249, 265

dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, *present, g. acc. and dat. like do*; or else
acc. and abl.; dōno eum equo,
I present him with a horse
 dōnum, -i, *n.* gift
 dormio, -ivi or ii, -itum, 4, *sleep*
 dorsum, -i, *n.* back
 dūbito, -āvi, -atum, 1, *doubt*
 dūbius, -a, -um, *adj.* doubtful; nōn
 dūbium est quīn, *it is not doubt-*
ful that, i.e., there is no doubt
that (foll. by Subjunct.)
 dūcenti, -ae, -a, see Par. 81 [(237)
 dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *lead, marry*
 dulcis, -e, *sweet, delightful*
 dum, *conj.* (Par. 272) *while*
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*
 dux, dūcis, *c.* leader, general

E, ex, prep. (*g. abl.*) *out of, from*:
 ex imprōbo, *fis imprōbior, from*
bad, you are becoming worse
 ēbur, ēbūris, *n.* ivory
 eccē, *interject.* lo! behold!
 ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3, *eat*
 ēdūco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *educate*
 ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead out*
 effēro, extūli, ēlātum, efferrē, 3,
irr. v. *I carry out*
 efflōresco, -flōrui, 3, *blossom*
 effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3, *scoop*
out, strike out
 effūgio, -fūgi, 3, *escape* (*g. acc.*)
 ēgeo, -ui, 2, *to need* (*g. abl.*)
 ēgo, see Par. 90
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* excellent,
eminent
 eiismōdi, see mōdus
 ējicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast out*
 ēlēgans, -antis, *adj.* elegant, ex-
quisite
 ēlēgantia, -ae, *f.* tastefulness
 ēlēphas, ēlēphantis, *m.* (also ēlē-
 phantus, -i, *m.*) elephant
 ēlicio, -licui, -licitum, 3, *draw forth*
 ēligo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *choose*
 ēlōquens, -entis, *adj.* eloquent

ěloquentĭa, -ae, *f. eloquence*
 ěmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *improve*
 ěmigro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I depart from*
 ěmĭnus, *at a distance [military term opp. to commĭnus (cum, mĕnus), hand to hand]*
 ěmo, ěmi, emptum, 3, *I buy*
 ěnarro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I relate*
 ěnim, *conj. for (differs from nam in never standing first in a clause)*
 ěnĭtor, -ĭsus or -ĭxus, 3, *v. dep. strive hard*
 ensĭs, -is, *m. sword*
 eo, *adv. abl. of ĭs, by so much; (with compar.) eo mĕlius (by) so much the better; in eo (166)*
 ěo, ĭvi, ĭtum, ĭre, *go, Par. 241*
 ěpĭstĭla, -ae, *f. letter, epistle (perhaps better, ěpĭstŭla)*
 ěpĕmĭnon-das, -ae, *m. Epaninondas, a Theban patriot and general*
 ěphĕsus, -i, *f. Ephesus*
 ěquĕs, -ĭtis, *m. horse soldier*
 ěquester, -tris, -e, *equestrian*
 ěquĭdem (Par. 139) *for my part*
 equĭto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ride*
 ěquĭtĕtus, -ŭs, *m. cavalry*
 ěquus, -i, *m. a horse*
 ergĕ, *prep. (g. acc.) towards (only of the feelings) Par. 183*
 ěrĭpio, -rĭpui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away (g. acc. and dat., 192)*
 erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err, wander*
 error, -ōris, *m. error, fault*
 ěrŭdĭo, -ĭvi or -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *train up, educate*
 ěrŭdĭtus, -a, -um, *adj. trained, educated*
 ěrumpo, -rŭpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst, rush forth*
 ět, *conj. and; et...et, both...and; even, (see Par. 12, 32, 153)*
 ětĭam, *conj. also, even (141); (mostly before the word it modifies); nŏn sŏlum...sed ětĭam, not only ...but also*

Euphrĕtĕs, -is, *m. the Euphrates*
 Eurĭpĭdĕs, -is, *m. Euripides*
 Eurŏpa, -ae, *f. Europe*
 ěvĕdo, -vĕsi, -vĕsum, *escape*
 ěvĕnĭo, -vĕni, -ventum, 4, *to happen*
 ěventŭs -ŭs, *m., event, result*
 ex or ě, *prep. with abl. out of, from; ex ĭtinĕre, on a journey*
 exalbesco, -albui, 3, *turn pale*
 exaudio, -ĭvi, -ĭtum, 4, *catch the sound of (g. acc.)*
 excĕdo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I depart from*
 exelĕmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I cry out*
 exĕlo, -cŏlŭi, -cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully; agri excul-ti frĕmento, lit. fields richly cultivated with corn, i.e. fields with rich corn-crops*
 excŭsĕtiŏ, -ĭŏnis, *f., excuse*
 excŭso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to excuse*
 exeŭtiŏ, -cussi, -cussum, 3, *shake off*
 exemplum, -i, *n. example*
 exĕdo, -ĕdi, -ĕsum, 3, *eat out, gnaw away; exĕsus pŭmex, weather-hollowed rock*
 exĕo, -ĭvi or -ĭi, -ĭtum, 4, *I go out*
 exercĕo, -ĭi, -ĭtum, 2, *exercise*
 exercĭtus, -ŭs, *m. army*
 exhaurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4, *drain off, drink off*
 exĭgŭus, -a, -um, *scanty, little*
 exilĭum, *see exsilĭum*
 exĭtĭum, -ii, *n. destruction*
 exordĭor, -orsus, 4, (*v. dep.*), *begin a web; hence exorsa, -ŏrum, n. pl. a beginning*
 expecto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *await*
 expello, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3, *I drive out [awakened]*
 expergiscor, experrectus, 3, *I am*
 expĕriĕntĭa, -ae, *f. experience*
 expĕriŏr, -pertus, 4, *dep. try, experience*

expers, -rtis, *destitute of (g. gen.)*
 expēto, -īvi, -itum, 3, *seek out*
 explōrator, -ōris, *m. spy, scout*
 explōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *investigate*
 expōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, *put forth, disembark*
 expugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *take by storm* [*destroy*
 excindo, -scīdi, -scissum, 3, *rend*
 exsilio, -sīlui, -sultum, 4, *leap forth*
 exsiliū, -i, *n. exile*
 exstrūo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *build up*
 extimesco, -timūi, 3, *take alarm at (acc.)*
 extrā, *prep. (g. acc.) outside of; extrā culpam, free from blame*
 extrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw out*
 extrēmus, -a, -um, *last*, Par. 69
 exulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *exult*
 exūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *strip off*

Fāber, -bri, m. workman, artificer
Fābius, -ii, m. Quintus Fabius
Maximus, called Cunctātor, because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War

fābūla, -ae, *f. story, fable*
 fācies, -ēi, *f. face*
 fācīlē, *adv. easily; comp. fācīlius*
 fācīlis, -e, *adj. easy* (60) [*crime*
 fācīnus, -ōris, *n. daring deed*
 fācio, fēci, factum, fācērē, 3,
make, do; fāc (ut) vēnias, cause that you, i.e. take care to, come: (with assis, flocci) I value (284)
 factum, -i, *n. deed*
 fallāx, -ācis, *deceitful*
 fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3, *deceive: fidem fēfellit, he broke his word: non f. ōpiniōnem, it did not deceive our expectation*
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*
 fāma, -ae, *f. fame, reputation; Fāma, the goddess Fame*
 fāmīliāris, -e, *belonging to the*

household; rēs f. one's property, estate
 fānēs, -is, *f. hunger*
 fās, *n. indecl. divine law, heaven's will; contrā jūs fāsque, against human and divine law*
 fascis, -is, *m. bundle, faggot; fascēs, the rods carried before consuls*
 fātēor, fassus, 2, *dep. confess*
 fātum, -i, *n. fate*
 faux, -cis, *f. jaw*
 fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2, *favour (g. dat.)*
 febris, -is, *f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ē), fever*
 fēlicītēr, *adv. luckily, prosperously*
 fēlix, -icis, *happy, fortunate*
 fēmīna, -ae, *f. a woman*
 fēra, -ae, *f. a wild beast*
 fērax, -ācis, *fruitful*
 fērē, *adv. almost, commonly; nēmo fērē, hardly anyone*
 fērītas, -ātis, *f. savageness* [*peace*
 fērīo, 4, *strike; f. pācem, I make*
 fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, *bear, carry, endure; fertur Gaius dixisse, it is reported that Gaius said*
 fērōx, -ōcis, *adj. fierce, spirited*
 ferrum, -i, *n. iron, sword*
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage, wild*
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*
 fētus, -ūs, *m. offspring*
 fīcus, -ūs, *f. a fig*
 fidēlis, -e, *adj. faithful*
 fīdes, -ēi, *f. faith; servo fidem, I keep my word*
 fido, fīsus sum, fidere, 3, *(g. dat. or abl.) I trust*
 fidus, -a, -um, *adj. faithful*
 fīgo, fixi, fixum, 3, *fix*
 filia, -ae, *f. a daughter*
 filius, -ii, *m. a son*
 fingo, finxi, fictum, 3, *feign*
 finīo, -īvi, -ii, -itum, 4, *I end*
 finis, -is, *m. end, boundary (pl. territories)*

finiitimus, -a, -um, *bordering on*
fio, factus sum, fieri, 3, *v. irr. to*
become, be made (258)

firmitas, -atis, *strength*

firmitas, -a, -um, *adj. strong*

Flaccus, -i, *n. the surname of*
Quintus Horatius Flaccus, com-
monly called Horace

flagitium, -i, *n. disgraceful crime*

fleo, fleui, fletum, 2, *weep*

flo, flavi, flatum, 1, *blow*

floccus, -i, *n. the down of wool ;*
hence non flocci facio, I do not
value at a feather (284)

florere, -ntis, *adj. flourishing*

florere, -ntis, 2, *I bloom, flourish*

florere, -ntis, *n. flower*

fluctus, -us, *m. wave, billow*

flumen, -inis, *n. current, river*

fluere, -ntis, 3, *flow (fut. part. act.*
fluxurus)

fluvius, -ii, *m. a river*

fodere, -ntis, fossus, fodere, 3, *dig*

foedus, -a, -um, *1, denile*

foedus, -a, -um, *n. treaty*

foedus, -a, -um, *foul, shameful*

fons, -ntis, *m. fountain, source*

fore, fut. inf. of sum (Par. 212) ;

fore, foret, &c. see sum

foras, *adv. (motion) out of doors ;*

foras, *adv. (rest) out of doors*

foras, -um, *f. pl. doors*

formido, -a, -um, *1, dread*

formido, -inis, *f. terror*

fortasse, *adv. perhaps (mostly re-*
fers to the future, unlike forte
below)

forte, *adv. by chance, once upon a*
time, never refers to the Fut., ex-
cept in the phrases, si forte, nisi
forte, ne forte

fortis, -e, *brave, strong ; -tissimē,*
adv. very bravely ; -titer, adv.
bravely

fortuna, -ae, *f. fortune ; fortunae*
nostrae penes te sunt, our
fortunes are in your hands

forum, -i, *n. market-place, forum*

fossa, -ae, *f. ditch*

frango, frangi, fractum, 3, *break*

frater, -tris, *m. brother*

fraus, fraudis, *f. deceit, mischief*

frēno, -ui, itum, 3, *murmur*

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*

frigus, -oris, *n. cold*

frons, -ndis, *f. foliage*

frons, -ntis, *f. the forehead, brow*

fructus, -us, *m. fruit, advantage*

fruges, -um, *f. pl. fruits, a crop*

fruo, fruor, fructus or fructus, 3, *dep.*
enjoy (207, 256)

frumentum, -i, *n. corn (mostly*
harvested) ; frumenta, -orum,
corn (mostly in the fields)

frustra, *adv. in vain*

frutex, -icis, *m. shrub*

fuga, -ae, *f. flight*

fugio, fugi, 3, *flee*

fugio, -a, -um, *1, put to flight*

fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4, *prop up*

fulgeo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine*

fulgur, -uris, *n. lightning (that*
shines) ; in poets used for fulmen

fulmen, -inis, *n. lightning (that*
strikes) [rout

fundo, fudi, fusum, 3, *pour, scatter*

fundus, -i, *m. farm*

funestus, -a, -um, *fatal, deadly*

fungor, functus, 3, *v. dep. I dis-*
charge (207)

funiculus, -is, *m. rope*

funus, -eris, *n. a funeral*

fur, furis, *m. thief*

furo, -oris, *m. madness, rage*

Gades, -um, *f. pl. Cadiz*

Gaius, *gen. Gai, m. (less cor-*
rectly Caius, Caii) Gaius, a
Roman praenomen or fore-name

Gallia, -ae, *f. Gaul*

Gallus, -i, *m. a Gaul*

gaudeo, gavisus sum, gaudere, 2,
I rejoice

gaudium, -i, *n. joy*

gēlīdus, -a, -um, *ice-cold*
 gēlū, -ūs, *n. frost*
 gēner, -ēri, *m. son-in-law*
 gens, gentis, *f. nation*
 gēnū, -ūs, *n. knee*
 gēnus, -ēris, *n. kind, race*
 Germanus, -a, -um, *German*
 gēro, gessi, gestum, 3, *carry on*;
 rem bēnē gero, *I succeed*; bel-
 lum gēro, *I wage war*
 glācies, -ēi, *f. ice*
 glādiātor, -ōris, *m. gladiator*
 glādīus, -ii, *m. a sword*
 glans, -ndis, *f. acorn*
 Gracchus, -i, *m. Gracchus, the name*
 of two brothers, both of whom
 brought forward Agrarian laws
 in Rome
 grācilis, -e, *slender, 60*
 Graecia, -ae, *f. Greece* [Greek
 Graecus, -a, -um, *adj. Grecian,*
 grāmen, -inis, *n. grass*
 grandis, -e, *large*
 grānum, -i, *n. a grain*
 grātia, -ae, *f. favour, in grātiam*
 rēdire, to be restored to favour;
 (abl. sing.) for the sake of;
 grātias āgēre, *to return thanks*
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, grateful*
 grāvis, -e, *heavy, severe*
 grāviter, *adv. heavily, severely,*
 seriously; hōc g. tūli, *I was*
 reared at this
 grāvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *weigh down*
 grex, grēgis, *m. flock*
 grus, grūs, *c. crane*
 gūberno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *govern*
 gusto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *taste*
 guttur, -ūris, *n. throat*

Hābēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *have*;
 hābēo īn ānimo, *I purpose*
 hābito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dwell*
 haerēo, haesi, haesum, 2, *stick*
 fast; (of the voice) *falter*

Hannībal, -ālis, *m. Hannibal*
 hāruspex, -īcis, *m. soothsayer*
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*
 haud, *adv. not (rarely with verbs*
 and adj. except haud scīo ān,
 haud dūbium est, &c.) [land]
 Helvētia, -ae, *f. Helvetia (Switzer-*
 Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj. Helvetian*
 herba, -ae, *f. herb*
 hercle! (*an oath used as an ex-*
 clamation) by Hercules, certainly
 hēri, *adv. yesterday*
 hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday*
 hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl. winter quar-*
 ters; hibernus, -a, -um, *adj. of*
 winter, wintry
 hic, *pron. see* Par. 103; hic...ille,
 the latter . . . the former, one . . .
 another; tribus hīs mensibus,
 within the next three months
 hic, *adv. here*
 hiemps, hiēmis, *f. winter*
 hilāris, -e, *adj. cheerful*
 hinc, *adv. hence, from this place*
 histōria, -ae, *f. history*; Nātūrālis
 h. the Natural History of Pliny
 histriō, -iōnis, *actor*
 hōdiē, *adv. to-day*
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*
 hōmo, -īnis, *m. man*¹
 hōnestus, -a, -um, *honourable (this*
 word never means "honest")
 hōnor, -ōris, *m. an honour, office*;
 in hōnōre est, it is held in honour
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*
 hordeum, -i, *n. barley*
 Hōrātius, -ii, *Horace*
 hortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. exhort*
 hortus, -i, *m. a garden*
 hostia, -ae, *f. a victim*
 hostis, -is, *m. the enemy*
 hūc, *adv. hither*; often, though not
 perhaps with strict correctness,
 rendered in modern English,
 "here"

¹ Hōmo means a human being, and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of women: vir means a good or brave man.

hūmānītās, -ātis, *f.* courtesy, kindness
 hūmānītūs, *adv.* after the manner of men; (hence used of misfortunes) *aliquid ei h. accidit, he died*
 hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* human, gentle, courteous
 hūmilis, -e, *low, low-minded* (60)
 hūmus, -i, *f.* ground; hūmi, *on the ground*

I, imperative of *eo*

ibi, *adv.* there

ictus, -ūs, *m.* a blow; sub ictum venire, *to come within striking distance*

igitur, *conj.* therefore, then; differs from itaque in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)

ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*; tibi ignāro prōfui, *I helped you without your being aware of it*

ignāvē, *adv.* indolently

ignāvia, -ae, *f.* sloth, cowardice

ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful, cowardly*

ignēus, -a, -um, *adj.* fiery

ignis, -is, *m.* fire, *abl.* ignī (except in poets)

ignōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* ignorance

ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3, (*g. dat.*) pardon

illātūri, *see* Infēro

illē, (103) Alexander ille, *the great, well-known, &c., Alexander*

illēcēbrae, -ārum, *f. pl.* allurements

illūc, *adv.* thither

īmāgo, -inis, *f.* image, likeness

imbellis, -e, *unwarlike*

imber, -ris, *m.* (Abl. -i), shower

īmītor, -atus, 1, *v. dep.* imitate

immēmōr, *gen.* -ōris, *unmindful*

immortālis, -e, *adj.* immortal

immortālītās, -ātis, *f.* immortality

impār, *gen.* -āris, *unequal*

impāvidus, -a, -um, *fearless*

impello, -pūli, -pu'sum, 3, *impel*

impendeo, (*no Perf. or Sup.*) 2, *impend*

impērātor, -ōris, *m.* general

impēritus, -a, -um, (*g. gen.*) unskilful in

impērium, -iī, *n.* command, empire

impēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (*g. dat.*) give orders to; i. tibi frumentum, *I exact corn from you; foll. by ut* (143)

impētus, -ūs, *m.* attack, onset

impiger, -gra, -grum, *active*

implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *implore*

impōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, *impose* (a task, tribute, &c.) on, Par. 192

imprōbus, -a, -um, *adj.* dishonest, wicked, bad

imprūdēns, -ntis, *ignorant*; i. fēci, *I did it ignorantly*

imprudentia, -ae, *f.* ignorance, imprudence

in, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) into, towards; (*g. abl.*) in

inānis, -e, *idle, empty* [tion

incendium, -i, *n.* a fire, conflagra-

incendo, -di, -sum, 3, *set fire to, burn*

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* uncertain

incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *begin*

incōla, -ae, *m.* inhabitant

incōlo, -ui, -ultum, 3, *inhabit*

incōlūnis, -e, *safe*

incōlūnītās, -ātis, *f.* safety

inercō, -crēpui, -crēpitum, 1, *reproach*

incūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with*

indē, *adv.* thence, thereupon; indē ā pūcritiā, *even from boyhood*

Indi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Indians

indico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *point out*

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*

indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*

indulgēo, -si, -tum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *indulge*

industrius, -a, -um, *adj.* *industrious, busy*
 inĕo, -ivi or -iī, -itum, 4, *go into, enter, begin*
 inēptē, *adv.* (*in-aptē, unfitly*), *foolishly, without tact*
 inēptus, -a, -um, *silly*
 iners, -tis, *adj.* *helpless, sluggish*
 infāmia, -ae, *f.* *infamy*
 infāmis, -e, *adj.* *infamous*
 infectus, -a, -um, *unaccomplished*;
 rē infectā, (*abl. abs.*) *the affair being unaccomplished, i.e. with nothing done* (Par. 197)
 infeliciter, *adv.* *unluckily*; pugnātum est i. *we have been defeated*
 infēlix, -icis, *unfortunate, unhappy*
 infērior, -ius, *comp.* of infērus, *adj.* *lower, inferior*
 infēro, intūli, illātum, inferrē, 3, *v.* *irr.*; bellum i. tibi, *I declare war against you*
 infinitus, -a, -um, *adj.* *unbounded, infinite*
 infirmītas, -ātis, *f.* *weakness*
 infirmus, -a, -um, *infirm, weak*
 infrā, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *below*
 ingens, -ntis, *huge, great*
 ingēnium, -i, *n.* *disposition*
 ingratus, -a, -um, *displeasing, ungrateful*
 ingrēdior, -gressus sum, 3, *v.* *dep.* *enter*
 inhaerēo, -haesi, -haesum, 2, *stick fast*
 inhōnestus, -a, -um, *dishonourable*
 inimicitia, -ae, *f.* *enmity*
 inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*;
 inimicus, -i, *m.* *a private enemy*;
 opp. to hostis, *an enemy of the state*
 inīitium, -i, *n.* *a beginning*
 injicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast (fear, &c.) into, inspire*
 injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagreeable*
 injustē, *adv.* *unjustly*

injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*
 innōcens, -ntis, *innocent*
 innūmērus, -a, -um, *adj.* *innumerable*
 inops, -ōpis, *destitute*
 inquā, inquit, *see Defective Verbs, Appendix II., p. 215*
 insānio, -ivi, -itum, 4, *I am mad*
 insēquor, -sēcūtus, 3, *follow after, pursue*
 insīdiae, -arum, *f.* *snares, an ambush*; per insīdīas, *insidiously*
 insignis, -e, *distinguished, noted*
 insōlens, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) *unaccustomed to*
 institūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *I appoint, institute*
 instrūmentum, -i, *n.* *an instrument*
 instrūo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *arrange, draw up*
 insuētus, -a, -um, *untrained to* (*g. gen.*)
 insūla, -ae, *f.* *island*
 insum, -fui, -esse, *v. irr.* (*g. dat.*) *I am in*
 intellēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *understand, hear, perceive* (*less correctly intelligo*)
 intēr, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *between, among*;
 inter vēnandum, *during hunting*;
 haec inter sē rēpugnant, *these things are inconsistent with one another*
 interclūdo, -āsi, -āsum, 3, *I cut off*; i. hostes commēātu, *I cut off the enemy from supplies*
 interdum, *adv.* *sometimes*
 intērēo, -ivi or -iī, -itum, 4, *perish*
 intērest, -fuit, -esse, (*v. impers.*) *it makes a difference, it concerns*, Par. 329
 interficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *slay*
 intērītus, -ūs, *m.* *destruction*
 interjācēo, -jacui, 2, *lie between*
 interrōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask, question*

intersum, -fui, -esse, (*g. dat.*) *I am among, I take part in*
 intervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *interrupt, (g. dat.) (192)*
 intrā, *prep. (g. acc.) inside, within*
 intro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enter*
 intrōeo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *go into, enter*
 intūēor, -ītus -sum, 2, *v. dep. look upon, into*
 inūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, *brana*
 inūtilis, -e, *useless*
 inūtiliter, *adv. uselessly, in vain*
 invādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, *attack*
 invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, -ae, 4, *light on, find, find out* [*dat.*]
 invīdeo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *envy, g.*
 invīdia, -ae, *f. envy, ill-will*
 invīdus, -a, -um, *envious*
 invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force) in-vītus fēci, I did it unwillingly*
 ipsē, *see Par. 105, 308*
 ira, -ae, *f. anger*
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*
 irascor, irātus, 3, *v. dep. I am angry*
 irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst into, rush into*
 irrūo, -rūi, 3, *rush in*
 is, ēa, īd, *see p. 46; nōn is sum qui mentiar, I am not the man to lie, 303a*
 istē, -a, -ud, *pron. adj. that of yours; iste, that fellow*
 istūc, *adv. thither, where you are*
 itā, *in that way, thus, so*
 Itālīa, -ae, *f. Italy*
 itāque, *and so, thereupon; itāque, (differing from igitur), stands first in a clause*
 iter, itinēris, *n. journey, road, way; ex itinēre, on a journey*
 itērum, *adv. a second time, again*

Jācēo, -ūi, 2, lie (on the ground)
 jācio, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*

jactātio, -iōnis, *f. boasting*
 jacto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *boast*
 jactūs, -ūs, *m. cast, shot, fire; intrā telī jactum, within shot; sub jactu, under fire*
 jam, *adv. (1) already; (2) by this time; cum jam often means "just when," or "at last when"; non jam, no longer*
 jamdūdum or jampridem, *adv. this long while; j. cupio, I have been this long while desiring (324)*
 Jānuārius, -ia, -ium, *of January*
 jōcor, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *jest*
 Jōvis, *see Juppiter*
 jūbēo, jussi, jussum, 2, *I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid*
 jūcundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*
 Jūdaea, -ae, *f. Judaea*
 jūdex, -icis, *m. judge; mē judice, in my judgment, lit. I being a judge (Par. 197)*
 jūdicium, -i, *n. judgment*
 jūdico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *judge*
 jūgūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cut the throat of, butcher*
 jūgum, -i, *n. yoke; to be "sent under the yoke" was the sign of defeat*
 jungo, -nxi, -netum, 3, *join; ponte jungere, to bridge over*
 jūnior, -oris, *younger*
 Jūno, -ōnis, *f. Juno, a goddess*
 Jāppiter, Jōvis, *m. Jupiter*
 jūro, -āvi, ātum or jurātus sum, 1, *I swear; j. in lēgem, I swear (obedience) to a law; j. in verba eius, in accordance with his words*
 jūs, jūris, *n. right, law; jūrē, (adv. abl.) by right, rightly (182)*
 jusjurandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n. an oath*
 jussum, -i, *n. command*
 justē, *adv. justly; justius, more justly*
 justitia, -ae, *justice*
 justus, -a, -um, *just*
 jūvēnis, -is, *m. young man*

jūventūs, -ūtis, *f. youth*
juxtā, *prep. (g. acc.) near, hard*
by, next to

Lābīēnus, -i, m. Labienus
lābor, -ōris, *m. labour*
lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep. I glide,*
pass away, fall
lāc, lactis, *n. milk* [or *Sparta*
Lācēdaemon, -ōnis, *f. Lacedaemon*
Lācēdaemōnii, -ōrum, *m. the Lacedaemonians*

lācrīma, -ae, *f. a tear*
lācus, -ūs, *m. a lake*
laedo, laesi, -sum, 3, *hurt (g. acc.)*
laetitia, -ae, *f. joy*
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*
lāpis, -idis, *m. stone*
lāpidēus, -a, -um, *adj. of stone*
lātē, *adv. widely, wide*
lātēo, -ui, 2, *lie hid, lurk*
lātex, -icis, *m. water*
Lātinus, -a, -um, *Latin*
lātītūdo, -inis, *f. breadth*
Lātōna, -ae, *f. Latona, mother of*
Apollo and Diana

latro, -ōnis, *m. a robber*
latrōcīnium, -i, *n. robbery*
lātūnus, *fut. part. of fēro*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*
laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*
laus, laudis, *f. praise*
lāvo, -lāvi, lavātum, 1, *wash*¹
lectus, -i, *m. bed*
lēgātus, -i, *m. ambassador, lieutenant*
lēgiō, -iōnis, *f. legion, from 4,000*
to 6,000 men
lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *gather, read*
lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bequeath*
Lemnos, -i, *f. the isle of Lemnos*
lēo, leōnis, *m. lion*
Lēōnidas, -ae, *m. Leonidas*
lēpus, -ōris, *m. a hare*
Lesbos, -i, *f. Lesbos*
lēvis, -e, *light, fickle, empty*

lēx, legis, *f. law*
libenter, *adv. willingly*
liber, -bri, *m. book*
liber, -ēra, -ērum, *free; liberrima*
ōrātiō, very frank speech (61)
Liber, -ēri, *m. Liber, the god of*
wine
libērē, *adv. freely*
libēri, -ōrum, *m. pl. children*
libēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I free, de-*
liver (g. abl. of thing)
libertas, -ātis, *f. freedom, liberty*
libet (libuit and) libitum est, 2, *v.*
impers. (g. dat.) it pleases
Libya, -ae, *f. Africa*
licet, licuit and licitum est, licēre,
2, *v. impers. (g. dat.) it is law-*
ful, allowed; (used with Inf.; or
with Subjunct. with ut omitted)
licet omnes frēmant, *let them all*
murmur; N.B. after licet mihi
esse, the Adj. may either be dat.
(Par. 24), or attracted into the
Acc., to agree with me "under-
stood," licet mihi (mē) esse
beātum
Licīnius, -i, *m., Licinius*
lictōr, -ōris, *m. a lictor*
lignēus, -a, -um, *wooden*
lilium, -i, *n., lily*
lingua, -ae, *f. tongue, language*
liquet, liquere, 2, *v. impers. (Par.*
222) it is clear, evident
littēra, -ae, *f. a letter of the*
alphabet
littērae, -arum, *f. pl. letters, learn-*
ing, also an epistle, letter
litus, -ōris, *n. a shore*
Līvius, -i, *m. Titus Livius the his-*
torian, commonly called Livy
lōcus, -i, *m. a place*
longē, *adv. far, far off* [tance
longīnquātis, -ātis, *f. length, dis-*
longinquis, -a, -um, adj. long,
distant

¹ Also lautum and lōtum; this verb is never intransitive.

longitūdo, -dīnis, *f. length* [far
longius, *adv. comp. farther, too*
longus, -a, -um, *long*; nāves
longae, *ships of war*
lōquor, lōcūtus, 3, *dep. speak*
lūcescit (illuxit), lūcescere, 3, *v.*
impers. it becomes light
lūdo, -si, -sum, 3, *I play*
lūdus, -i, *m. play, game*
lūna, -ae, *f. the moon*
lūpus, -i, *m. wolf*
luscīnia, -ae, *f. nightingale*
lux, lūcis, *f. light, dawn*
lyra, -ae, *f. lyre*

Mācēdo, -ōnis, m. a Macedonian
mācer, -era, -crum, *lean*
mācūla, -ae, *f., spot*
māgis, *adv. (sup. maxīmē), rather,*
in a higher degree, more
māgister, -tri, *m. master, teacher*
māgistrātus, -ūs, *m. magistrate,*
magistracy
magnificus, -a, -um, *adj. magni-*
ficent; (*for superl. see Par. 68a*)
magnōpēre, *adv. greatly, earnestly*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*
mājestas, -ātis, *f. lit. "sovereignty";*
condemnāri mājestātis, to be
found guilty (on the charge) of
(impairing) sovereignty, i.e. of
treason (290)
māior, -ōris, *Par. 68*
mājores, -um, *m. pl. ancestors*
mālē, *adv. comp. pējus, sup. pessī-*
mē, badly, ill
mālēdictum, -i, *n. slander, curse*
mālēvōlus, -a, -um, *ill-wishing,*
malevolent (superl., Par. 68a)
mālo, mālui, mallē, *irr. v. I am*
more willing, I prefer, I had
rather (p. 130)
mālum, -i, *n. an apple*
mālum, -i, *n. evil*
mālus, -i, *f. an apple tree*
mālus, -a, -um, *bad, evil* [mission
mandātum, -i, *n. a charge, com-*

mānēo, -nsi, -nsum, 2, *remain*
mānifestus, -a, -um, *evident, mani-*
fest
mānīpūlus, -i, *m. a manipule*
mansī, *see mānēo*
mānus, -ūs, *f. a hand*
Mārathon, -ōnis, *f. Marathon*
Marcus, -i, *m., Marcus*; *see Crassus*
māre, -is, *n. sea (see terra)*
margārita, -ae, *f. a pearl*
mārīnus, -a, -um, *adj. of the sea*
marmor, -ōris, *n. marble*
Martius, -a, -un, *of March, p. 229*
māter, -tris, *f. mother*
mātēria, -ae, *f. materials, timber*
mātrīmōnium, -ii, *n. matrimony,*
duxit eam in mātrīmōnium, he
married her (always of man
marrying women, see nūbo)
mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe*
maxīmē, *adv. very greatly, especially*
maxīmus, -a, -um, *see Par. 68*
Maxīmus, -i, *m. Maximus, "the*
greatest"; see Fābius
mēdicīna, -ae, *f. medicine*
mēdicus, -i, *m. physician*
mēdītōr, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. meditate*
on, study
mēdius, -a, -um, *middle (of);*
mēdios in hostes, into the midst
of the enemy
mēlior, *neut. -ius, see Par. 68*
mēmīni, *v. def.; see p. 215*
mēmōr, -ōris, *mindful (g. gen.)*
mēmōrābilis, -e, *adj. memorable*
mēmōria, -ae, *f. memory, recollection*
mendācium, -i, *n. lie, falsehood*
mendāx, -ācis, *adj. lying, deceitful*
Mēnēnius, -ii, *m. Menenius Agrippa,*
author of the fable of the Belly
and the Other Members
mens, mentis, *f. mind*
mensis, -is, *m. month*
mentior, -ītus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *tell a lie*
mercātor, -ōris, *m. merchant*
mercēs, -cēdis, *f. pay, wage, re-*
ward

Mercūrius, -i, *m. Mercury*
 mēreo (also inēreo, mēritus, 2, *v. dep.*) -ūi, -itum, 2, *I deserve*; dē patria bēnē mēritus est, *he has deserved well of his country*
 mergo, mersi, mersum, 3, *plunge*
 mēridies, *m. mid-day*
 messis, -is, *f. harvest*
 mētallum, -i, *n. a metal*; mētalla, -ōrum, *n. pl. mines*; damnāri in *m. to be condemned to the mines.*
 mētior, mensus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *measure*
 mēto, messui, messum, 3, *reap*
 Mettus, -i, *m. Mettus, an Alban, torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius*
 mētūo, -ui, -itum, 3, *I fear*
 mētus, -ūs, *m. fear*
 mēus, -a, -um, *pronom. adj. my, mine*
 mi, *masc. voc. of mēus* [*part*
 migro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *migrate, de-*
 milēs, militis, *m. soldier*
 milia, (80) *n. pl. (sometimes for*
milia passuum. see passus)
 militāris, -is, *military*; rēs *m. military affairs, i.e. warfare*
 militiāe, *adv. in war*
 milliēns, *a thousand times*
 mille, milia, *see Par. 80*
 mīna, -ae, *f. threat*
 miuimē, *adv. by no means, in the least degree*; minūsus, -a, -um (68)
 mīnister, -tri, *m. a servant*
 mīnor, *see Par. 68*
 mīnuo, -ui, -itum, 3, *diminish*
 mīrandus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 mīror, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *wonder at, admire*
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*
 miscēo, miscui, mixtum, 2, *mix, throw into confusion*
 mīser, -ēra, -ērum, *wretched*
 mīserēor, -sertus or -sēritus, 2, *dep. pity (g. gen.)* (203)
 mīseret, mīseritum est, 2, *v. impers., see Par. 219*
 misēria, -ae, *f. misery*

mīserīcordia, *f. pity* [(*g. acc.*)
 mīseror, -atus, 1, *show pity to*
 mītesco, 3, *become mild*
 mītis, -e, *adj. mild*
 mitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *send*
 mōdestia, -ae, *modesty*
 mōdo, *adv. only*; sī, or dum, mōdo, *if, or provided, only*; mōdo nunc, *only just now*
 mōdus, -i, *m. measure, manner*; praeter mōdum, *beyond measure*; nullo modo, *in no way*; eiusmodi, *of that kind*
 moeniā, -ium, *n. pl. fortifications*
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
 mollīo, -ivi or -iī, -itum, 4, *soften*
 mollis, -e, *adj. soft, mellow*
 mōnēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *advise, warn*
 mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*
 monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *show, point out*
 mōnūmentum, -i, *n. monument*
 mōra, -ae, *f. delay*
 inorbus, -i, *m. disease*
 mōriōr, mōrtuus, 3, *v. dep. die (fut. part. mōritūrus, about to die)*
 mōror, mōrātus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*
 mors, -tis, *f. death*
 morsūs, -ūs, *m. bite*
 mortālis, -e, *adj. mortal*
 mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*
 mōs, mōris, *m. manner, custom*; mōres, -um, *pl. conduct, morals*; nōn nostri mōris est, *it is not (characteristic of) our custom*
 mōtūs, -ūs, *m. motion, movement*
 mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *move, affect*; bellum, or arma, mōveo, *I stir up or commence war*
 inox, *adv. soon*
 mūlier, -ēris, *f. woman, wife*
 mūltiplex, -plicis, *manifest*; *m. fētus, many young ones at a time*
 multītudo, -inis, *f. multitude*
 multo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *punish (with death, fine, &c.)*
 multus, -a, -um, *much, many*;

multa nox, *a late (hour of) night*; multum *adv.*, multum intērest, *it makes a great difference*; multo (*adv. with compar.*) (*by*) much; multo felīcior, (*by*) much more happy

Mummīus, -ii, *m. Mummius, the destroyer of Corinth*

mundus, -i, *m. the universe*

mūnificus, -a, -um, (68a) *liberal*

mūnimentum, -i, *n. a fortification*

mūnio, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *fortify*

mūnus, -ēris, *n. a gift, duty, function*

murmūr, -ūris, *n. murmur*

mūrus, -i, *m. wall*

mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *change*

Mycēnae, -ārum, *f. pl. Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times*

myrtus, -i and -ūs, *f. myrtle*

Nactus, *see nanciscor*

nam, *conj. for*; differs from enim in standing first in a clause

nanciscor, nactus and nactus, *inf. nancisci*, 3, *obtain (v. dep.)*

narro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *relate*

nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep. I am born*
N.B. nascor means "I am being born"; decem annos nātus est, *he is ten years old*

Nāso, -ōnis, *m. Publius Ovidius Naso, commonly called Ovid*

nātu, *adv. abl. by birth*

nātūra, -ae, *f. nature*

nātūrālis, *see histōria*

nātus, -a, -um, *part. and adj. born, aged*; vīginti annos n., *twenty years old*

nauta, -ae, *m. a sailor*

nāvālis, -e, *adj. naval*

nāvīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *sail*

nāvis, -is, *f. ship*

-nē, *enclitic, asks a question (100)*

nē, *conj. that not, lest (131); nē*

quīs, *that no one (294); (with perf. subj.) (do) not (129)*

Nēāpolis, -is, *f. (acc. -im), Naples*

nēc, *see nēquē*

nēcessārius, -a, -um, *adj. necessary*
nēcesse, *adv. necessarily*; (*used as adj.*) nēcesse est, *it is necessary, (foll. by acc. and inf. or ut)*

nēcō, nēcāvi, nēcātum, 1, *kill*

nēsandus, -a, -um, *unspeakable, monstrous*

nēfās, *n. indecl. wickedness*; *n. dictu, monstrous to relate!*

neglēgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *neglect*

nēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I deny*

nēgōtium, -i, *n. business*

nēmō, nullius, *m. nobody, no one*
Par. 92; *n. nōn gaudēbat, there was no one that did not rejoice*

Nēoptōlemus, -i, *m. Neoptolemus*

Neptūnus, -i, *m. Neptune*

nēquam, *indecl. adj. comp. nēquior, sup. nēquissimus, worthless*

nēquē, or nēc, *conj. and not*; when repeated, *neither...nor*

nēquēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, -īre, 4, *I am unable, cannot; imperf. nēquibam; fut. indic. nēquibo; pres. part. nēquiens, gen. nēquēuntis*

nēquiquam, *adv. in vain*

nēquissimus, *see nēquam*

Nēro, -ōnis, *m. Nero*

nesciō, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *I am ignorant of, do not know*; nesciō an ventūrus sīt, *i.e. nesciō (utrum afūtūrus sit) an (pōtius) ventūrus sīt, I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he will rather come, i.e. I think he will come, Par. 302*

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj. (gen. sing. -ūs, dat. -ī), neither of two, see Par. 85*

nēve, *adv. or not, nor*; or (*after neg.*) ne affirmāvēris nēvē nēgāvēris, *say neither 'yes' nor 'no'*

nīdus, -i, *m. a nest*

nīger, -gra, -grum, *black*
 nīhil, or nīl, *n. indecl. nothing*;
 (from nīhīlum) nīhīl te fācio, *I*
esteem you of no account; nīhīlo
 minūs, *none the less* (277)
 Nīlus, -i, *m. the Nile, a river in*
Egypt
 nī, *conj. a form of nīsi*
 nīmīs, *adv. too, too much*
 Nīōba, -ae, *f. Niobe*
 nīsī, *conj. if...not, unless (has the*
same constr. as sī, 125, 293-5);
after nihil and quid, nīsī means
"but" or "except," and has the
same constr. as quam (62)
 nītor, nīsus and nixus, 3, *strive*
 (143)
 nīx, nīvis, *f. snow*
 nō, nāvi, nātum, 1, *swim*
 nōbilis, -e, *adj. distinguished,*
noble
 nōcēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *hurt*
 nōlo, nōlūi, nolle, *v. irreg. I am*
unwilling, I do not wish; nōi
 vēnīre, *do not come*; idem nōle,
to dislike the same thing, p. 128
 nōmen, -īnis, *n. name*
 nōmīno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *name*
 nōn, *adv. not*
 nondum, *adv. not yet*
 nōnne? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "yes"; sometimes a conj.
whether, Par. 135
 nonnullus, -a, -um, *adj. some*
 nosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3, *I gain*
knowledge of; hence *perf. nōvi, I*
have gained knowledge of; i.e. *I*
know
 noster, -stra, -strum, *pronom. adj.*
our, ours; nostri often means
"our men"; nostri is also gen.
of nōs (93), and nostrum *part.*
gen.
 nosti for nōvisti, *see nosco*
 nōta, -ae, *mark, stigma*
 nōtus, -a, -um, *known*
 nōvus, -a, -um, *adj. new*

nox, noctis, *f. night* [*jurious*
 noxiūs, -a, -um, *adj. hurtful, in-*
 nūbēs, -is, *f. cloud*
 nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3, *she marries*
(g. dat.); *not used of men marry-*
ing; *see mātīmōnium*
 nullus, -a, -um, *adj. no, none*; *gen.*
sing. -iūs, dat. -ī, (85)
 num? *interr. adv. expects the*
answer "no"; (sometimes conj.)
whether, Par. 135
 nūmēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I count*
 nūmērus, -i, *m. number*
 Nūmīda, -ae, *m. a Numidian*
 nunc, *adv. now, at the present time*
 nunquam, *adv. never*
 nuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring word*
 nuntius, -i, *m. messenger*
 nūper, *adv. lately*
 nūtrio, -īvi and -īi, -itum, 4, *nourish*
 nux, nūcis, *f. nut*

Ōb, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of, in*
front of
 obdormio, -īvi, -itum, 4, *fall asleep*
 obēdio, -īvi and -īi, -itum, 4, (*g.*
dat.) *obey*
 ōbēo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *I meet,*
esp. meet death, I die
 oblātus, *see offēro*
 oblectātio, -iōnis, *f. delight*
 oblīno, -lēvi, -litum, *besmear, defile*
 obliviscor, -lītus, 3, *dep. forget*
(g. gen.) 203
 obscūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *darken,*
 obscūrus, -a, -um, *obscure, dark*
 obsēcro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *beseech*
(foll. by ut) [*respect*
 obsevo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I observe,*
 obses, -īdis, *m. hostage*
 obsīdeo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2, *block-*
ade, besiege
 obsīdio, -ōnis, *f. a siege, blockade*
 obsto, -stīti, -stītum, 1, *oppose,*
prevent (g. dat.); *nothing prevents*
your coming, nihil obstat (tibi)
 quōmīnus vēnias

obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, *bind (by oath)*
 obsun, obfui or offui, ōbesse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure*
 obtempero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *comply with, obey (g. dat.)*
 obtineo, -tinuei, 2, *keep, hold*
 occasio, -ōnis, f. *opportunity*
 occidens, -tis, m. *the west, the setting (sun)*
 occido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3, *fall; occidit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occidimus, we are undone*
 occido, -cidi, -cīsum, 3, *slay, kill*
 occipio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *seize upon*
 occūlo, -cūlui, -cultum, 3, *hide*
 occumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, *fall down*
 oceānus, -i, m. *the ocean*
 oculū, -i, m. *eye*
 ōdi, ōdisse, v. dep. *haste; see p. 215; ōdium, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi ōdio (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)*
 odor, -ōris, m. *a smell, scent*
 offero, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irreg. *I present*
 olim, adv. *formerly*
 ōmen, -īnis, n. *an omen* [drop
 omitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *omit*
 omnino, adv. *altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nōn bonus, not at all good; 2, nōn o. bonus, not altogether good*
 omnis, -e, *all, the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.)*
 ōnus, -ēris, n. *a load, burden*
 ōpera, -ae, f. *pains, labour; hīs ōperam do, I pay attention to these things* [tion
 ōpinio, -ōnis, f. *opinion, expectation*
 oportet, -uit, 2, v. impers. *it behoves, is necessary; oportuit tē tacēre, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)*

oppidum, -i, n. *town*
 oppōno, -ōsui, -itum, 3, *I set against; oppōno me tibi, I oppose you (192)* [power
 opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, *over-*
 oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *assault*
 optimus, (68) *best, excellent; optimē, adv. excellently* [sire
 opto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I wish, de-*
 ōpulentus, -a, -um, adj. *wealthy*
 ōpus, -ēris, n. *work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of*
 ōra, -ae, f. *the coast*
 ōrāculum, -i, n. *an oracle*
 ōrāre causam, *to plead a cause*
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. *an oration, speech*
 ōrātor, -ōris, m. *an orator*
 ordior, -orsus, 4, v. dep. *I begin*
 ordo, -īnis, m. *rank, order; ordinem equestrem, the order of the knights*
 ōrior, ortus, ōriri, 3, v. dep. *rise*
 orno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *adorn*
 oro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *entreat, pray; ōrāre causam, to plead a cause*
 ortus, *see orior*
 ōs, ōris, n. *mouth; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody*
 ōs, ossis, n. *bone*
 ōvum, -i, n. *egg*

Pāciscor, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), *make an agreement*
 paenē, adv. *almost*
 pālam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) *publicly, in the presence of*
 Pallās, -ādis, f. *Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva*
 pallium, -ii, n. *a cloak*
 pando, pandi, passum, 3, *lay open; passo crīne, with dishevelled hair*
 pānis, -is, m. *bread*
 pāpāver, -ēris, n. *poppy*
 pāpilio, -ōnis, m. *butterfly*
 par, pāris, *equal; non est solvendo par, he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent*

pārātus, -a, -um, *adj. prepared*,
 p. ad pugnandum, *p. to fight*
 parco, pēperci, parcitum or par-
 sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *spare*; paucis
 parsum est, *few were spared*
 pārēns, -ntis, *c. parent*
 pārēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *obey*
 pārīo, pēpēri, partum, 3, (*g. acc.*)
bring forth, give birth to
 pārīter, *adv. equally*
 pārō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *prepare, get*
 pars, -tis, *f. part*
 parsum, *see parco*
 partior, -itus, 4, *dep. share, divide*
 partus, -ūs, *m. birth*
 parum, *adv. too little; used for*
"not"; (used as a noun g. part.
gen.) p. virium, too little strength
 parvus, -a, -um, *small, little*
 pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3, *feed*; oves
 pascebantur, *sheep were grazing*
 passus, -ūs, *m. a pace (about 5 feet)*;
 mille passūs, *a mile*
 pastor, -ōris, *m. shepherd*
 pāteo, -ūi, 2, *extend; it extends for*
ten miles, pātet in foll. by acc.
 pāter, -tris, *m. father*
 pātiēns, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) *patient (of)*
 pātīenter, *adv. patiently*
 pātior, passus, 3, *endure, suffer*
 patres, -um, *m. pl. Fathers, a name*
given to the Roman Senators
 patriā, -ae, *f. a native land, country*
 patrimonium, -ii, *n. patrimony*
 paulisper, *adv. for a short time*
 paucus, -a, -um (*mostly pl.*) *few*
 pauper, -ēris, *poor*
 paupertas, -ātis, *f. poverty*
 pāvidus, -a, -um, *fearful*
 pāvo, -ōnis, *m. peacock*
 pāvor, -ōris, *m. terror, trembling*
 pax, pācis, *f. peace*
 peccātum, -i, *n. fault*
 pecco, -avi, -atum, 1, *err, sin*
 pēctnīa, -ae, *f. money, sum of money*
 pēdēs, -itis, *m. foot-soldier*
 pēditātus, -ūs, *m. infantry*

pejor, *see Par. 68*
 pēlāgus, -i, *n. sea*
 pellis, -is, *f. skin (of animals)*
 pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3, *drive*
 pendo (page 209) *hang, weigh,*
value (283)
 pēnēs, *prep. (g. acc.) in the hands of*
 penna, -ae, *f. feather, wing; (cf*
fishes) jin
 pēr, *prep. (g. acc.) through, by means*
of; per dolum, treacherously
 percipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *perceive*
 percussio, -iōnis, *f. striking; p.*
dīgītōrum, the snapping of one's
fingers
 perdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *destroy*
 perdōmo, -ūi, -itum, 1, *thoroughly*
tame, subdue
 pērō, -iī or -iīvi, -itum, 4, *perish*
 perfectus, -a, -um, *adj. finished,*
perfect
 perfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*
irr. endure
 perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *perform*
 perfidia, -ae, *f. perfidy*
 perfidus, -a, -um, *perfidious,*
treacherous
 Pēriclēs, -is, *m. Pericles*
 pēricūlum, -i, *n. danger* [*gen.*]
 pērītus, -a, -um, *adj. skilful in (g.*
per ēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, I read
through
 permagnus, -a, -um, *very great*
 permōvēo, -mōvi, -inōtum, 2, *rouse,*
stir
 permulti, -ae, -a, *very many*
 pernīciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*
 perpētūsus, -a, -um, *adj. continual*
 perrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst*
through
 Persā, -ae, *m. a Persian*
 persaepe, *adv. very often*
 perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *see*
through, discern
 persuādēo, -āsī, -āsum, 2, (*g. dat.*)
persuade (143); persuāsum est
mihi, I am persuaded

pertaesum, *see* taedet
 perterreo, -ēre, -iī, -itum, 2, *alarm*
 pertimesco, -timui, 3, *become fearful*
 pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *arrive*
 perversus, -a, -um, *wilful, perverse*
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*
 pessimus, *see* Par. 68
 pestis, -is, *f. plague*
 pēto, -ivi & -iī, -itum, 3, *seek*
 Phaëthon, -ontis, *m. Phaëthon, a son of Apollo the Sun-god*
 Phidiās, -ae, *m. Phidias, an Athenian sculptor (1st decl.)*
 Philippus, -i, *m. Philip (of Macedonia)*
 Philoctētēs, -ae, *m. Philoctetes*
 philōsōphīa, -ae, *f. philosophy*
 philōsōphus, -i, *m. philosopher*
 Phoebus, -i, *m. Phoebus Apollo, the Sun-god; Phoebus -a, -um, adj. belonging to Phoebus Apollo*
 piger, -gra, -grum, *slothful*
 pigēt, piguit and pigitum est, pigere, 2, *v. impers. it vexes*
 pingo, -nxi, -pictum, 3, *I paint, embroider*
 pinguis, -e, *fat*
 pinna, *see* penna
 pinus, -ūs and -i, *f. pine-tree*
 pīrum, -i, *n. a pear*
 pīrus, -i, *f. a pear-tree*
 piscātor, -ōris, *m. fisherman*
 piscis, -is, *m. a fish*
 plācēo, -iī, -itum, 2, *g. dat. please; placuit, or placitum est, nobis venire, to come pleased us, i.e., we resolved to come*
 placet, -uit or -itum est, -ere, 2, *v. impers. it pleases*
 placīdus, -a, -um, *adj. quiet*
 plānē, *adv. altogether*
 planīties, -iei, *f. level space*
 planta, -ae, *f. a sprout, plant*
 Plāto, -ōnis, *m. Plato*
 plebs, plēbis, *f. the common people*
 plēnus, -a, -um, *full, g. gen. or*

abl.; vīno plēnus, filled with wine, i.e. intoxicated
 plērique, plēraeque, plērāque, *most plerumque, adv. for the most part*
 Plīnius, -iī, *m. Pliny*
 plūit, plūit or plūvit, pluere, 3 *v. impers. it rains*
 plūrimus, *see* Par. 68
 plūs, -ūris, *more; (neut. pl. often used as noun) he spoke no more, nec plūra dixit, see* Par. 72
 poenitentia, -ae, *f. penitence*
 poena, -ae, *f. penalty; dare poenas (pl.) culpaē, to pay the penalty of a fault*
 pocnitet, -ituit, -itēre, 2, *v. impers. it repents (me), see* Par. 219
 pōēta, -ae, *m. poet*
 pollex, -icis, *m. thumb (with which the lyre was twanged)*
 pollicēor, -itus, 2, *promise (280)*
 Pompēius, -ēī, *m. Pompey, the rival of Caesar*
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*
 pondus, -ēris, *n. weight*
 pōnē, *prep. (g. acc.) behind*
 pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, *place, lay aside*
 pons, -ntis, *m. a bridge*
 pontifex, -icis, *m. a high priest*
 Pontius (Pilātus), -i, *m. Pontius Pilate*
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*
 porta, -ae, *f. a gate*
 porto, -avi, -atum, 1, *carry*
 portus, -ūs, *m. harbour*
 Pōrus, -i, *an Indian king conquered by Alexander the Great*
 posco, poposci, 3, *demand*
 possum, pōtui, posse, *v. irreg. I am able, can (see pp. 126, 127)*
 post, *prep. (g. acc.) after; adv. (313) multis post annis, many years afterwards (N.B. never used like the conj. postquam)*
 postea, *adv. afterwards*

postis, -is, *m. door-post*
 postpōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3,
place after (g. acc. and dat.)
 postquam, *conj. when, after*
 postrēmus, *see Par. 69*
 postūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I demand*
 pōtens, -entis, *adj. powerful*
 pōtentia, -ae, *f. power*
 pōtestas, -ātis, *f. power, authority*
 pōtior, -itus, 4, *v. dep. (g. abl.)*
I make myself master of, obtain
 pōtius...quam, *rather...than; vel*
 pōtius, *or rather (used when a*
writer slightly corrects his own
statement)
 prae, *prep. (g. abl.) before, in com-*
parison with, by reason of, see
Par. 178
 praebēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *I exhibit,*
afford; p. exemplum, set an
example; p. fructum, put forth
fruit
 praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*
 praeceptum, -i, *n. precept, instruc-*
tion, lesson [*famous*
 praeclārus, -a, -um, *renowned,*
 praeda, -ae, *f. booty*
 praedium, -i, *n. farm*
 praeeō, -īvi or -īti, -itum, 4, *I go*
before; p. verba, dictate words
 praefero, -tūli, -lātum, *prefer*
 praeficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *set in*
command over (acc. and dat.)
 praemitto, -mīsi, -misum, 3, *I*
send on before
 praemium, -i, *n. reward*
 praesens, -entis, *present; prae-*
sente[m] eum laudāvi, I praised
him in his presence
 praesidium, -i, *n. guard, garrison*
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*
 praesum, -fūi, -esse, *v. irreg. (g.*
dat.) I am before, at the head
of [*yond*
 praetēr, *prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-*
 praetērēo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *v.*
irreg. pass by

praetērītus, -a, -um, *past*
 praetor, -ōris, *m. the praetor*
 praevēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4,
anticipate
 prāvus, -a, -um, *perverse, depraved*
 prēmo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I press*
 prētium, -i, *n. price, reward*
 primārius, -a, -um, *adj. first rate,*
eminent
 primo, *adv. at first*
 primus, -a, -um, *first (71)*
 princeps, -ipis, *adj. and noun, first*
in rank, chief, emperor
 principātus, -ūs, *m. sovereignty*
 prior, -ōris, *superior, before (71)*
g. abl.
 pristīnus, -a, -um, *adj. former,*
olden
 prius, *adv. sooner, before*
 priusquam, *conj. until, before,*
sooner than [*behalf of*
 pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on*
 probē, *adv. rightly, properly*
 prōbitās, -ātis, *f. honesty, integrity*
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest, upright*
 prōcella, -ae, *f. storm*
 prōcērēs, -um, *m. pl. nobles*
 prōcērus, -a, -um, *tall*
 prōdītor, -ōris, *n. traitor*
 prōdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3, *I hand*
down
 prōduco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *bring for-*
ward
 proelium, -i, *n. battle*
 prōfecto, *adv. assuredly, indeed*
 prōfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*
irreg. extend
 prōficiscor, -fectus, 3, *dep. set out*
 prōfundus, -a, -um, *adj. deep*
 prōgigno, -gēnui, -gēnītum, 3,
bring forth, give birth to
 prōgrēdiōr, -gressus, 3, *v. dep.*
advance
 prōhibēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *hinder, pro-*
hibit, keep off
 prōlēs, -is, *f. offspring*
 prōmissum, -i, *n. a promise*

prōmissus, -a, -um, *hanging down, long (of hair)*
 prōmitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *promise*; p. mē ventūrum, *I promise to come (never p. vñire)* (280)
 promptus, -a, -um, *ready*
 prōpē, *prep. (g. acc.) near*
 prōpē, *adv. near at hand, nearly*;
 p. ābest a nōbīs, *he is close to us*
 prōpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *hasten*
 prōpinquus, -a, -um, *adj. near*
 proptēr, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of*; more rarely, *near* (183)
 prōpulso, -avi, -atum, 1, *repel*
 Prōserpina, -ae, *f. Proserpine*
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *prosperous*
 prōsum, -fui, *prodesse, (g. dat.) I am of use*; non prōdest hōc dicēre, *it is of no use to say this* (191)
 prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum, 3, *extend*
 prout, *conj. according as*
 prōvidēo, -vidi, -vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*
 prōvidus, -a, -um, *provident, foreseeing*
 prōvincia, -ae, *f. a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"*
 prōvoco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *challenge, provoke*
 proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last* (Par. 69)
 prūdēns, -ntis, *prudent*
 prūdētia, -ae, *f. knowledge, prudence*
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*
 pūdet, -nit, or pūditum, -ēre, 2, *v. impers. it shames* (Par. 219)
 pūelia, -ae, *f. girl*
 pūer, -ēri, *m. boy*
 pūcēritia, -ae, *f. boyhood*
 pugna, -ae, *f. battle*
 pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight*
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*
 pulli, -ōrum, *m. pl. chickens*

pūmex, -icis, *m. pumice-rock*
 Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*
 pūnio, -ivi and -iī, -itum, 4, *punish*
 pūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think*
 putresco, 3, *putrefy*
 Pygmālion, -ōnis, *m. Pygmalion*
 Pythāgōras, -ae, *m. Pythagoras*

Quadringenti, see Par. 81

quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum, 3, *seek, ask*; quaerēbam inēcum, *I was enquiring with myself*; I asked him why, &c., quaesivi, āb, ē, or dē, eo cūr, &c.
 quaestūs, -ūs, *m. gain, profit*
 quālis, -e, *pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as*
 quam, *conj. or adv. than* (62) (*aft. comp.*); how, quam turpe est! *how base it is! as, nōn tam valīdus est quam frāter eius, he is not so strong as his brother*; quam cēlerrimē, *as quickly as possible* (327); quam quī, or ut (319)
 quamdū, *conj. as long as*
 quamquam, *conj. although (mostly with indic.)* (323)
 quamvis, *conj. however much, although (with subjunctive)* (323)
 quando? *interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions* (156)
 quantus, -a, -um, *adj. how great a; tantus...quantus, so great a...as; (used as a Noun) quantum pecūniae, as much (of) money; adv. how much; quantum intērest, how great a difference is there! quanti? at how great a price? see Par. 283, 284*
 quārē? *interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?*
 quartus, *see Par. 81*
 quāsi, *adv. as if, just as*
 quāterni, -ae, -a, *four a-piece* (314)
 quātio, *no perf., quassum, 3, shake, toss*
 quattuor, *see Par. 81*

-que, *conj. and*; *used to combine two words of similar meaning into one phrase*, sēnātus pōpūlusquē (37)

quercus, -ūs, *f. an oak* [plain

quēror, questus, 3 (*v. dep.*) com-

qui, *rel. pron.* (107); *often precedes (never follows) cum, and must then be rendered demonstratively*:

quod cum intellexissem, *when I perceived this*; qui after quam (319); qui *fol. by subjunct.* (298);

īdem qui (319); *see also* quo

quīā, *conj. because*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *pron.*

adj. (neut. pron. quiddam), a certain (310a); *cardo quīdam, a kind of hinge*; *see Eng. Vocab. "A"*

quīdem, *conj. or adv.* (67, 139)

on the one hand, it is true, indeed; quīdem...autem (*or vērō or sēd*), *on the one hand...but on the other hand*; nē...quīdem, *not even* (141); *q. sometimes merely emphasizes a word, e.g.*

nunc quīdem rides, "Now you laugh (*but soon you will weep*)"

quid (*or quic*) quam, *see quisquam*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (*pron. adj.*) *any you please*;

quolibet tempore, *at any time he pleases (pron. neut. quidlibet)*

quīn (*i.e. quī nōn, or quō nōn*)

conj. that not, (with subj.) (145, 300) nēmo est quīn rideat, *there is no one that does not laugh*; *see also obstat and dūbium, with which it means "but that"*

quīquē, *see Par. 81*; quīquēns, *adv. five times*; quintus, *see Par. 81*

quīs, quae, quīd, *who?* *see Par. 110,*

111; (*after sī, nē, num*) *any one*

quisnam, quāenam, quīdnam? *emphatic inter. pron. who? which? what?*

quisquam, quaequam, quodquam (*pron. neut. quicquam*) *anyone (used in neg. and compar. sentences, and in questions that expect the answer "no")* (309)

quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, (*pron.*

neut. quidquē or quicquē) *each, every*; fortissimū quisquē, *each bravest man, i.e. all the bravest men*;

sūam quisquē dōmum

rēdiērunt, *they returned, each to his own home (where quisquē is*

not nom. to r., but in Apposition to the nom. to r.) (140, 310)

quisquis, quaequae, quodquod

(*adj.*), *whoever*; (*pron. neut.*)

quidquid or quicquid, *whatevēr*;

quidquid amīcōrum, *whatevēr (of) friends (part. gen.)*

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis (*pronom.*

neut. quidvis) *any you like*; nōn

cuiusvis est, *it is not every one's*

luck (310)

quō, *adv. (rel. and interr.) whither*

quo, *conj. and adv.* (1) quo citius,

ēo mēlius, *by how much the*

quicker, by so much the better;

(2) (*with compar.*) *in order that*

(303); quōcum (179)

quōd, *conj. because, that (sometimes*

fol. by subjunct., 293a)

quōdminus, *conj. that not, Par. 144*;

quīd obstat q. vēnias? *what*

prevents you from coming?

quōmodo? *in what manner? how?*

(*also used in dependent quest.*)

quondam, *adv. formerly*

quōniam, *conj. since*

quōquē, *see quisquē*

quōquē, *conj. also, too; (always*

after the word it modifies)

quōt, *indecl. adj. how many*

quōtidie (*more correctly spelt cottidie*),

adv. every day

quōtiens, *adv. how many times*;

quōtiens...tōtiens, *as many times as...so many times*

quōtus, -a, -um ? *what (in number)?*
hōra est ? *what o'clock is it ?*

quōtusquisque, *pron. q. est qui*
vēlit ! how few there are who
wish ! (sometimes in two words,
e.g. quōtus enim quisque)
quum, *an incorrect form of cum*

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, 3, shave

Rādīx, -īcis, *f. root*

rāpāx, -ācis, *adj. rapacious*

rāpidus, -a, -um, *rapid*

rāpiō, -iī, raptum, -ēre, 3, *seize*

rārō, *adv. seldom, rarely*

rārus, -a, -um, *adj. rare*

rātiō, -iōnis, *f. reason*

rātus, -a, -um, *thinking; see reōr*

rēcīpiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *take*
back; sē rēcipiunt in castra,
they retreat to the camp

rēcīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I read aloud*

rēcīlāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I cry shame,*
protest

rēcōrdor, -ātus, 1, *call to mind*
(gen., but more often acc.)

rēcīrō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *refresh*

rectē, *adv. rightly*

rectus, -a, -um, *adj. straight, right*

rēcūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recover,*
get back [fuse

rēcūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *object, re-*
reddo, reddidi, redditum, 3, restore,
render

rēdō, -iī, -itum, 4, *return*

rēdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3, *bring*
back

rēfēro, rētūli or rettūli, rēlātum, 3,
v. irreg. I bring back, report,
relate, reply; sometimes means
"refer;" dē hāc rē ad Patres rēlā-
tum est, a reference was made to
the Senate on this point

rēfert (or rē-fert) *it matters, is of*
importance (conjugated like fēro,
but impersonal); illud magni
rēferre reōr, I think that is of
great importance (329)

rēgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *cast up,*
or back

rēgīna, -ae, *f. a queen*

rēgiō, -ōnis, *f. region, district*

regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *reign*

regnum, -i, *n. a kingdom*

rēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I rule*

Rēgūlus, -i, *m. Regulus*

rēligiō, -ōnis, *f. religious scruple,*
īd rēligiōnī hābēo, I consider this
sacrilege, lit. for a religious
scruple (268) [poets, religio]

rēnūtiō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring back*
word

rēlinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3, *leave,*
quit

rēmīniscor, 3, *I remember (203)*

rēnōvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *make new*
again, restore

rēor, rātus, rēri, (*v. dep.*) *suppose,*
think

rēpēriō, reppēri, rēpertum, 4, *find*
(after search); sēe invēniō

rēplēo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2, *fill up*

rēs, rēi, *f. thing; rem bēnē gēro,*
I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, the
affairs (or fortunes) of Rome; r.
militāris, military matters; r.
fāmiliāris, one's household affairs,
property; r. frūmentāria, forage;
rē ipsa, or rē, in fact (adv. abl.)
rescindo, -scīdi, -scissum, 3, tear
open, or down; break down (a
bridge)

rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3, (*g. dat.*)
resist; mihi rēsistitur, I am
being resisted [gard

respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *re-*
respondēo, -di, -sum, 2, answer

responsum, -i, *n. answer*

rēs-publica, rēi-publicae, *f., the*
republic, the country, politics

restitūo, -ui, -ātum, 3, *restore*

resto, -stīti, 1, *remain; spēs unā*
restat, one hope remains

rēte, -is, *n. a net*

rētexo, -texui, -textum, 3, *unweave*

rētīneo, -tīnui, -tentum, 2, *keep back*
 rēus, -i, *m. the accused, defendant*;
 rēus factus sum, *I was accused*
 rēvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recall*
 rēverto, -ti, -sum, 3, *turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare: use rēvertor)*
 rēvertor, -versus, 3, *v. dep. I turn back, return*
 rex, rēgis, *m. king*
 Rhēnus, -i, *m. the Rhine*
 rhētōrica, -ae, *f. rhetoric*
 Rhōdānus, -i, *m. the Rhone*
 Rhōdus, -i, *f. Rhodes*
 rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2, *laugh; laugh at (g. acc.)*
 ripa, -ae, *f. bank, shore*
 rīsūs, ūs, *laughter, a laugh*
 rōbur, -oris, *n. strength*
 rōgātiō, -iōnis, *f. (see rōgo) a bill proposed to the people; ferre rōgātiōnem, to bring forward a bill*
 rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence rōgāre lēgem, to bring forward a bill*
 Rōma, -ae, *f. Rome*
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*
 Rōmūlus, -i, *m. Romulus*
 rōsa, -ae, *f. a rose*
 rūbeo, -ui, 2, *blush*
 rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*
 rūbēta, -ōrum, *n. pl. bramble-beds; rūbus, -i, m. bramble*
 rūdis, -e, *raw, ignorant (g. gen.)*
 rūpēs, -is, *f. a rock*
 rūs, rūris, *n. country; rūri (Par. 265) in the country*
 rusticus, -a, -um, *rustic*

Sācer, -era, -crum, sacred
 sācerdōs, -ōtis, *m. priest*
 saepē, *adv. often*
 saepēnūmēro, *adv. oftentimes*

saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, *hedge in, fence round*
 saepissimē, *adv. very often*
 saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, fierce*
 sāgacitās, -ātis, *f. keen scent, sagacity; sāgax, -ācis, sagacious*
 sāgitta, -ae, *f. an arrow*
 salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dance*
 salūber, -bris, -bre, *healthful*
 sālūs, -ūtis, *f. safety*
 salūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *salute*
 salvēo, -ēre, 2, *I am well; salvē, be well, i.e. good morning!*
 salvus, -a, -um, *adj. safe*
 Samnītes, -ium, *m. pl. the Samnites*
 sancio, sauxi, sanctum, 4, *enact: sancio nē quis absit, I enact that no one shall be absent*
 sānē, *adv. (lit. soberly, in sober earnest) certainly*
 sanguis, -inis, *m. blood*
 sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *heal*
 sānus, -a, -um, *healthy*
 sāpiens, -ntis, *wise; sāpiēter, adv. wisely*
 sāpiētia, -ae, *f. wisdom*
 sāpio, -ivi and -ii, 3, *savour of (g. acc.); am wise*
 sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, *patch, mend*
 sātis, *adv. enough, sufficiently: (used as a noun) sātis patriae dātum est, enough has been given to the claims of your country*
 saxum, -i, *n. rock*
 scēlus, -ēris, *n. crime*
 scēna, -ae, *f. the stage of a theatre*
 sciētia, -ae, *f. knowledge*
 scindo, scīdi, sciss: m, 3, *rend, tear*
 scīo, -īi or -īvi, -ītum, 4, *I know*
 Scīpio, -ōnis, *m. Scipio*
 scriba, -ae, *m. scribe, clerk*
 scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3, *write: s. lēges, I draw up laws*
 scriptor, -ōris, *m. a writer, author*
 scūtum, -i, *n. shield*
 Scythā, -ae, *m. a Scythian*

sē, *see* Par. 94, 218, 305, 306; sēcūm, *see* Par. 179.

sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous*; sēcundum, *prep. (g. acc.) following, in accordance with*

sēcūris, -is, *f. (acc. -im), axe*; the axes and rods (fascēs) were the signs of the consul's office

sēd, *conj. but (on the other hand)*; nōn solum...sed etiam, *not only... but also*

sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit*

sēdēs, -is, *f. seat, abode*

sēditio, -ionis, *f. rebellion, sedition*

sēgēs, sēgētis, *f. cornfield, harvest*

segnitēs, -ēi, *f. slothfulness*

sēmēl, *adv. once (for all)*

semper, *adv. always, ever*

senātorius, -a, -um, *senatorial*

senātus, -ūs, *m. the senate*

sēnectūs, -ūtis, *f. old age*

sēnex, sēnis, *m. old man*

sēnior, *see* Par. 69

sensus, -ūs, *m. a sense*

sententia, -ae, *f. opinion*

sentio, -si, -sum, 4, *feel, perceive*

sēpēlō, sēpēlivi and -ii, sēpultum, 4, *bury*

September, -bris, -bre, *of September*; *see* Par. 84; septuāgēsimus (81)

sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, *v. dep. follow*

sērēnus, -a, -um, *adj. clear*

sermo, -ōnis, *m. a discourse*

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3, *plant, sow*

sēro, *late*; sērīus, *too late*

serpens, -ntis, *f. serpent*

sertum, -i, *n. garland*

sērus, -a, -um, *late*

servio, -ii, -itum, 4, *I am a slave to, I serve (g. dat.)*

servitūs, -ūtis, *f. slavery*

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *watch, preserve*; s. fidem, *I keep my word*

servus, -i, *m, slave*

sēsē, *an emphatic form of sē*

seu, *conj. whether*; seu...sen,

whether...or; (not used like utrum an...in dep. sentences)

sēvērus, -a, -um, *adj. severe*

sī, *conj. if* (125); sī quis, sī quī, *if any man, any men* (294); *with pres. and imperf. subj.* (295)

sic, *adv. thus, so*

Sicilia, -ae, *f. Sicily*

sidus, -ēris, *n. star*

signum, -i, *n. a sign, signal*

silentium, -ii, *n. silence*

silva, -ae, *f. a wood* [66, 60]

similis, -e, *(g. gen. or dat.) like*,

simul, *adv. at the same time*; simul

...simul, *at once...and*

simulac, *adv. as soon as*

simulacrum, -i, *n. an image, statue*

simulatio, -ōnis, *f. a pretence*

simulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *pretend*

sine, *prep. (g. abl.) without*

singuli, -ae, -a, *one a-piece, one by one* (77, 314)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*

sino, sivi, situm, 3, *suffer*

sinus, -ūs, *m. a fold (of the garment, especially about the breast); pocket*

sitis, -is, *f. (acc. -im) thirst*; siti mōri, *to die of (lit. with) thirst*

sive, *conj. whether*; sive...sive, *whether...or, (not used like utrum...an in Dependent Questions)*; sive loquor, sive taceo, patri nōn placēo, *whether I speak or hold my tongue, I cannot please my father.*

socer, -ēri, *m. father-in-law*

socius, -i, *m. a partner, ally, companion*

Socratēs, -is, *m. Socrates*

sol, solis, *m. sun*

solēo, -ītus sum, -ēre, 2, *v. n. I am accustomed*

solitus, -a, -um, *customary*

Solōn, -ōnis, *m. Solon*

sollertia, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*

solum, -i, *n. ground, soil*

solum, *adv. only, alone*
 solum, -a, -um, *adj. gen. sing. -iūs, dat. -i, alone*
 solvo, solvi, solum, 3, *I loosen, pay; s. famem, I break my fast; impar solvendo sum, I am not equal to paying, i.e. insolvent*
 somnus, -i, *m. sleep*
 sonitus, -ūs, *m. a sound, noise*
 sons, sontis, *guilty*
 sonus, -i, *m., sound*
 Sōphoclēs, -is, *m. Sophocles*
 sopor, -ōris, *m. slumber*
 soror, -ōris, *f. sister*
 sors, -tis, *f. lot, fate*
 sortior, sortitus, 4, *dep. draw lots*
 Sparta, -ae, *f. Sparta*
 species, -ei, *f. appearance (182)*
 specto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *look at*
 spēcūlor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. I spy out*
 spēcus, -ūs, *m. cave*
 sperno, spēvī, spērtum, 3, *despise*
 spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I hope*
 spēs, -ei, *f. hope*
 spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *breathe*
 spēritus, -ūs, *m. breath*
 splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid, bright*
 splendor, -ōris, *m. brightness*
 spolia, -ōrum, *n. pl. spoils*
 spondēo, spēpōndi, sponsum, 2, *pledge, promise to pay, betroth*
 spontē (*adv. phrase*) spēā, tuā, &c., *of my, your, &c., own accord*
 stātim, *adv. immediately*
 statio, -ōnis, *f. a post, station*
 stātua, -ae, *f. statue*
 stātuo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *determine*
 stella, -ae, *f. a star*
 sterto, -tui, 3, *snore*
 stipendium, -ii, *n. (military) pay*
 sto, stēti, stātum, 1, *I stand, abide by (with abl. or in and abl.)*
 stāre spēmissis, *to abide by one's promises; ā Tullio stāre, to side with Tullius; magno spētio stat, it costs a great price*
 strēnūē, *adv. vigorously*

strēnūus, -a, -um, *vigorous (68b)*
 strepitūs, -ūs, *m. noise, din*
 struo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *pile up, construct*
 stūdeō, -ūi, 2, *I am eager, zealous*
 stūdiōsus, -a, -um, *adj. zealous, eager after (g. gen.)*
 stūdiūm, -ii, *n. zeal, a pursuit, study*
 stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*
 suādēo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, (*g. dat.*) *advise, persuade*
 suāvis, -e, *adj. sweet, delightful*
 sūb, *prep. (g. abl. or acc.) up to, under; (of time) about (180)*
 subēo, -ii, -itum (243), *go up to*
 sūbito, *adv. suddenly*
 sūbitus, -a, -um, *sudden*
 subsēquor, -cūtus, 3, *follow up*
 subsum, *no perf., v. irreg. I am under, amongst [dat.] help*
 subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, (*g. succēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, follow, turn out; res mīhi spēnē successit, the matter turned out well for me*
 Suēvi, -orum, *the Suevi*
 sufficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *suffice (g. dat.)*
 sum, *I am, p. 79, Par. 268, 142d*
 sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *take, assume*
 summus, -a, -um, (69) *highest, utmost; summā cēlērītātē, with all speed; summus mons, the highest part of the mountain*
 sūper, *prep. (g. acc. or abl.) over, upon, concerning (180)*
 sūperbia, -ae, *f. pride*
 sūperbus, -a, -um, *proud*
 spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *overcome*
 spēsum, -fui, -esse, *v. irreg. I remain over, survive (g. dat.)*
 spērus, -a, -um, *adj. upper (69)*
 spēpedito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *supply*
 supplex, -icis, *adj. suppliant (47, 48)*
 supplicium, -ii, *n. punishment*
 suprā, *prep. (g. acc.) above*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *superl. of sū-*
pērus, highest; (of time) last
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3, *rise*
 suscipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *under-*
take
 suspiciō, -iōnis, *f. suspicion*
 sustento, 1, *sustain*
 sūus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328); suis
impērat, he orders his (men) (34)
 Sýria, -ae, *f. Syria*

Tābernācŭlum, -i, n. tent
 tābesco, -ui, 3, *I decay*
 tāceo, -ŭi, -itum, 2, *I am silent*
 taedet, -dūit or pertaesum est, *v.*
impers. it disgusts, wearies (219)
 taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*
 tālentum, -i, *n. a talent, i.e. a sum*
of money, about £240
 tālis, -e, *of that sort, such*
 tam, *adv. so, to such a degree, such;*
tam prāvi mōres, such depraved
conduct; very, hōc tam longum
īter, this very long journey (228)
 tāmen, *conj. yet, however*
 tamquam, *conj. just as; tē t. thē-*
saurum hābēo, I consider you as
a treasure; t. sī consul esset,
just as if he were consul
 tandem, *at last; cur (or quid) tan-*
dem? why indeed? pray why?
 tantum, *adv. (so much and no more,*
hence) only; nōmīnē tantum
mīhī nōtus est, he is known to
me by name and no more; ūnus
tantum, only one
 tantus, -a, -tum, *so great (a); (as*
a noun) tantum pecūniae, so
much (of) money; (often used,
after a Pron., for "great") haec
tanta cālāmītās, this great calam-
ity; tanti, see Par. 283, 284; tan-
tum...quantum, as much...as
 tārdu, -a, -um, *slow*
 Tarquīniū, -i, *m. Tarquin*
 Tartāreū, -a, -um, *Tartarean, be-*
longing to Tartarus, the region

of the punishment of the wicked
dead
 Taurus, -i, *m. Mount Taurus*
 taurus, -i, *m. a bull*
 tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I cover*
 tellūs, -ūris, *f. earth, the goddess*
Earth
 tēlum, -i, *n. dart, missile [ness*
tēmērītās, -ātis, f. recklessness, rash-
tempestās, -ātis, f. tempest
 templum, -i, *n. temple*
 tempus, -ōris, *n. time; tempōri*
cēdere, to yield to circumstances
 tēnēo, -ŭi, tentum, 2, *I hold, re-*
tain
 tēner, -ēra, -ērum, *tender, soft*
 tēnuis, -e, *thin*
 tēnūs, *prep. (g. abl.) as far as;*
follows its case); verbo tēnus,
so far as words go
 tergum, -i, *n. back; terga dant*
mīhī, they flee before me
 terni, -ae, -a, *three a-piece (314)*
 tēro, trīvi, tritum, 3 *rub, waste;*
tempus tērimus, we are wasting
time
 terra, -ae, *f. the earth, land; terrā*
mārique, by sea and land (ad-
verbial local abl.)
 terrēo, -ŭi, -itum, 2, *terrify,*
frighten
 terror, -ōris, *m. terror, alarm*
 tertius, -a, -um, *see Par. 81*
 testāmentum, -i, *n. will, testament*
 testis, -is, *m. witness*
 testor, -ātus, 1, *testify*
 Thēmistoclē, -is, *m. Themistocles*
 Thrāx, Thrācis, *m. a Thracian;*
Thracum est, it is the mark of,
i.e. like, Thracians
 Tībērīns, -ii, *m. Tiberius, the name*
of the second Roman emperor,
Tiberius Caesar
 tignāriū, -a -um, *having to do with*
beams; fāber t. builder, carpenter
 tigris, -is, or -idis, *c. a tiger,*
tigress

tímĕo, -ŭi, 2, *fear*
 tímĭdus, -a, -um, *adj. timid*
 tímor, -ōris, *m. fear*
 tōlēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *endure*
 tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, *raise, take away; tollunt rĭsum, clāmōrem, &c. they raise a laugh, shout, &c.*
 Tōnans, -ntis, *m. the Thunderer, a name of Jupiter*
 tōnat, -ŭit, -āre, 1, *v. impers. it thunders*
 tonsor, -ōris, *m. barber*
 torrĕo, torruī, tostum, 2, *parch, roast*
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many; hae tot cālāmītātes, these numerous calamities*
 tōtiens, *adv. so many times*
 tōtus, -a, -um, *adj. whole, all (85)*
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*
 tracto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with*
 trādo, -didī, -dītum, 3, *deliver: tradītum est, it has been handed down*
 tradūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead across*
 trāho, -axi, -actum, 3, *I draw, drag*
 trājĭcio, (*also spelt trāicĭo*) *same as transjĭcio; (1) throw across, carry across, trājĭcio exercitum, I lead an army across; (2) carry myself across, i.e. cross, trājĭcio flūmen, I cross a stream*
 tranquillū, -a, -um, *adj. calm*
 trans, *prep. g. acc. across*
 Transalpĭnus, -a, -um, *beyond the Alps* [*over*]
 transĕo, -ii, -ītum, 4, (241) *cross*
 transĭgo, -fixi, -fixum, 3, *transjĭc*
 transjĭcio, *see trājĭcio*
 transversus, -a, -um, *turned across; t. dĭgĭtus or unguis, a finger's, or nail's breadth* [*piece*]
 trĕcĕni, -ae, -a, *three hundred*
 trĕcenti, -ae, -a, *three hundred*

trĕmo, trĕmui, tremĭtum, 3, *tremble*
 trĕs, tria, *see Par. 68*
 tribūnus, -i, *m. tribune*
 tribūo, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *give, assign*
 tribus, -ūs, *f. tribe*
 tribūtum, -i, *n. tribute*
 triennium, -i, *n. three years*
 trĭni, -ae, -a, *three (used with nouns like littĕrae) (318)*
 tristis, -e, *sad*
 triumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enjoy a triumph, i.e. a triumphal procession granted by the Romans to distinguished generals*
 Trōja, -ae, *f. Troy*
 Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*
 tū, *see p. 45*
 tūba, -ae, *f. trumpet*
 tūĕor, tūitus, 2, *v. dep. gaze on, guard, protect*
 Tullia, -iae, *f. Tullia*
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*
 tum, *adv. and conj. then during that time; cum...tum, not only ...but also (317)*
 tūmĭdus, -a, -um, *swelling, swollen*
 tunc, *adv. then, at that time*
 turba, -ae, *f. crowd*
 turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *disturb, throw into confusion; turbātum est, a riot was made*
 turbulĕntus, -a, -um, *turbulent*
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*
 turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful*
 turpĭtudo, -inis, *f. disgrace*
 turris, -is, *f. tower*
 tussĭs, -is, *f. (acc. -im, abl. -i,) cough*
 tuto, *adv. safely; -us, -a, -um, safe*
 tūus, -a, -um, *pron. adj. thy, thine*
 tyrannus, -i, *m. despot, tyrant*
 Ūbi, *adv. where*
 ulciscor, ultūs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *avenge*
 ullus, -a, -um, *adj. (gen. sing. -iūs, dat. sing. -i), any (85, 87, 305)*
 ulmus, -i, *f. elm*

ultimus, -a, -um, *see* Par. 69
 ultrā, *prep. g. acc. on the farther side of, beyond*
 Ūlyssēs, -is, *m. Ulysses*
 uncia, -ae, *f. inch*
 unda, -ae, *water*
 unguis, -is, *m. nail*
 unquam, *adv. at any time, ever*
 unā, *at the same time or place; together*
 ūnicē, *adv. singularly*
 ūnus, -a, -um, *adj. (74), one; in tē uno, in you alone (96); spēs quam ūnam habūi, the only hope I had; omnes ad ūnum, all to urbs, urbis, f. city [a man uro, ussi, ustum, 3, burn*
 ūt, *conj. that, in order that; often rendered by Eng. "to" (Par. 143); ut non (when to be used for nē) Par. 296; (with indic., "when," "as")*
 ūter, -rā, -rum (*gen. -rūs, dat. -rī*), *which of two? u. hōrum, which of these two (85)? ūterquē, utrāque, utrūmque, either; both; dux ūterquē (sing.) both leaders*
 ūtilis, -e, *useful*
 ūtilitās, -ātis, *f. utility, service*
 ūtīnam! *conj. O that, would that! (g. subj., see Par. 330)*
 ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep. I use (207)*
 utrūmque, *adv. on both sides*
 utrūm, *conj. whether (171, 174)*
 uxor, -ōris, *f. a wife*

Vācūus, -a, -um, *empty of (g. abl.)*
 valdē (*i.e. validē*) *adv. strongly, exceedingly*
 vālēo, -nī, -itum, 2, *I am in good health; vālēte, farewell!*
 vālētūdo, -inis, *f. health*
 vālīdus, -a, -um, *strong*
 vallis, -is, *f. a valley*
 vallum, -i, *n. the camp palisade composed of valli (see vallus)*

vallus, -i, *the stake borne by each Roman soldier for the formation of the vallum [hood*
 vānītās, -ātis, *f. emptiness, false-*
 vārius, -a, -um, *different, various*
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*
 vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lay waste*
 -vē, *conj. or (an enclitic form of vēl)*
 veetīgāl, -ālis, *n. a tax*
 vēhēmens, -ntis, *vehement, warm*
 vēhēmenter, *adv. vehemently, warmly; -issimē, very warmly*
 vēhēmentia, -ae, *f. vehemence, passion [ride)*
 vēho, -xi, -ctum, 3, *carry (pass. vēl, or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic discessus. vēl pōtius fūga, this departure or rather (if you will have strict correctness) flight; eren, hōc vēl pūero fācile est, this is easy even for a boy (141a); (with superl.) very, Stoicōrum vēl maximus est, he is the very greatest of the Stoics*
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj. swift*
 vēnātor, -ōris, *m. hunter*
 vendo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3, *sell*
 vēnēnātus, -a, -um, *poisoned*
 vēnēnum, -i, *n. poison*
 vēnērōr, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. reverence, worship*
 vēnīa, -ae, *f. pardon, dāre veniam ei, to pardon him*
 vēnīo, vēnī, ventum, 4, *I come*
 vēnōr, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I hunt*
 venter, -tris, *m. the stomach*
 ventūto, -āvi, 1, *v. freq. I come frequently*
 ventus, -i, *m. the wind*
 Vēnūs, -ēris, *f. Venus*
 vēr, vēris, *n. the spring*
 verber, -ēris, *n. lash, stripe*
 verbum, -i, *n. word; verbo tēnus, so far as words go*
 vērē, *adv. truthfully, accurately*
 vērēōr, -ītus, 2, *fear, reverence (301)*

Vergilius, -i, *m. Virgil*
 vērisimilis, -e, *adj. likely, probable*
 vēritās, -ātis, *f. truth*
 vēro, *conj. however, truly* (139a)
 versus, -ūs, *m. line, verse*
 versūs, *prep. with acc. towards*
(only of place or direction)
 vertēx, -icis, *m. top*
 verito, verti, versum, 3, *turn; in*
fūgam vertēre, to put to flight
 vērus, -a, -um, *true* [*abl.*]
 vescor, 3, *v. dep. feed on* (*g.*)
 vesper, -pēri, *m. evening*
 vespērascit, -āvit, -ascēre, *v.*
impers. evening approaches
 Vesta, -ae, *f. Vesta, the goddess of*
fire and the hearth
 Vestālis, -e, *Vestal, belonging to*
Vesta
 vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*
 vestimentum, -i, *n. clothing*
 vestiō, -ivi or -iī, -itum, 4, *clothe*
 vestis, -is, *f. clothing, garment*
 vestitus, -ūs, *m. clothing*
 vētus, vētēris, *old* (61)
 vexo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I vex, harass*
 vī, *see vīs*
 vīa, -ae, *f. way, road*
 victor, -ōris, *m. conqueror*
 victōria, -ae, *f. victory*
 victus, -a, -um, *pass. part. of vinco*
 vīcus, -i, *m. village*
 vīdēo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *see (in passive)*
seem, appear; quid tibi vīdētur?
What seems (good) to you, i.e.
what do you think?
 vīgīl, *gen. -īlis, watchful* (47)
 vīgīlia, -ae, *f. night watch; the*
night from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M. was
divided into four "watches"
 vīgīlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I watch, I*
am awake
 vilis, -e, *adj. cheap, common*
 vincio, -nxi, -nctum, 4, *bind*
 vinco, vīci, victum, 3, *conquer*
 vincūlum, -i, *n. a chain, bond*

vinētum, -i, *n. vineyard, vines*
 vīnum, -i, *n. wine*
 violā, -ae, *f. violet*
 violentia, -ae, *f. violence*
 vires, -ium, *f. pl. strength; see vīs*
 Virgilius, -ii, *see Vergilius*
 virga, -ae, *f. rod, stick*
 virgo, -inis, *f. maiden*
 vīr, vīri, *m. hero, man*
 virga, -ae, *f. twig, rod, stick*
 vīridis, -e, *green*
 virtūs, -ūtis, *f. valour, virtue*
 vīs, *irreg. see Par. 311; force,*
violence, power, efficacy; pl. vires,
strength; see also vōlo, p. 238
 viso, -vīsi, 3, (*v. freq.*) *come to*
see, visit
 vīsus, -ūs, *m. sight*
 vīta, -ae, *f. life*
 vitiōsus, -a, -um, *full of vice,*
vicious
 vītis, -is, *f. vine*
 vītium, -i, *n. vice, fault; dāre*
vītio, to impute as a fault (*Par.*
268)
 vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *avoid*
 vītūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, *revile*
 vīvo, vixi, victum, 3, *live*
 vix, *adv. scarcely*
 vōlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I fly*
 vōlo, vōlūi, vellē, *v. irreg. I wish,*
am willing; idem velle, to wish
for the same thing (*pp. 128-130*)
 vōluntas, -ātis, *f. a wish, will*
 vōluptas, -tātis, *f. pleasure*
 vōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *devour*
 vos, *see p. 45.*
 vox, vōcis, *f. a voice*
 Vulcānus, -i, *m. Vulcan*
 vulnēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *wound*
 vulnus, -ēris, *n. a wound*
 vulpēs, -is, *f. fox*
 vultur, -ūris, *m. a vulture*
 vultus, -ūs, *m. countenance, looks*
 Xēnōphōn, -ontis, *m. Xenophon*
 Xērxēs, -is, *m. Xerxes*

APPENDIX XI.

VOCABULARY—II.

ENGLISH INTO LATIN.¹

A (i.e. *a certain*), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (*pron. neut. quidam*); *a man said to me*, quīdam mīhī dixit; *he had a wonderful power of speaking*, erat hōmīni mīra quaedam dīcendi fācultas
ability (mental), ingēnium, -i, n.
able, to be, possum, pōtui, posse;
see Par. 229
abode, sēdēs, -is, f.
abound, ābundo, 1
about (around), circū (*g. acc.; also adv.*); (*concerning*) dē (*g. abl.*); (*nearly*) fēre
abore, sūper (*g. acc. and abl.*); *from above*, dēsūper, *adv.*
abroad (rest) fōris; (*motion*) fōrās
absent, to be, absum, āfui, ābesse;
absent, *adj.* absens, -ntis
abstain from, abstīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2 (*g. abl.*)
abundantly, ābūdanter
accept, accīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3
acceptable, grātus, -a, -um
accident, cāsus, -ūs, m.; *by accident*, cāsū; *forte (adv.)*
accompany, cōmītor, 1, *dep.*

accomplish, perfīcio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; *without accomplishing anything*, rē infectā
accord, of his, my own accord, sponte suā, meā, &c.
accordingly, itāque, īgītūr (*adv.*).
N.B. īgītūr should not stand first in a clause
account, on account of, propter, or ōb, *prep. g. acc.*; *on that account*, ōb id, īdeo
accurate (of things, not persons), accūratus, -a, -um
accusation, crīmen, -inis, n.
accuse, accūso, 1
accused (man), the, reus, -i, m.
accuser, accūsātor, -oris, m. [*dep.*
accustomed, to be, sōleo, sōlītus, 2,
Achilles, Achillēs, -is, m.
acknowledge, agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3
acquainted with, to be, *see to know*
acquire, to, ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3, *dep.*
acquit, absolvo, -vi, -ūtum, 3;
(with g. of charge, Par. 290)
acre, jūger, -eris, n.
across, trans (*g. acc.*)

¹ In this Vocabulary it has not been thought necessary to write the terminations of the regular Conjugations 1, 2, and 4, i.e. -āvi, -ātum; -ui, -itum; -īvi, itum.

act, an, factum, -i, n.; act, to, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3
Actium, Actium, -i, n.
active, strēnuus, -a, -um
actor, an, mīmus, -i, m.
adapted, aptus, -a, um
add, addo, -didi, -ditum, 3
address, allōquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
admire, admīror, 1, dep.
admiration, admīratio, -onis, f.
admit, admitto, -misi, -missum, 3;
(confess) confīteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
admonish, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2
adorn, orno, 1
advance, to, prōgrēdior, -gressus, 3, dep.; prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
advantage, commōdum, -i, n.
adverse, adversus, -a, -um; inīquus, -a, -um
adversity, rēs adversae
advice, consīlium, -i, n.; by my, his, advice, mē, eo, auctōre (197)
advise, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)
Aetna, Aetna, -ae, f.
affair, rēs, rei, f.
affection, cārītās, -ātis, f.; filial affection, piētās, -ātis, f.
affectionate, cārus, -a, -um; pius, -a, -um
affirm, assēvērō, 1; affirmo, 1
afflict, ango, 3; vexo, 1
afford, praebeo, -ui, -itum, 2
afraid, to be, timeo, 2; vereor. vēritus, 2, dep. (constr. Par. 301)
Africa, Afrīca, -ae, f.
after, post (g. acc.): after (conj.), postquam, (1) foll. by perf., except where (2) the interval is defined; (1) after he had come, postquam vēnit; (2) ten days after he had come, decimo die postquam vēnerat
afterwards, postea; a few days afterwards, paucis post diēbus (313)
again, rursus, (itērum, a second

time); again and again, itērum atque itērum
against, contrā, adversus, in (all g. acc.); he was sent against the enemy, missus est adversus hostes; against the laws, contrā jūs; against one's will, invītus, -a, um; she came a. &c. invita vēnit
Agamemnon, Āgāmēmnon, -ōnis, m.
age, aetās, ātis, f.; old age, sēnectās, -ūtis, f.; age, an, saeculum, -i, n.
Agésilas, Āgēsīlās, -i, m.
ago, ābhinc (with acc. or abl.): two years ago, ābhinc biennio, or biennium
agree, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (foll. by dat., or cum)
agreeable, jūcundus, -a, -um
agreement, consensus, -ūs, m.
Ah! interject. O! foll. by acc.; Ah, the lucky fellow! O felicem hominem!
aid, auxīlium, -ii, n.; aid, to, subvenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
air, aēr, aēris, m.
Ajax, Ajax, -jācis, m.
alas! heu! or ēheu!
Alban, Albānus, -a, -um
Alexander, Alexander, -dri, m.
alliance, sociētās, -ātis, f.
alien, āliēnus, -a, -um
alike, pāriter
alive, vīvus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e; (all) men, omnes; from all sides, undīque; all the best citizens, optīmus quisquē cīvium; all the food we had, was consumed, quidquid cībī nobīs fuērat, consumptum est
allow, sino, sīvi, sītum, 3
allure, allīcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3
ally, socius, -i, m.
almost, paenē, fērē
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um (85); Cato alone thought otherwise, Catōni ūni ālīter vīsum est

along (*prep.*), per (*g. acc.*)
Alps, Alpes, -ium, f. pl.
already, jam
also, (1) *etiam*, mostly before, (2) quōquē, always after, the word modified; not only...but also, nōn solum...sed *etiam*, or, cum...tum
altar, āra, -ae, f.
altogether, omnino
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.
ambush, insīdiae, -arum, f.
amiss, something amiss has happened to him, ālīquidei hūmānitus accidit
among, inter (*g. acc.*); among the Romans, apud Romanos; they are fighting amongst one another, inter sē pignant
ancestors, māiores, -um, m. pl.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um; priscus, -a, -um; vētus, -ēris; among the ancients, apud antiquos
and, et; atquē; -quē (Par. 37); and no one, never, nothing, &c., nec quisquam, unquam, quidquam, &c.
anger, ira, -ae, f.; in or with a., irācundē, sumina irā, or cum irā (Par. 276)
angry, to be, irascor, irātus, 3, dep.; angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, ānimal, -ālis, n.; wild animal, fēra, -ae, f.
announce, nuntio, 1
annually, quōtanniis
another, ālius, -a, -ud; the other, alter, -ēra, -ērū, (Par. 86)
answer, to, respondeo, -di, -nsum, 2 (*g. dat. of pers.*); answer, an, responsum, -i, n.; to make answer, respondēre; I was answered, responsum est mīhī
Antony, Antōnius, -i, in.
any, any one (in neg. compar. and interrog. sentences), quisquam or

ullus (309); (with num, sī, nē) quis (294); any (you please), quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, (*pron. neut.* quidlibet); the enemy can attack us at any time (they please), quōlibet tempore
anywhere, usquam
apiece, (*trans. by distributive numeral*, see Par. 77), he gave us three denarii apiece, nobis ternos denarios dedit
Apollo, Apollo, -īnis, m. [-ui, 2
appear, videor, vīsus, 2; appāreo, appearance, spēcies, -ei, f.
appease, plāco, 1
apple, pōmum, -i, n.; mālum, -i, n.
appoint, constituo, -ui, -ūum, 3
approach, to, ādeo, -ii, -itum, (*fol.* by acc.); accēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, (*fol.* by ad); an, āditus, -ūs, m.
approve, prōbo, 1; a man of approved excellence, vir spectātae (or, more often, -ā) virtūtis (or -ē)
apt, aptus, -a, -um
Archimedes, Archimēdēs, -is, m.
ardour, ardor, -ōris, m.
Argos, Argi, -ōrum, m.
Arion, Arion, -ōnis, m.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, m.
arise, ōrior, ortus, 4, dep.; (from bed, seat, &c.) surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3
Aristippus, Aristippus, -i, m.
arm, an, brāchium, -i, n.; arm, to, armo, 1
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms (military), arma, -ōrum, n.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m. [*adv.*]
around, circum (*prep. g. acc.*, and
Arpinum, Arpinum, -i, n.
arrange, dīgero, -gessi, -gestum, 3
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*fol.* by ad); we arrived at Rome, Rōmam pervēnimus (249)

arrow, *săgitta*, -ae, f.

art, *ars*, -tis, f.

as, ut; *as if*, *tanquam*, *quāsi*; *as long as*, *dōnēc*; *as far as*, *tēnus* (g. abl.); *as*, (*often trans. by Apposition*), *you do many things, as a boy, which you will not do, as an old man*, *multa*, *puer*, *fācis*, *quae*, *sēnex*, *non fācies*; *as quickly as possible*, *quam cēler-rimē*; (*sometimes rel. pron.*) *he is the same as he always was*, *idem est qui (or ac) semper fuit*; *for the same price as*, i.e., *for which*, *ēodem prētio quo*; ("*as*" is sometimes *rend. by the dat. of purpose*) *he sent a legion as a reinforcement*, *mīsīt lēgiōnem sub-sidiō* (266); *as much money as*, *tantum pecūniae quantum*

ascend, *ascendo*, -ndi, -nsum, 3

ascertain, *cognosco*, *cognōvi*, *cog-nitum*, 3; *compērio*, *compēri*, *compertum*, 4

ashamed, to be, *pūdet*, -uit, 2 (*impers.*); *I am ashamed of doing, having done*, *pūdet me facēre*, *fēcisse* (219)

Asia, *Āsia*, -ae, f.

ask, to, (1) *meaning question*, *rōgo*, 1; *interrōgo*, 1; *quaero*, -sīvi, *sītum*, 3 (*with exdē, or ā*); (2) *meaning beg*, *rōgo*, 1; *oro*, 1 (143); (*peace*) *pācem pētere*; *he was asked his opinion*, *sententiam rōgātus est*

ass, *āsīnus*, -i, m.

assassin, *sicārius*, -i, m.

assault, to, *oppugno*, 1; *assault, an*, *impētus*, -us, m.

assemble, *convēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*intrans.*); *convōco*, 1 (*trans.*)

assembly, *concīlium*, -iī, n; *con-ventus*, -us, m.

assist, *subvēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)

assistance, *auxīlium*, -i, n.

assume (take), *sumo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, 3

astonishment, *admīrātiō*, -ōnis, f.

at, *āpud* (g. acc.); *ād* (g. acc.); *at all*, *omnino*; *at least*, *saltem*; *at last*, *at length*, *tandem*, *ālī-quando*; *at once*, *sīmul*, *stātīm*

Athens, *Āthēnae*, -ārum, f. pl.

Athenian, *Āthēniensis*, -e

attack, to, *aggrēdior*, *gressus*, 3, *dep.*; *oppugno*, 1 (*to attack a town*); *attack, an*, *impētus*, -ūs, m.

attempt, to, *cōnor*, 1, *dep.* (*this v. is an exc. to the rule* (143) *about v. of "striving"*; *it is foll. by inf.*); *attempt, an*, *cōnātus*, -ūs, m. [dat.

attention, to pay, *ōpēram dāre*, g.

Attica, *Attīca*, -ae, f.

attract, *trāho*, -xi, -ctum, 3

audacity, *audācia*, -ae, f.

augur, *augur*, -ūris, m.

augury, *augūrium*, -i, n; *ōmēn*, -īnis, n.

Augustus, *Augustus*, -i, m.

auspice, *auspīcium*, -i, n.

author, *auctor*, -ōris, m.

authority, *auctōritās*, -ātis, f.

autumn, *auctumnus*, -i, m.

auxiliaries, *auxīlia*, -ōrum, n.

avail, *vāleo*, -uī, 2; *threats? what avail*, *quid vālent mīnae?*

avarice, *āvāritia*, -ae, f.

avaricious, *āvārus*, -a, -um

avenge, *ulciscor*, -ultus, 3, *dep.*

avoid, *vito*, 1; *fūgio*, *fūci*, 3

await, I, *expecto*, 1; *death awaits us*, *mors nōs mānet*

avake, *expergiscor*, -perrectus, 3, *dep.*

aware of, *gnārus*, -a, -um (g. gen.)

awful, *dīrus*, -a, -um

axe, *secūris*, -is, f.; *acc.* -em or -im, *abl.* -i

Bacchus, *Bacchus*, -i, m.

back, *tergum*, -i, n.; *the enemy*

turn their backs, i.e. flee, terga dant; *drive back*, see *drive*
bad, *mālus*, -a, -um; *badly*, *mālē*; *bad men*, *imprōbi*
baggage, *impēdimenta*, -ōrum, n.
Balbus, *Balbus*, -i, m.
banish, *pello*, *pepūli*, *pulsum*, 3; *expello*, -pūli, -pulsum, 3
bankrupt, *impar solvendo*, i.e. *unequal to paying*
banquet, *ēpulum*, -i, n.; pl. *epulae*, ārum, f. (the sing. mostly means *a public banquet*)
barbarian, *barbārus*, -a, -um
barbarous, *fērus*, -a, -um
barber, *tonsor*, -ōris, m.
bargain, to make a, *pāciscor*, *pac-tus*, 3, dep.
barn, *horreum*, -i, n.
barren, *stērilis*, -e
base, *turpis*, -e
baseness, *turpītudo*, -inis, f.
battle, *proelium*, -i, n.; *pugna*, -ae, f.; see *Cannae*
beak, *rostrum*, -i, n.
bear, to, *fēro*, -tūli, -lātum, *ferre*
beard, *barba*, -ae, f.
beast, *bestia*, -ae, f.; *of burden*, *jūmentum*, -i, n.
beat, *caedo*, *cēcidi*, *caesum*, 3
beaten, to be, *vāpūlo*, 1
beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum
beauty, *forma*, -ae, f.; *pulchritudo*, -inis, f.
because, *quia*, *quod*
become, *fio*, *factus*, *fiēri* (258); *it becomes me*, *dēcet mē* (220)
bed, *lectus*, -i, m.
beech-tree, *fāgus*, -i, f.
befall (amiss), *accido*, -īdi, 3; (*good*) *contingo*, -tigi, -tactum, 3 (both *g. dat.*)
befit, *dēcet*, -uit, 2, *impers.*
before, (prep.) *antē* (*g. acc.*); *in the presence of*, *cōram*, (*g. abl.*); (*conj.*) *priusquam*, *antēquam*; *before-hand, (adv.)* *antēā*, *antē*; *a few*

years before, *paucis antē annis*; *the day before*, see "*day*"; *before the last*, *extrēnis prior*
beg, *ōro*, 1; *beggar*, *mendīcus*, -i, m.
begin, *incipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; (*a battle*), *īneo*, *īni*, *īnitum*, *īnīre*; *before a pass. inf. use* *coepi*, *coeptus sum*, *coepisse*, *v. def.*; *the city began to be besieged*, *urbs coepit (or coepta est) obsidēri*
beginning, *īnitium*, -i, n.
behind, *post* (*g. acc.*)
behold, *aspicio*, -exi, -ectum, 3; *video*, *vīdi*, *visum*, 2
behoves, it, *oportet*, -uit, 2
believe, *crēdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3 (*g. dat. of person*); *I believe that he will come*, *crēdo eum ventūrum esse*; *I believe him*, *crēdo ei*
Belgae, *Belgae*, -ārum, m.
belly, *venter*, -tris, m.
below, *infrā* (*g. acc.*)
benefactor, *bēnēfactor*, -ōris, m.
benefit, to, *bēnēfācio*, -fēcī, -factum, 3; *prōsum*, -fui, *esse* (*dat.*); *benefit, a*, *bēnēfactum*, -i, n.
benevolence, *bēnēvōlentia*, -ae, f.
benevolent, *benevolus*, -a, -um (68a)
beseech, *ōro*, 1 (143)
beside, *iuxtā* (*g. acc.*); *praeter* (*g. acc.*); *besides* (*prep.*) *praeter* (*g. acc.*) (183); (*adv.*) *praetereā*
besiege, *obsideo*, -sēdi, -sessum, 2
best, *optīmus*, -a, -um; *I do my best to write*, *īd āgo ūt scribam*
betake, *confēro*, -tūli, -ferre, *collātum*; *rēcipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; *he betook himself to Corinth*, *Cōrinthum se contūlit*
betray, *prōdo*, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
betroth, *spondeo*, *spōpon-di*, *spon-sum*, 3
better, *mēlior*, -us
between, *inter* (*g. acc.*)
bewail, *plōro*, 1
beware, *cāveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*, 2

beyond, *ultrā* (*g. acc.*); *praeter* (*g. acc.*)

big, see *large*

bind, *vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, 4;
(*by oath*) *jūre-jūrando obstringo*,
-*strinxi*, -*strictum*, 3

bird, *āvis*, -*is*, *f.*

birth, *partus*, -*ūs*, *m.*; *noble birth*,
nōbilitās, -*ātis*, *f.*

bite, *a*, *morsus*, -*ūs*, *m.*; *to bite*,
mordeo, *mōmordi*, *morsum*,
2 [-*a*, -*um*]

bitter, *ācerbus*, -*a*, -*um*; *āmārus*,

black, *nīger*, -*gra*, -*grum*; *gloomy*,
āter, -*tra*, -*trum* [po, 1]

blame, *culpa*, -*ae*, *f.*; *to blame*, *cul-*
blind, *caecus*, -*a*, -*um*

blindness, *caecitās*, -*ātis*, *f.*

blood, *sanguis*, -*inis*, *m.*

blot out, *dēleo*, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, 2

blow, *ictus*, -*ūs*, *m.*; *to blow*, *v.*
intr. flo, *flāvi*, *flātum*, 1

blush, *ērūbesco*, -*ui*, 3

boar, *āper*, -*pri*, *m.*

boast, *glōrior*, 1, *dep.*; *jacto*, 1

boasting, *jactatio*

body, *corpus*, -*ōris*, *n.*; *dead body*,
cādāver, -*ēris*, *n.*

Boeotia, *Boeōtia*, -*ae*, *f.*

bold, *audax*, -*ācis*; *fortis*, -*e*

bone, *ōs*, *ossis*, *n.*

book, *liber*, -*bri*, *m.*

booty, *praeda*, -*ae*, *f.*

border, *finis*, -*is*, *m.*

bordering-on, *finītinus*, -*a*, -*um* (112)

born, *to be*, *nascor*, *nātus*, 3, *dep.*;
born of low parentage, *hūmīlibus*
pārentibus nātus. N.B. *nascor*
means, *I am being born*, *nātus*
sum, *I am born*

bosom, *sīnus*, -*ūs*, *m.*

both, (*adj.*) *ambo*, -*ae*, -*o*, *ūterque*,
-*traque*, -*trumque*; *both of us*, *nōs*
ambo or *ūterque nostrum*; (*conj.*)
both...and, *ēt...ēt*, (12) or *cum...*
tum, (317)

bottom, *īnus*, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*

bound, *boundary*, *finis*, -*is*, *m.*;
terminus, -*i*, *m.*

bow, *arcus*, -*ūs*, *m.* (53)

boy, *puer*, -*ēri*, *m.*; *boyhood*, *puēr-*
itia, -*ae*, *f.*; *from his b.*, *from a*
boy, *indē ā puērītiā*, or *puēro*

branch, *rāmus*, -*i*, *m.*

brave, *fortis*, -*e*; *bravely*, *fortīter*

bravery, *virtūs*, -*ūtis*, *f.*

bread, *pānis*, -*is*, *m.*

break, *frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, 3;
rumpo, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3; *break*
out, *ērumpo*, -*rūpi*, -*ruptum*, 3;
break down (*a bridge*), *inter-*
rumpo, -*rūpi*, -*ruptum*, 3

breast, *pectus*, -*ōris*, *n.* [m.]

breath, *ānīma*, -*ae*, *f.*; *hālītus*, -*ūs*,

breed, *to*, *ālo*, -*ui*, *altum*, 3

bribery, *ambītus*, -*ūs*, *m.*

bridge, *pons*, -*ntis*, *m.*; *to bridge*,
(*a river*), *flūvium ponte jungere*
bright, *clārus*, -*a*, -*um*; *splendī-*
du, -*a*, -*um*

bring, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allātum*, *af-*
ferre; *I will bring you help*,
fēram tibi auxīlium; *bring*
back, *rēdūco*, -*duxī*, -*ductum*,
3; *bring in*, *infēro*, -*tūli*, -*illā-*
tum, *inferre*; *intrōdūco*, -*xi*,
-ctum, 3; *bring up* (*educate*),
ēdūco, 1; *bring back word*, *rē-*
nuntio, 1

briskly, *ālacrīter*

Britain, *Brītanīa*, -*ae*, *f.*

Briton, *a*, *Brītanīus*, -*i*, *m.*

brother, *frāter*, -*tris*, *m.*

brow, *frons*, -*ntis*, *f.*

Brutus, *Brūtus*, -*i*, *m.*

build, *aedīfico*, 1; *building*, *aedī-*
fīcium, -*i*, *n.*; *to see to the build-*
ing of a temple, *cūrāre templum*
aedīficandum

bulk, *magnītūdo*, -*inis*, *f.*

bull, *taurus*, -*i*, *m.*

burden, *ōnus*, -*ēris*, *n.*

burn, *ūro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, 3 (*trans.*):
(*a house*, *city*, &c.) *incendo*,

incendi, incensum, 3 (*trans.*);
ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2 (*intrans.*);
a burning, incendium, -i, n.

burst into, irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,
3, *fol.* by in and acc.

bury, sēpēlio, -ivi, sēpultum, 4

bush, dūmus, -i, m.

bushel, mōdius, -ii, m. [n.]

business, rēs, rei, f.; nēgōtium, -i,
but, (i) *coord. conj.* sēd (comes first

in a clause, means *on the other hand*; but still; but yet); autem (never comes first in a clause, means *in the second place*), vērō (139a); (ii) *subord. conj.* quīn; I doubt not but he will come, nōn dūbīto quīn ventūrus sit

but (*prep.*), praetēr; no one but Tullius was present, praetēr Tullium nēmo ādērat; but sometimes, in negatives and questions that expect a neg. answer, nīsi (coupling nouns in the same case, like quam, 62); what is filial affection due gratitude towards parents? quid est piētās nīsi grāta ergā pārentes vōluntās?

but (a neg. rel. pron., that not), (i) nom., there was no one but hated you, nēmo ērat quīn tē ōdisset; (2) abl., not a day passed but I wept, dies fērē nullus fuit quīn (*i.e.* quo nōn) flērem

butterfly, pāpilio, -ōnis, m.

buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3

buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.

by, ā, āb (Par. 178); by this time, jam

Caesar, Caesar, -āris, m.

calamity, cālāmītās, -ātis, f.

call, vōco, 1; call together, convōco, 1; (address) appello, 1; do you call me an enemy? num mē inīmīcum appellas?

calm, plācidus, -a, -um

Camillus, Cāmillus, -i, m.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.

Campania, Campānia, -ae, f. N.B.
a district, not a city.

can (see able) you can come, vērēre pōtēs; it cannot be that you would venture on this, fiērī nōn pōtēst ūt hōc audeās

Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f.; of Cannae, Cannensis, -e, adj.; the battle of C., proelium Cannense, or p. Cannis pugnātum capital, cāput, -itis, n.

Capitol, Cāpitolium, -i, n.

captive, adj. captivus, -a, -um

captive, a, captivus, -i, m.

capture, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Capua, Cāpua, -ae, f.

carcass, cādāver, -ēris, n.

care, cūra, -ae, f.; take care of cūro,

1, g. acc.; take care to, cūrā ut

carefully, dīlīgenter

careless, neglēgens, -ntis

carelessness, incūria, -ae, f.; neglēgentia, -ae, f.

carry, porto, 1 (on one's shoulders);

vēho, vexi, vectum, 3 (of horses);

ferre, tūli, lātum (a letter)

carry off, aufēro, abstūli, ablātum,

auferre; (a victory) rēporto, 1

carry on, to, a war, bellum gērere,

gessi, gestum, 3

Carthage, Carthāgo, -īnis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um

cast, jacio, jēci, jactum, 3

cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-

tum, 3; cast down, dēmitto,

-mīsi, -misum, 3

cat, fēlis, -is, f.

catch, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Catiline, Catīlina, -ae, m.

Cato, Cāto, -ōnis, m.

cattle, armenta, -ōrum, n. pl.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cause, to, effīcio, fēci, fectum, 3;

you caused me sorrow, tristītiā

mīhī attūlisti

cautiously, cautē

cavalry, *équites*, -um, m. pl.;
équitatus, -ūs, m.

cease, *dēsīno*, -sīvi or -sīi, 3

celebrated, *praelārus*, -a, -um

centurion, *centūrio*, -ōnis, m.

century, *centūria*, -ae, f.

Ceres, *Cērēs*, *Cērēris*, f.

certain, *certus*, -a, -um (*g. gen.*); *a*

certain person, *quidam*; *a c. fixed*

day, *certus quidam dies*; (*mean-*

ing "kind of") *quidam*; *there is*

a c. pleasure, *est quaedam vō-*

luptas (310a)

certainly, *certē*, *prōfecto* [-i, n.

chain, *cātēna*, -ae, f.; *vinculum*,

challenge, *to*, *prōvōco*, 1

chance, *cāsus*, -ūs, m.; *by c.*, *fortē*

change, *to*, *mūto*, 1

charge, (*accusation*), *crīmen*, -īnis,

n.; (*onset*) *impētus*, -ūs, m.; *let*

us charge the enemy, *impētum*

fāciāmus in hostem [-i, n.

chariot, *currus*, -ūs, m.; *essēdum*,

charioteer, *aurīga*, -ae, m.

charm, *to*, *dēlecto*, 1

chastise, *to*, *castigo*, 1

cheap, *vīlis*, -e

cheer, *be of good cheer*, *ērīgite*

(*ērigo*, -*rexī*, -*rectum*, 3) *ānimos*;

ādeste ānīmīs

cheese, *cāseus*, -i, m.

cherish, *fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, 2;

cōlo, *cōlui*, *cultum*, 3

cherry, *cērāsum*, -i, n.

cheer, *mando*, -*di*, -*sum*, 3

chicken, *pullus*, -i, m.

chide, *culpo*, 1 [-īpis, m.

chief, *dux*, *dūcis*, m.; *princeps*,

chief men, *primōres*, -um, m. pl.

chiefly, *maximē*; *imprīmīs*

child, *puer*, -*eri*, m., or *puella*, -ae, f.

children, *libēri*, -ōrum, m.

choice (*of style*), *ēlēgans*, -ntis

choiceness of style, *ēlēgantia*, -ae, f.

choose, *ēligo*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*, 3

Christian, *a*, *Christiānus*, -i, m.

Cicero, *Cicēro*, -ōnis, m.

Cincinnatus, *Cincinnātus*, -i, m.

circuit, *ambītus*, -ūs, m.

circumstance, *rēs*, *rei*, f.

citadel, *arx*, -cis, f.; *gen. pl.*

arciūm (40)

citizen, *cīvis*, -is, m.

city, *urbs*, -bis, f.; *the city of Car-*

thage, *Carthāgo urbs* [1

claim, *posco*, *pōposci*, 3; *vindico*,

clamour for, *postūlo*, 1

claw, *unguis*, -is, m.

Claudius, *Claudius*, -i, m.

clear, *clārus*, -a, -um; *to explain*

clearly, *lūcūlenter explicāre*

clear, *it is*, *liquet*, 2, *impers.* (222)

clemency, *clēmēntia*, -ae, f.

clerk, *scriba*, -ae, m.

climb, *scando*, -*di*, -*sum*, 3

close, *claudio*, -*si*, -*sum*, 3

close to, *prōpe* (*g. acc.*); *he is close*

at hand, *prōpe ā nobīs ābest*

close quarters, *at*, *commīnus*

clothe, *vestio*, -*ivi* or -*ii*, -*itum*, 4

clothing, *vestītus*, -ūs, m.

cloud, *nūbēs*, -is, f.

Clytemnestra, *Clȳtemnestra*, -ae, f.

coast, *lītus*, -ōris, n.; *ōra*, -ae, f.

cobbler, *sūtor*, -ōris, m.

Codrus, *Codrus*, -i, m.

cock, *gallus*, -i, m.

cohort, *cōhors*, -rtis, f.

coin, *nummus*, -i, m.

cold, *frīgus*, -ōris, n.

cold, *frīgīdus*, -a, -um

colleague, *collēga*, -ae, m.

collect, *colligo*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*, 3

colony, *cōlōnia*, ae, f.

colour, *cōlor*, -ōris, m.

column, (*of men*) *agmen*, -īnis, n.

come, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4

command, (*military*) *impērium*, -i,

n.; *commands*, *jussa*, -orum, n.

pl.: *at the command of Tullius*,

Tullio jūbente (197)

command, *to*, *impēro*, 1: *praesum*,

-*fui*, -*esse* (*both g. dat. of per-*

son); *jūbeo*, *jussi jussum*, 2

command of, to be in, praesum, -fui, -esse (*g. dat.*)
commander, imp̄rator, -ōris, m.; dux, dūcis, m. [3]
commit, committo, -misi, -missum, *common*, communis, -e.
common-people, plebs, plēbis, f.; vulgus, -i, n.
commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, f.
companion, cōmēs, -itis, m.
compare, comparō, 1; confēro, contūli, collātum, conferre
compassion, mīserīcordia, -ae, f.
compel, cōgo, cōgi, coactum, 3 (*inf-, or ut, or ad with gerund.*)
complain, quēror, questus, 3, dep.
complaint, quērēla, -ae, f. [3]
complete, to, conficio, -feci, -fectum, *conceal*, cēlo, 1 (*g. two acc., 312*)
concede, concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
conceive a hope, vēnīre in spem
concerning, dē (*g. abl.*)
concerns, it, see "important"
conciliate, concilio, 1
concord, concordia, ae, f.
concourse, concursus, -ūs, m.
condemn, damno, 1; condemnno, 1; *to condemn to death*, cāpitīs damnāre
condition, condicio, -ōnis, f.
conduct, to, a war, bellum gērere
conduct, mōres, -um, m. pl.
confer, confēro, contūli, collātum, conferre; *to c. a benefit on you*, hōnēficiū in tē c.
conference, collōquium, -i, n.
confess, fāteor, fassus, 2, dep.; confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
confession, confessio, -ōnis, f.
confidence, fidēs, -ei, f.
confirm, confirmo, 1
conflagration, incendium, -i, n.
congratulate, grātūlor, 1, dep. (*g. dat.*); *I c. you that*, g. tibi quod
conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3; sup̄ero, 1

conquered, victus, -a, -um; *the conquered*, victi m. pl.
conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.
conquest, victōria, -ae, f. [*gen.*]
conscious, conscius, -a, -um (*g. consciousness*, conscientia, -ae, f.
consecrate, consecro, 1
consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (*dat., or cum*)
consent, consensus, -ūs, m.
consider, pūto, 1
consist, consto, -stiti, -stātum, 1; *fol. by ex or ē, the legions consisted of ten cohorts each*, lēgiōnes ē dēnis cōhortibus constitērunt
consolation, sōlātium, -i, n.
console, sōlor, 1, dep.
conspiracy, conjūrātio, -ōnis, f.
conspire, conjūro, 1
conspirator, conjūrātus, -a, -um, *used as a noun*
constancy, constantia, -ae f.
consul, consūl, -ūlis, m.
consulate, consūlātus, -ūs, m.
consult, consūlo, -sului, -sultum, 3; *to c. Tullius*, consūlère Tullium, *to c. T.'s interests*, consūlère Tullio
consume, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3
contemplate, contemplor, -ātus sum, 1
contend, contendo, -di, -tum, 3
content, contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)
contest, certāmen, -inis, n.
contradict, contradico, -dixi, -dictum, 3 (*g. dat.*)
contrary, contrārius, -a, -um (189)
contrary, on the, contrā (*adv.*)
contrary-to, contrā (*g. acc.*)
conversation, sermo, -ōnis, m.; collōquium, -i, n. [3, dep.
converse, to, collōquor, collōqūtus, *convey*, vēho, vexi, vectum, 3
cook, cōquus, -i, m.
cook, to, cōquo, coxi, coctum, 3
copper, aes, aeris, n.

Corinth, Cōrinthus, -i, f.
Corinthian, Cōrinthius, -a, -um
Coriolanus, Cōriōlānus, -i, m.
Corioli, Cōriōli, -ōrum, m. pl. *the small town of Corioli was burned*, C., oppidum parvum, incensum est
corn, (*harvested*) frūmentum, -i, n.; *to sow corn*, frūmenta sērere
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
corpse, cādāver, -ēris, n.
correct, corrigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3
corrupt, corrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3
cost, prētium, -i, n.; *expense*, sumptus, -ūs, m.
cost, *to*, sto, stēti, stātum, 1, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1, (*both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price*) *this cost me more*, hōc mīhi plūris constitit: *this will cost you much blood*, hōc vōbis multo sanguīne stābit
costly, sumptuōsus, -a, -um
cottage, cāsa, -ae, f.
cover, tēgo, texi, tectum, 3
covet, cūpio, -īvi, -ītum, 3
covetous, cūpīdus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)
couch, lectus, -i, m., cūbile, -is, n. *could* (*see able*), *you could have come*, vēnīre pōtūisti
council, concīlium, -i, n.
counsel, consīlium, -i, n.
count, nūmero, 1
countenance, vultus, -ūs, m.
country, terra, -ae, f.: *the country (as distinct from the city)*, rūs, rūris, n. *see* Par. 265 and 249; *one's own, his, my, your, country*, patria, -ae, f.; *let us die for our country*, prō patriā mōriāmur; *this is for the good of the country*, hōc est ē rē-publica; *a rough country*, i.e. district, rēgio aspera
countrymen, cīves, -iūm, m. pl.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.

courtesy, hūmānitas, -ātis, f.
cover, tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3
coward, *cowardly*, ignāvus, -a, -um
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
crafty, callīdus, -a, -um
crane, grus, gruis, c.; *mostly* f.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, m.
create, creo, 1
creature, ānimal, -ālis, n.
credible, crēdībilis, -e.
credit, fidēs, -ei, f.
Crete, Crēta, -ae, f.
crime, scelus, -ēris, n.; *monstrous*, c. flāgītium, -i, n.
crocodile, crōcōdīlus, -i, m.
Croesus, Croesus, -i, m.
cross, crux, crūcis, f.
cross, *to*, trājicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3; transeo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
crown, cōrōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.; saevus, -a, -um
cruelty, crūdēlītās, -ātis, f. [3
crush, opprimo, -pressi, -pressum,
cry, (*shout*) clāmo, 1
cry, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.
cultivate, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3
cunning, callīdus, -a, -um
cup, cālīx, -īcis, m.
cure, rēmēdium, -i, n.
cure, *to*, sāno, 1 (*acc.*); mēdeor, 2 r. dep. (*dat.*)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3: *cut off, to, the enemy from supplies*, interclūdēre, (-clūsi, -clūsum, 3) *hostes commēatū (or -ībus) cut to pieces*, concīdo, -dī, -sum, 3
Cyclops, the, Cyclōpes, -um, m. pl.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, f.
Cyrus, Cýrus, -i, m.

Dagger, pūgio, -ōnis, m.
daily, adv. quōtīdiē (*better spelt cōtīdiē*)
dance, salto, 1
danger, pēricūlum, -i, n.

dangerous, pēriculōsus, -a, -um
Danube, Ister, -tri, m.
Daphne, Daphnē, -ēs, f.
dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.
Darius, Dārīus, -i, m.
dark, obscurus, -a, -um; pullus, -a, -um
darken, obscurō, 1
darkness, cālīgo, -inis, f.; tēnebrae, -ārum, f.
dart, tēlum, -i, n.; jācūlum, -i, n.
daughter, filia, -ae, f.
dawn, prīma lux; māne, indecl.; *before dawn*, antē lūcem
dawn, to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3
day, dies, -iēi m.; *by day*, diē;
daybreak, prīma lux; *the-day-before* (*adv. used as a prep.*)
 prīdiē Kāendas; (*used as a conj. with quam*) *the day before I came*, prīdiē quam vēni; *two days*, bīduum, -i, n.; *three days*, trīduum, -i, n.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um
dead body, cādāver, -eris, n.
deaf, surdus, -a, -um
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, f.; *he was put to death*, morte affectus est; *he was condemned to death*, cāpītis damnātus est
debt, aes āliēnum
deceit, dōlus, -i, m.; fallācia, -ae, f.
deceitful, fallāx, -ācis
deceive, dēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3
decide, to, (judge) iūdico, 1; *they decided to return*, constituērunt rēdire
declare, dīco, dixi, dictum, 3; *to declare war against*, bellum indicēre, g. dat.
decree, to, dēcerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3
decree, a, dēcretum, -i, n.; ēdictum, -i, n.
deed, factum, -i, n.; fācīnūs, ōris, n.
deem worthy, dignor, 1, dep.

deep, altus, -a, -um
deer, dāma, -ae, f.
defeat, a, clādēs, -is, f.
defeat, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3
defence, praesīdium, -i, n.
defend, dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3
defendant, reus, -i, m.
defile, polluo, -ui, ūtum, 3
deity, nūmen, -inis, n.
delay, mōra, -ae, f.
delay, to, mōror, 1, dep.; cunctor, 1, dep.
deliberate, dēlibēro, 1
delight, gaudium, -i, n.; *to delight*, dēlecto, 1, v. tr. (g. acc.)
deliver (*hand over*), trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3; (*free*) libēro, 1 (g. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)
Delos, Dēlos, -i, f.
demand, posco, pōposci, 3
Demosthenes, Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, m.
denarius, dēnārius, -ii, m.
deny, nēgo, 1
depart, discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
departure, discessus, -ūs, m.
deplore, plōro, 1
depraved, prāvus, -a, um
deprive, spōlio, 1; prīvo, 1 (279)
descend, descendo, -di, -sum, 3; *he was descended from kings*, ā rēgibus ortus erat
desert, dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3; rēlinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3
deserter, transfūga, -ae, m.
deserve, mēreor, mēritus, 2, dep.
design, consīlium, -i, n.
desire, cūpīdo, -īnis, f.; *to desire*, cūpio, -īvi, -ītum, 3; opto, 1; vōlo (*all generally foll. by Infinitive*)
desirous, cūpīdus, -a, -um; stūdiōsus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*) *sometimes with gerundive*
desist from, dēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3
despair, to, despēro, 1; *despair*, despērātio, -ōnis, f. [tum, 3
despise, contemno, -tempsi, temp-

despoil, spōlio, 1; *I despoil you of liberty*, s. tē libertāte

destroy, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum; *perdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3

destructive, perniciosus, -a, -um

detain, dētineo, -ui, -tentum, 2

determine, stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

devastate, vasto, 1

devoid of, expers, -rtis, *adj.* (*g. gen.*)

devote, dēvoveo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2

devour, dēvoro, 1

Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.

dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.

dictatorship, dictatūra, -ae, f.

die, mōrior, mortuus, 3, *dep.*; *he died*, obiit (mortem)

difference, discrīmen, -īnis, n.; *it makes a great difference*, multum intēst; *how great a difference there is!* quantum intēst!

difficult, difficilis, -e (60)

difficulty, difficultas, -atis, f.; *with difficulty*, vix; *with very great difficulty*, difficillimē

dig, fōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3; *dig up*, effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3

dignity, dignitās, -ātis, f.

diligent, strēnuus, -a, -um; *diligent*, -ntis

diminish, mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

dine, cēno, 1, *dep. particip.*

cēnatus (*less correctly coeno*)

Dionysius, Diōnysius, -i, m.

direction; *in - the - direction - of the Rhine*, Rhēnum versūs

disagreeable, injūcundus, -a, -um

disappear, ēvānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.]

disaster, damnum, -i, n.; *clādes*,

discern, cerno, 3

discharge (duty), fungor, functus, 3 *dep. (abl.)*; (*darts*), conjicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3

disciple, discipulus, -i, m.

discipline, disciplina, -ae, f.

disclose, dētēgo, -texi, -tectum, 3

discord, discordia, -ae, f.

discourse, sermo, -ōnis, m.

discover, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *rēperio*, repperi, repertum, 4

disease, morbus, -i, m.

disembark, (*trans. v.*) expōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3

disgrace, dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; *to disgrace*, foedo, 1

disgraceful, turpis, -e

disherelled, passus, -a, -um

dismiss, dimitto, -misi, -missum, 3

displease, displiceo, -ui, itum, 2 (*g. dat.*)

displeasing, ingrātus, -a, -um

disposition, indōlēs, -is, f.; *ingēnium*, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.]

dispute, a, rixa, -ae, f.; *contentio*,

dissemble, dissimūlo, 1

dissembler, dissimulātor, -ōris, m.

dissension, dissensio, -ōnis, f.

distant, to be, absūm, āfui, ābesse

distasteful, to become, displiceo, 2

distinguished, insignis, -e; *clārus*, -a, -um

distribute, distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3

district, rēgio, -ōnis, f.

distrust, diffīdo, -fīsus, 3, *or parum credere*, confidere (*dat.*)

disturb, turbo, 1

disturbance, mōtus, -ūs, m.

ditch, fossa, -ae, f.

divide, divīdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3

divine, divīnus, -a, -um

do, fācio, fēcī, factum, 3: *I (can) easily do without wine*, vīno fācile cāreo

dog, cānis, -is, c.

dolphin, delphīn, -īnis, m.

domestic, dōmesticus, -a, -um

door, jānuā, ae, f.; *fōres*, -um, f. pl.; *out of doors (i) (rest)* fōris, (*motion towards*) fōras

doubt, to, dūbīto, 1; *there is no doubt that*, nōn dūbīum est quīn, Par. 145; *I have no doubt that*, nōn dūbīto quīn; *without doubt*, sīnē dūbio

doubtful, incertus, -a, -um ; dūbius, -a, -um.

dove, cōlumba, -ae, f.

downcast, dēmīssus, -a, -um

down from, dē (*g. abl.*)

drachma, drachma, -ae, f.

drag, trāho, traxi, tractum, 3

draw (*a sword*), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3 ; *draw along*, dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw back*, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw up* (*an army*), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 ; *draw lots*, sortior, -tītus, 4, dep. ; *draw water*, I, aquam haurio, hansi, haustum, 4 ; *draw together*, contrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3

dread, to, formīdo, 1

dreadful, dīrus, -a, -um

dream, a, somnium, -i, n. ; *dream*, to, somnio, 1

dress, vestitus, -ūs, m. ; vestis, -is, f.

drink, bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3 ; pōto, 1

drive, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3 ; pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3 ; *to drive into exile*, pellere in exilium ; *drive back*, repello, reppūli, repulsum, 3 ; *drive out*, expello, expūli, expulsum, 3 ; *drive down*, dēpello, dēpūli, dēpulsum, 3

drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.

drown, mergo, mersi, mersum, 3

Druids, Druīdes, -um, m. pl.

drunk, ēbrius, -a, -um

dry, siccus, -a, -um ; arīdus, -a, -um

duck, ānas, -ātis, c.

duly, ritē

dutiful conduct, piētās, -ātis, f.

duty, officium, -ii, n.

dwelt, to, hābito, 1

dwelling, dōmus, -ūs, f.

dye, to, tingo, tinxi, tinctum, 3

Each, quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, *or, when used as n.*, quicquē, ; *fol.* *superl.*, suus, &c., (140.

165) ; (*of two*) ūterquē (both are used in sing.)

eager, cūpidus, -a, -um

eagle, āquīla, -ae, f.

ear, auris, -is, f.

early, matūrē

earth, terra, -ae, f. ; tellūs, -ūris, f.

ease, ōtium, -i, n.

easily, faciļē ; *more e.*, faciļiūs

east, ihe, oriens, -entis, m.

easy, faciļis, -e (60)

eat, vescor, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*) ; ēdi, ēdi, ēsum, 3

educate, ēdūco, 1

effect, mōdus, -i, m ; *he spoke to this effect*, in hunc mōdum ōrātiōnem hābuit ; *effect*, to, efficiō -feci, -fectum, 3

egg, ōvum, -i, n.

Egypt, Aegyptus, -i, f.

Egyptian, Aegyptius, -a, -um

eight, octō, indel.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um

eighty, octogintā, indel.

either, (*conj.*) aut, vėl (157a)

elder, sēnior, -ōris, *adj. used as n.* ; also māior nātū (71)

elect, ēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3

elephant, ēlēphantus, -i, m ; ēlēphās, -antis, m.

eloquence, fācundia, -ae, f.

eloquent, fācundus, -a, um

else, (*when adj.*) ālius, -a, ūd ; *or*

else aut ; *elsewhere*, ālibī

embrace, to, amplector, -plexus, 3,

dep. ; *embrace*, amplexus, -ūs, m.

emperor, princeps, -īpis, m.

empire, impērium, -i, n.

empty, vācuus, -a, -um

enact, sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 ; (*"shall and "should," after this v., must be rend. by pres. and imperf. subj.*) *it has been enacted that no one shall ride in a carriage*, sanctum est nē quis currū vēhātur

encourage, hortor, 1, dep.; stīmulō,

1

end, to, finio, 4

end, finis, -is, m.

endeavour, cōnor, 1, dep. (*coll. by inf.*)

endowed with, praeditus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)

endurance, pātientia, -ae, f.

endure, perfēro, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre

enemy, hostis, -is, m.; (*in war, mostly pl.*) *the enemy's camp*, hostium (*not hostis*) castra; *a private enemy*, inīmicus, -a, -um

energetic, strēnuus, -a, -um

engagement, certāmen, -inīs, n.; pugna, -ae, f.

England, Anglia, -ae, f.

enjoy, fruor, frui, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*)

enormous, ingens, -ntis

enough, sātis

enraged, irātus, -a, -um

enter, intro, 1; in eo, -īvi or -ii, itum, 4

enterprise, cōnātus, -ūs, m.

enticements, illēcebrae, -arum, f. pl.

entirely, omnino

entrails, viscēra, -um, n.

entreat, ōro, 1 (143)

entrust, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3

envious, inīdus, -a, -um

envy, inīdia, -ae, f.; *envy*, to, in-video, -vīdi, visum, 3 (*g. dat.*)

Epaminondas, Epāmīnondās, -ae, m.

Ephesus, Ephēsus, -i, f.

Epicurus, Epīcūrus, -i, m.

equal, pār, pāris

equally, pāriter

equipped, instructus, -a, -um, *part. of* instruo

erect (build), extruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; erīgo, -rexi, -rec-

tum, 3

err, erro, 1

error, error, -ōris, m.

escape, fūga, -ae, f.; *escape*, to, ēvādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3; effūgio, -fūgi, 3; *escape the notice of*, fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3 (*g. acc.*)

escort, dēdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3

especially, maxīmē; praesertim

estimate, aestīmo, 1

eternal, aeternus, -a, -um

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.

even, etiam; vėl (141 a); *not even*,

nē—quidem (141); *even a boy*,

vėl puer; *even now*, etiam

nunc; *even if*, etiam si

evening, vesper, -ēris and -ēri, m.;

in the evening, vespērē, or adv.

vespēri (*not vespēro*)

event, eventus, -ūs, m.

ever, unquam; (*always*) semper;

if you ever come, si quando

vēneris; *did you e. come?* num

quando (*or ecquando*) vēnisti?

every, every good man, omnes bōni,

or optimus quisquē (140); *every*

day, quōtidie (*or cōtidie*)

everywhere, passim [mālum, -i, n.

evil, mālus, -a, -um; *an evil*,

examine, investigo, 1

example, exemplum, -i, n.

exceedingly, valdē

excellence, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

excellent, ēgrēgius, -a, -um (68b);

praestans, -ntis; optimus, -a,

-um

except, prep. praetēr (*g. acc.*): conj.

nisi; *why do you fight except to*

conquer? cur pugnās nisi ut

vincās?

excessive, nīmius, -a, -um

exchange, mūto, 1 [-ōnis, f.

excuse, excūso, 1; *an e.*, excūsatio,

exercise, to, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2

exhort, cōhortor, -ātus, 1, dep.

exile, exilium, -i, n.; *exile*, an,

exsul, -ūlis, m.

expectation, expectatio, -ōnis, f.;

spēs, spei, f.

expediency, utilitas, -ātis, f.

expedient, ūtilis, -e
expense, sumptus, -ūs, m.
experience, expērientia, -ae, f.;
 ūsus, -ūs, m.; *experience*, to,
 expērior, -pertus, 4, dep.
explain, explico, 1
explore, explōro, 1
extend, pāteo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*);
 pando, pandi, passum, 3 (*trans.*)
extent, spātium, -i, n. [3
extinguish, exstinguo, -nxi, -netum,
extraordinary, mīrus, -a, -um
extreme, extrēmus, -a, -um
extremely, valdē
exult, exulto, 1
eye, ōcūlus, -i, m.

Fabius, Fābius, -i, m.

fable, fābūla, -ae, f.

face, fācies, -ei, f.; ōs, ōris, n.;
 vultus, -ūs, m.

factions, partes, -ium, f.

fact, rēs, rei, f.; *facts must be*
clearly arranged, rēs lūculenter
 sunt dīgērendae

fail (*fall short*), dēsum, -fui,
 esse, (*g. dat.*); (*forsake*), dēfi-
 cio, -fēci, -fectum, 3; *time*
fails me, tempus mē dēficit

faith, fīdēs, -ei, f. [-um

faithful, fīdēlis, -e; fīdus, -a,

fall, to, cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3;
 (*in battle*) occīdo, -cīdi, -cāsum,
 3

fall asleep, to, obdormio, -ii or
 -īvi, -ītum, 4

false (*things*), falsus, -a, -um;
 (*persons*), mendax, -ācis

falsehood, mendācium, -ii, n.

fame, fāma, -ae, f.

family, fāmīlia, -ae, f.; dōmus,
 -ūs, f.

famine, fāmēs, -is, f.

far, prōcūl; longē; *as far as*,
 tēnūs (*g. abl. or gen.*, 178)

farm, praedium, -i, n.

farthing, as, assis, m.; *I do not*

care a farthing for you, nōn
 assis tē fācio

"fasces," the, fascēs, -ium, m. pl.
the rods which were the signs
of the consul's power

fat, pinguis, -e

fate, fātum, -i, n.

father, pāter, -tris, m.

fault, culpa, -ae, f.

favour, grātia, -ae, f.; *favour*, to,
 fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2 (*g. dat.*)

fear, tīmor, -oris, m.; mētus, -ūs,
 m.

fearful, pāvīdus, -a, -um

fear, to, tīmeo, -ui, 2; mētuo, -ui,
 3; vēreor, vēritus, dep. 2

fearless, impāvīdus, -a, -um

feast, ēpūlae, -ārum, f. [f.

feather, penna, -ae, f.; plūma, -ae,

features, vultus, -ūs, m.

feeble, infirmus, -a, -um

feed, (*trans.*) pasco, pāvi, pastum,
 3; (*intrans.*) pascor, *pass.*

feed on, vescor, 3 dep. (*g. abl.*)

feel, sentio, sensi, sensum, 4

feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3

fellow, hōmo, -īnis, m.: *that*

fellow, istē

fertile, fertilis, -e

fetch, see *bring*

fetter, compēs, -ēdis, f. [-ē

ferer, febris, -is f. (-im or -em, -ī or

few, paucus, -a, -um, (*mostly pl.*);

very few, perpauci

field, āger, -grī, m.

fierce, fērox, -ōcis

fifth, *fifty*, see Par. 81

fig, *fig-tree*, ficus, -i, and -ūs, f.

fight, pugna, -ae, f.

fight, to, pugno, 1

fill, compléo, -plēvi, -pletum, 2

finally, dēniq̄ue (*not to stand first*
in a clause)

find, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *he*
was found guilty of, damnātus
 est (*g. gen.*)

fine, multa, -ae, f.

fine, to, multo, 1
finger, dīgītus, -i, m.
finish, confīcio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
 pērāgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3
fire, ignis, -is, -m., abl. ignī;
 under fire, sub jactu, or jactum,
 tēli, (180)
firm, firmus, -a, -um
first, prīmus, -a, -um; *at f.*;
 prīmo (adv.): *T. was the first to*
 come (or who came), Tāllius
 prīmus vēnit
fish, piscis, -is, m.
fisherman, piscātor, -ōris, m.
fit, aptus, -a, -um; idōneus, -a,
 -um; *for running*, aptus ad
 currendum (186)
five, quinquē, incl. ; *five hundred*,
 quingenti, -ae, -a
fix, fīgo, -xi, -xum, 3
fixed, certus, -a, -um; *a certain*
 fixed day, certus quidam diēs
flame, flamma, -ae, f.
flatter, ādūlor, 1, dep.
flee, fūgio, -fūgi, 3
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flesh, cāro, carnis, f.
flight, fūga, -ae, f.; *of a bird*,
 vōlātus, -us, m.
flight, put to, fūgo, 1
flourish, flōreo, -ui, 2
flow, fluo, -xi, 3. fut. part. fluxūrus
flower, flōs, -ōris, m.
fly, a, musca, -ae, f.
fly, to, see *flee*; (*of a bird*) vōlo, 1
foe, hostis, -is, m.
follow, sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, dep.
follower, cōmēs, -ītis, m.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -i, m.
fond of, studiōsus, -a, -um, (g. gen.)
fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um
foolishly, stultē
foot, pēs, pēdis, m.
foot-soldier, pēdēs, -ītis, m.
for (conj.) nam (*at the beginning of*
 a clause); enim (*after the first*

word in a clause); (prep.) pro,
 prae, (g. abl.); ob, (g. acc.)
 Par. 178; (*born, fit, useful, &c.*)
 for acting, ad āgendum; *for a*
 few days, paucos diēs (262)
forbid, vēto, -ui, -itum, 1; prō-
 hībeo, -ui, -itum, 2
force, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.
forced marches, magna itinēra
forces, cōpīae, -ārum, f.
forehead, frons, -ntis, f.
foreign, externus, -a, -um; pēre-
 grīnus, -a, -um
foresee, prōvīdeo, -vīdi, -visum, 2
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget, obliviscor, oblītus, 3, dep.
 (g. gen.)
forgetful, immēmor, -ōris (g. gen.)
form, forma, -ae, f.
former, prior, prius; *the former...*
 the latter, ille...hic
formerly, quondam, ōlim
fort, castrum, -i, -n.; castellum,
 -i, n.
fortify, mūnio, -ivi or -ii, -itum 4,
fortitude, fortitūdo, -inis, f.; *with*
 fortitude, fortiter
fortunate, fēlix, -icis
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
fortunes, they distrusted their f.,
 rēbus suis diffīsi sunt
forty, quadrāgintā, incl.
forum, fōrum, -i, n.
found, condo, -īdi, -dītum, 3
founder, condītor, -ōris, m.
fountain, fons, fontis, m.
four, fourteen, &c. see Par. 81
four times, quāter
fourth, quartus, -a, -um
free, liber, -ēra, -ēruin: f. from
 fault, culpā vācuus (279)
free, to, libēro, 1, (acc. & abl.)
 freed from debt, aere āliēno lib-
 ērātus
freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
frequently, saepe

fresh, rēcens, -ntis; nōvus, -a, -um
friend, āmicus, -i, m.
friendly, āmicus, -a, -um
friendship, āmicitia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreo, -ui, 2
frog, rāna, -ae, f.
from, ā, ē, or ex, dē (g. abl.); *from*
boyhood, indē a puēro
from a distance, ēmīnūs
front, in, adversus, -a, -um
frost, gēlū, incl. n.
frugality, parsimōnia, -ae, f.
fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.; *the fruits*
(of the earth), frūges, -um, f. pl.
fruitful, fertilis, -e; fērax, -ācis
fulfil, perficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3;
 expleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2
full, plēnus, -a, -um (g. gen. or abl.)
funeral, fūnus, -ēris, n.; *funeral*
rites, infēriae, -arum, f.
furrow, sulcus, -i, m.
fury, fūror, -ōris, m.
future, fūtūrus, -a, -um

Gābii, Gābii, -ōrum, m. pl.

gain, quaestus, -ūs, m.; lucrum,
 -i, n.
gain, to, (a victory) rēportāre, 1;
 acquiro, quisīvi, quisītum, 3;
 pāro, 1
gain possession of, pōtior, -ītus, 4,
 dep. (g. abl.) See Par. 207.
Gallie, Gallicus, -a, -um
gallows, crux, crūcis, f.
game, lūdus, -i, m.
garden, hortus, -i, m.
garland, sertum, -i, n.
garment, vestis, -is, f.
garrison, praesidium, -i, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; col-
 lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.
gem, gemma, -ae, f.
general, dux, dūcis, m.; impērātor,
 -ōris, m.

generally, plērumque
gentleness, cōmītas, -ātis, f.
gently, lēnīter
German, Germānus, -a, -um
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
get, pāro, 1; ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3
giant, gīgās, -antis, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
gird, cingo, -nxi, -netum, 3
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, do, dēdi, dātum, 1
give back, reddo, -dīdī, -dītum, 3
give birth to, pārio, pepēri, partum,
 3 (g. acc.)
give orders to, impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
give up, trādo, -dīdī, -dītum, 3
glad, laetus, -a, -um
Glaucus, Glaucus, -i, m.
glitter, mīco, -uī, 1
gloomy, tristis, e
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um
glory, glōria, -ae, f.
go, eo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4; *I am*
going-to-die, mōrītūrus sum
go away, ābeo, -īi, -ītum, 4
go by, praetēro, īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4
go forth, or out, exeo, -īi, -ītum, 4
go on, prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
go under, sūbeo, -īi, -ītum, 4
goat, cāper, -pri, m.
god, deus, dei, m.; nom. pl. *often*
 dii, or di
goddess, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
good, bōnus, -a, -um
goodwill, bēnēvolentia, -ae, f.
goose, anser, -ēris, m.
govern, rēgo, rexi, rectum, 3
government, impērium, -i, n.
grace, grātia, -ae, f.
grandfather, āvus, -i, m.
grandson, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
grant (see *give*); *I grant him*
pardon, do ei vēniam
grape, ūva, -ae, f.
grass, herba, -ae, f.

grateful, grātus, -a, -um
 gray, cānus, -a, -um
 great, magnus, -a, -um; *very great*, permagnus; *with "this,"* tantus; *this great slaughter*, haec tanta caedēs
greatly, magnōpĕre, valdē
greatness, magnitūdo, -inis, f.
Grecian, Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
greedy, āvīdus, -a, -um, āvārus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*)
green, vīrīdis, -e
green, to grow, vīresco, 3 [m.
grief, dōlor, -ōris, m.; luctus, -ūs, m.
grieve, dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); angō, 3 (*trans.*)
groan, gēmītus, -ūs, m.
groan, to, gēmo, -ui, 3
ground, hūmus, -i, f.; *on the ground*, hūmī
grove, lūcus, -i, m.
grow, cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3
guard, (*a single person*) custōs, -ōdis, m.; (*a garrison*) praesīdium, -i, n.
guard, to, custōdiō, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4; *guard strongly*, firmāre praesīdiō
guest, hospēs, -ītis, m.
guide, dux, dūcis, m.
guide, to, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3
guile, dōlus, -i, m.
guilt, culpa, -ae, f.; scēlus, -ēris, n.
guilty, sons, sontis: *to be found guilty of*, damnāri (*g. gen.*)

Habit, mōs, mōris, m.

hail, grando, -inis, f.
hair, crīnis, -is, m.; *not even a hair's breadth*, ne transversum quīdem unguem, lit. *a nail's breadth*
half, dimīdium, -i, n.
halt, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3
hand, mānus, -ūs, f.; *right hand*, dextra; *left hand*, sīnistra; *I*

am at hand, adsum, -fui, -esse; *it is in your hands*, pĕnes tē est (183)
hand down, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
hang, pendeo, pēpendi, 2 (*intrans.*); pendo, pēpendi, pensum, 3 (*trans.*)
Hannibal, Hannībal, -ālis, m.
happen, (*of ill fortune*) accīdo, -cīdi, 3 (*mostly foll. by* ūt; (*of good*) contingo, -tīgi, 3
happy, (*fortunate*) fēlix, -īcis; (*joyful*) laetus, -a, -um; (*blessed*) bēātus, -a, -um
harbour, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um
hare, lēpus, -ōris, m.
harm, detrīmentum, -i, n.
harmful, noxius, -a, -um
harp, cithāra, -ae, f.
harvest, messis, -is, f.
Hasdrubal, Hasdrūbal, -ālis, m.
haste, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.; *in haste*, cum cēlērītāte, or cēlērīter, or summā cēlērītāte (181); *make haste*, see hasten
hasten, festīno, 1; prōpĕro, 1
hastily, i.e. rashly, tēmĕrē
hate, ōdium, -i, n.
hate, to, ōdi, def. 3; see App. II., page 215
hatred, see hate
have, hābeo, -ui, -itum, 2
hawk, accīpiter, -tris, m.
he, ille, -a, -ūd; īs, ea, īd; *he who*, quī (*is being often omitted, or placed after* quī, Par. 107)
head, cāput, -ītis, n.
headlong, praeceps, -cīpītis
health, sālūs, -ūtis, f.
healthy, sānus, -a, -um; *healthful*, sālūber, -bris, -bre
heap, ācervus, -i, m.
hear, audio, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
hearer, auditor, -ōris, m.
heart, cor, -dis, n.

hearth, fŏcus, -i, m.
heat, cālor, -ōris, m.
heaven, caelum, -i, m.
heavy, grāvis, -e
Hector, Hectŏr, Hectŏris, m.
hedge round, to, saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4
heir, hērēs, -ēdis, m.
Helena, Hēlēna, -ae, f.
helmet, gālea, -ae, f.
help, auxiliū, -i, n.
help, to, subvenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)
Helvetii, the, Helvētīi, -ŏrum, -ī, m.
hemlock, cīcūta, -ae, f.
hence, hinc
herb, herba, -ae, f.
Hercules, Hercūlēs, -is, m.
herd, pēcūs, -ōris, n.
here, hīc; often used for "hither" and then to be trans. by hūc
hero, hēros, -ōis, m. (acc. pl. -ōas)
hesitate, dūbīto, 1
hide, to, condo, -dīdi, dītum, 3; abdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
hiding place, lātebra, -ae, f.
high, altus, -a, -um; to buy at a very high price, permagnō ċmēre
highest, summus, -a, -um
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, sē, suī, &c. See Par. 94
hinder, prŏhībeo, 2, I hindered you from coming, prŏhībui quomīnūs vēnīrēs
hinge, cardo, -dīnis, m.
hire, condūco, -dūxi, -ductum, 3
his, Par. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328
historian, auctor, -ōris, m.
hither, hūc; *hitherto*, adhūc
hold, tēneo, -ui, 2; hābeo, -ui, -ītum, 2
holiday, fēriae, -ārum, f.
hollow, cāvus, -a, -um; to hollow, cāvāre
holy, sācer, -era, -crum
home, dŏmus, -ūs, f. (Ex. LXXXIV.); at home, dŏmi (265)

Homer, Hŏmērus, -i, m.
honest, prŏbus, -a, -um
honesty, prŏbītas, -ātis, f.
honey, mēl, mellis, n.
honour, hŏnor, -ōris, m.; to be in great honour with the Romans, in magno hŏnŏre esse āpūd Rŏmānos
honourable, hŏnestus, -a, -um
hoof, ungūla, -ae, f.
hook, hāmus, -i, m.
hope, spēs, spei, f.
hope, to, spēro, 1; do you hope to take the city? spērasne tē urbem captūrum esse?
Horace, Hŏrātius, -ii, m.
Horatii, the, Hŏrātīi, -ŏrum, m.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horrible, dīrus, -a, -um; nēfandus, -a, -um; h. to relate! nēfās dictū! (246)
horse, ēquus, -i, m.
horseman, ēquēs, -ītis, m.
hospitality, hospītiū, -i, n.
host, hospēs, -ītis, m.
hostage, obses, -īdis, m.
hostile, infestus, -a, -um
Hostilius, Hostilius, -i, m.
hound, cānis, -is, c.
hour, hŏra, -ae, f.
house, dŏmus, -ūs, f. (311); aedes, -iū, f. pl.; household, fāmīlia, -ae, f.
how? in what way? quŏmŏdo? to how great an extent, quam, quantum; how great or much, quantus, -a, -um; how many? quot? how often? quŏtiens? how long? quamdiu? how good, bad, &c., quam bŏnus, mālus, &c.; how few there are who use riches well! quŏtus quisque est qui divītiis bēnē ūtātur! for how much did you buy it? quanti īd ċmīsti? how important it is! quantum intērest or rēfert (329)
however, tāmen

huge, ingens, -tis
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
hundred, centum, indecl. (81)
hunger, fāmes, -is, f.
hungry, to be, ēsūrio, 4
hunt, vēnor, -atus, 1, dep.
hunter, huntsman, vĕnātor, -ōris, m.
hunting, vĕnātio, -ōnis, f.
hurl, conjicio, -jĕci, -jectum, 3
hurt, to, nōceo, 2 (*g. dat.*); laedo, -si, -sum, (*g. acc.*)
hurtful, noxius, -a, um
husband, mārītus, -i, m.
husbandman, agrīcōla, -ae, m.

I, ěgo; see page 45

Ida, Īda, -ae, f.
idle, ignāvus, -a, -um
idleness, ignāvia, -ae, f.
if, sī; *if...not*, nīsi (125, 295)
ignorant, ignārus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*);
ignorant of, to be, ignōro, 1;
nescio, -ii, 4 (*both g. acc.*); *are you ignorant that the man is here?* nescīsne hōmīnem ādesse?
are you ignorant how, &c., nescīsne quōmōdo, *folll. by subjunct.*
ill (*sick*), aeger, -gra, -grum;
(subst.) mālum, -i, n.; *ill* (*adv.*), i.e. badly, mālĕ
illness, morbus, -i, m. [nis, -e
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um; *insig-*
image, ĩmāgo, -inis, f.
imagine, pūto, 1
imitate, ĩmītor, 1, dep.
immediately, stātīm
immense, ingens, -ntis
immortal, -immortālis, e
immortality, immortālitas, -ātis, f.
impatient, ĩmpātiens, -tis
impede, ĩmpĕdio, -īvi or ii, ĩtum, 4
impel, ĩmpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3
impious, ĩmpīus, -a, -um
implore, ōro, 1
important. *It is important for*
Balbus, Balbiintĕrest; (*"should."*
after this v., is often rendered by

pres. inf.) *it is imp. that Catiline should perish*, ĩntĕrest Cātīlinam pĕrīre; *it is i. for me*, meā ĩntĕrest; see Par. 329
importune, fātīgo, 1
impose, ĩmpōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3; *I impose tribute on a nation*, trībūtum genti ĩmpōno
improve, to, ĕmendo, 1 [er
impudent, ĩmpūdēns, -tis; -ly. -ent-
impunity, with, ĩmpūnĕ
impute, he i. this to me as a fault, hōc mīhi vītio dat, or vertit
in, in (*g. abl.*); *in the direction of*, versūs (*folll. acc.*); *in the pages of*, āpūd (*g. acc.*); *in the power of*, pĕnes (*g. acc.*); *in the presence of*, cōram (*g. abl.*), see Par. 178-180; *in order to*, ūt; *in three days*, Par. 263; *in Gabii*, Par. 265; *in haste*, Par. 181.
increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 (*trans.*); cresco, crĕvi, crĕtum, 3 (*intrans.*)
incredible, ĩncrĕdībīlis, -e
incursion, ĩncursio, -ōnis, f.
indeed, quīdem; *you i....but I*, tū quīdem...ĕgo autem, (*or vĕrō*)
India, India, -ae, f.
indignation, see anger
indolence, ignāvia, -ae, f. [(*dat.*)
indulge, ĩndulgeo, -lŕi, -ltum, 2
industrious, dīlīgens, -ntis
infantry, pĕdītes, m. pl.; pĕdītātus, -ūs, m.
infirm, ĩnfīrmus, -a, -um, -um
influence, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2
inform, I ĩnformed him, certīorem eum fĕci (*gen. or dē.*)
in front, adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*
inglorious, ĩnhōnestus, -a, -um
inhabit, ĩncōlo, -colui, -cultum, 3;
hābito, 1
inhabitant, ĩncōla, -ae, m.
injure, nōceo, -ui, 2 (*g. dat.*)
injury, ĩnjūria, -ae, f.
injustice, see (34) *unjust* (*things.*)

innocence, *innocentia*, -ae, f.
innocent, *innocens*, -tis; *insons*,
 -ntis; *innocent of all fault*, *omni*
culpā vacuus (279)
innumerable, *innūmērābilis*, -e
inquire, *quaero*, *quaesīvi*, *quaesī-*
situm, 3; *rōgo*, 1
inquiry, *quaestio*, *ōnis*, f.
insolence, *insolentia*, -ae, f. [3]
inspect, *inspicio*, -spexi, -spectum,
insolent, *insolens*, -tis
instance, *exemplum*, -i, n.
instead of, *prō* (*g. abl.*)
instruct, *ērudio*, 4
instrument, *instrūmentum*, -i, n.
insufficient, *impar*, *gen. impāris*
insult, *contūmēlia*, -ae, f.
insurrection, *sēditio*, -iōnis, f.
integrity, *prōbītas*, *ātis*, f.
intellect, *ingēnium*, -i, n.
intention, *consilium*, -i, n.
inter, *sēpēlio*, -ivī or -ii, -pultum, 4
intercept, *interclūdo*, -si, -sum, 3
intercourse, *consuetūdo*, -inis, f.
interest, *it is my i.*, *meā intērest*; *it*
is the i. of Tullius, *Tullii intērest*
(see Ex. XCII.); (*interests*) *to*
consult my, *Tullius's*, *i.*, *mihī*,
Tullio, *consulere*
into, *in* (*g. acc.*) *Par. 55.* [3]
introduce, *indūco*, -duxī, -ductum,
invade, *invādo*, -si, -sum, 3
in turn, *invicem*
in vain, *frustrā*
inventor, *inventor*, -ōris, m.
investigate, *explōro*, 1
invite, *invito*, 1
invoke, *invōco*, 1
Ireland, *Hibernia*, -ae, f.
iron, (*subst.*) *ferrum*, -i, n.; (*adj.*)
ferreus, -a, -um
island, *insūla*, -ae, f.
it, *see page 46*, *Par. 219-226*
Italy, *Itālia*, -ae, f.
ivory (*subst.*), *ēbur*, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*)
ēburnus, -a, -um
ivy, *hēdēra*, -ae, f.

Javelin, *jācūlum*, -i, n.
jaw, *māla*, -ae, f.
jest, *jōcus*, -i, m.; pl. -i and -a
join, *jungo*, -nxi, -nctum, 3
journey, *itēr*, *itinēris*, n.; *to jour-*
ney, *itēr faciēre*; *we shall have to*
journey, *itēr nōbīs faciendum*
ērit
joy, *gaudium*, -i, n.
joyful, *laetus*, -a, -um
joyfully, *laetē*
judge, *jūdex*, -īcis, m.; *judge, to*,
jūdico, 1
judgment, *jūdicium*, -i, n.; *in my*
judgment, *mē jūdīcē*
juice, *jūs*, *jūris*, n.
jump, to, *salto*, 1
jumper, *saltātor*, -ōris, m.
Juno, *Jūno*, -ōnis, f.
Jupiter, *Juppiter*, *Jōvis*, m.; *dat.*,
acc., abl., *Jōvi*, -em, -ē
just, *justus*, -a, -um
justice, *justitia*, -ae, f.; *jūs*, *jūris*,
 n.

Keen, *ācer*, -crīs, -crē (44, 61)

keep, *tēneo*, -ui, 2; *servo*, 1; *I keep*
my word, *fidem praesto*, -stītī,
 -stātum & -stītum, 1; *keep off*,
arceo, -ui, 2

keeper, *custōs*, -ōdis, m.

key, *clāvis*, -is, f.

kill, *interficio*, -fēcī, -fectum, 3

kind, *bēignus*, -a, -um

kind, *gēnus*, -ēris, n.; *a barren*
kind of style, *jējūna quaedam*
oratio; *see Ex. LXXXIII. note*
 310a

kindness, *bēignitas*, -ātis, f.

kindle, *incendo*, -di, -sum, 3

kindly, *bēignē*

kindness, *a*, *bēnēficium*, -i, n.

king, *rex*, *rēgis*, m.

kingdom, *regnum*, -i, n.

kiss, *oscūlor*, 1, dep.

knee, *gēnū*, -ūs, n.

knife, *culter*, -tri, m.

knight, *ēquēs*, -ītis, m.
know, *scio*, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4;
nōvi, see *nosco*; *I do-not-know*,
nescio, -scīvi -scītum, 4
knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, f.; *with-*
out his knowledge, *clam eo*
known, *nōtus*, -a, -um; *it is well*
known, *constat*

Labienus, *Lābiēnus*, -i, m.
labour, *lābor*, -ōris, m.
lady, *mūlier*, -ēris, f.
lake, *lācus*, -ūs, m.
lamb, *agnus*, -i, m.
lame, *claudus*, -a, -um
lament, *lūgeo*, -xi, -ctum, 2 (*trans.*):
dōleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*) [*grief*]
lamentation, *maeror*, -ōris, m., see
lance, *hasta*, ae, f.
land, *terra*, -ae, f.; *lands* (as
possessions), *āger*, -gri, m.;
finēs, -ium, m. pl.; *land* (*adj.*)
terrestris, -e
large, *magnus*, -a, -um (*for comp.*
and superl. see *Par.* 68); *a l.*
sum of money, *grandis pecūnia*
lashes, *verbēra*, -um, n. pl.
last (as *opp. to first in a race*),
extrēmus, see *Par.* 69; *at last*,
tandem
lasting, *pērennis*, -e
late, *sērus*, -a, -um; *late*, *adv.*
sērō; *rather late, too late*, *sērius*
lately, *nūper*
Latin, *Latīnus*, -a, -um
latter, *hic*; *the former...the latter*,
ille...hic
Lātōna, *Lātōna*, -ae, f.
laugh, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*, 2; *laugh*
at, mock (a person), *irrīdeo*, -si,
-i, -sum, 2 (*g. dat.*); (a thing)
rīdeo (*g. acc.*), *gentler than*
irrīdeo
laughing-stock, *lūdibrium*, -i, n.
laurel, *laurus*, -i, f.
law, (a statute), *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.; (*the*
laws) *jūs*, *jūris*, n.; *the laws of*

men and God, *jūs et fās*; *against*
the laws, *contrā jūs* [*pers.*
lawful, it is, *licet*, -uit, 2, *im-*
lay aside, *pōno*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*,
3; *lay down*, *dēpōno*, -pōsui,
-pōsitum, 3; *lay waste*, *vasto*, 1
laziness, *īnertia*, -ae, f.
lazy, *segnis*, -e; *īners*, -tis
lead, *dūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3; *lead*
out, *ēdūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3
leader, *dux*, *dūcis*, m.
leaf, *frons*, -dis, f.
lean, *adj.*, *mācer*, -cra, *crum*
leap, *to*, *sālio*, -ii or -ūi, -saltum,
4; *leap across*, *transīlio*, -ui,
-sultum, 4; *leap down*, *dēstīlio*,
-sīlui, -sultum, 4; *leap out*,
exsīlio, -sīlui, -sultum, 4, *fol.*
by dē or ē
learn, *disco*, *dīdici*, 3
learned, *doctus*, -a, -um; *learned*
in the law, *jūris perītus* (287)
learning, *doctrīna*, -ae, f. [*“at”*]
least, *mīnīnus*, -a, -um; *at l.*, see
leave, *to*, *linquo*, -liqui, -lictum, 3;
relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3; *I*
leave (by will), *lēgo*, 1; *leave*,
pōtestās, -ātis, f.
left, *rēliquus*, -a, -um; *left (hand)*,
sīnister, -tra, -trum
leg, *crūs*, *crūris*, n.
legion, *lēgio*, -ōnis, f.
leisure, *ōtium*, -i, n.; *leisure, to*,
have, *vāco*, 1
Lemnos, *Lemnos*, -i, f.
lend, *crēdo*, -didi, -dītum, 3
length, *longītūdo*, -īnis, f.; *at*
length, *tandem*
Lentulus, *Lentūlus*, -i, m.
Leonidas, *Leōnīdas*, -ae, m.
less, *mīnor*, -is; *it was sold for*
less (*Ex. LXX.*), *mīnōris ven-*
ditum est; *it is less honourable*,
mīnus hōnestum est
lest, *nē*
let; (*oft. rend. by subjunct.*) *let*
them love, hate, &c., *āment*,

ōdērint; *let this be an example to you, sīt tībī hōc exemplo; (or by fac ut, cūrā ut) let your conduct be improved, fac ut mōres tui emendentur; let them murmur, licet frēmant* (227)
letter, littērae, -arum, f. pl.; *letter of the alphabet*, littēra, -ae, f.; *ēpistōla* (or *ēpistūla*) -ae, f.
level, aequus, -a, -um; *level, to*, aequo, 1
levy, a, dēlectus, -ūs, m.; *levy, to*, conscribo, -psi, -ptum, 3
liar, mendāx, -ācis
liberate, libēro, 1 (*g. abl. of thing*)
liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
lietor, lictor, -ōris, m.
lie (to tell lies), mentior, -itus, 4, dep.; *lie down*, jāceo, -ui, 2; *lie hid*, lāteo, -ui, 2; *lie in ambush, in wait for*, insīdior, 1, (*g. dat.*)
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -inis, n.; *light*, lēvis, -e [-inis, n.
lightning, fulgūr, -ūris, n.; fulmen, like, similis, -e; *I like to walk*, me jūvat, or mīhī plācet, ambulāre
likeness, similitūdo, -inis, f.
limb, membrum, -i, n.
limit, finis, -is, m.; līmēs, -itis, m.
line (of battle), ācies, -ēi, f.
lion, leo, -ōnis, m.
lip, labrum, -i, n.
listen to, audio, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
little, parvus, -a, -um; *I have too l. strength*, pārūm vīrium habeo; *it matters l.* paulum rēfert
live, to, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3; (*dwell*) habitāre or vītān āgēre; *I live on bread*, vescor, (3, dep.) -pāne (207)
load, ōnus, -ēris, n.
lofty, altus, -a, -um
log, lignum, -i, n.
long, longus, -a, -um; *long, adv.* diu; *longer, adv.* diūtius; *how*

long? quamdiu? *I have long been desiring*, jampridem (or jamdūdum) cūpio; *no longer*, non jam
look, look at, aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3; *look for*, quaero, quae-sīvi, quae-situm, 3; *look, a (of the human countenance)*, vultus, -ūs, m.; *look round*, circum-spicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3
lord, dōmīnus, -i, m.
lose, amitto, -misi, -missum, 3; *perdo*, -didi, -ditum, 3
loss, damnum, -i, n.
lot, sors, -tis, f.; *to draw lots about*, sortiri dē
lorable, amābilis, -e
lore, amor, -ōris, m.; *love, to*, amo, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
loring, amans, -tis
low, lowly, hūmīlis, -e
lower, infērior, -us; *the lowest of the citizens*, cīvium infīmi
luck, fortūna, -ae, f.
lucky, fēlix, -icis; *faustus*, -a, -um
luxury, luxūria, -ae, f.
Lydia, Lȳdia, -ae, f.
lying, mendāx, -ācis
lyre, lȳra, -ae, f.

Macedonians, *the*, Mācēdōnes, -ōnum, m.
machine, māchīna, -ae, f.
mad, insānus, -a, -um; āmens, -tis; *mad, to be*, fūro, 3; insānio, -īvi or -ii, 4 [-ae, f.
madness, insānia, -ae, f.; āmentia, magiē, māgīcus, -a, -um
magistrate, māgistrātus, -ūs, m.
maiden, virgo, -inis, f.
make, faciō, feci, factum, 3; *make peace*, pācem ferire; *make haste*, see hasten
man, (hero, &c.), vir, -i, m.; (*human being*) hōmo, -inis, m.; *all to a man*, omnes ad ūnum
manage, admīnistro, 1

manifest, mănifestus, -a, -um
manner, mōs, mōris, m.; mōdus, -i, m.
many, multus, -a, -um, *very* m. permulti, or plūrimi; *so* m. tot
marble, marmor, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*) marmōreus, -a, -um
march, to, (*set out*) prōficiscor, -fectus, 3, dep.; *contendo*, -di, -tum, 3; *march*, a, iter, itinēris, n.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
mark, signum, -i, n.; nōta, -ae, f.; *it is the m. of*, est (*fol.* by *gen.*); *see* Par. 289.
Maro, Māro, -ōnis, m., Publius Vergīlius Māro, *commonly called Virgil*
marriage, mātīmōnium, -ii, n.
marry (*of men*), dūco, duxi, ductum, 3; (*of women*), nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3 (*g. dat.*); *he married Tullia*, Tulliam duxit; *she married Tullius*, Tullio nupsit
Mars, Mars, Martis, m.
marsh, pālūs, -ūdis, f.
master, dōmīnus, -i, m.; *of a school*, māgister, -tri, m.
matter, rēs, rei, f.
matters, it, rēfert, *impers.* (Ex. XCII.); *what does it matter?* quid rēfert? *it matters little what you think*, paulum rēfert quid (240a) sentias
may, *he may come*, to be rendered by licet, possum, fieri potest ut, &c., *according to the sense*; *someone may (be inclined to) say*, dixērit aliquis
meadow, prātum, -i, n.
meat, ōpes, -um, f. pl.; cōpia, -ae, f.
meanwhile, intēreā, intērim
measure, mōdus, -i, m.; *beyond measure*, praeter mōdum; *to measure*, mētor, mensus, 4, dep.

meat, cāro, carnis, f.
medicine, mēdicīna, -ae, f.
meditate, mēditor, -ātus, v. dep.
meet, to, occurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 (*dat.*); *to meet death*, ōbīre mortem; (*adv.*) obviam (*dat.*); *he met me*, obviam mīhī factus est
memorable, insignis, -e
memory, mēmōria, -ae, f.
Menenius, Mēnēnius, -i, m.
mention, mentio, -ōnis, f.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m.
mercy, ciēmēntia, -ae, f.
merited, mēritus, -a, -um
message, nuntius, -i, m.
messenger, nuntius, -i, m.
metal, mētallum, -i, n.
Metellus, Mētellus, -i, m.
middle, mīdst, mēdius, -a, -um; *the middle of the night*, mēdia nox; *he rushed into the midst of the foe*, in mēdios hostes ruit
might (*i.e. had the right to*) licuit; *you m. have come*, l. tibi vēnīre; (*had the ability to*) pōtuisti vēnīre
mighty, pōtens, -tis; ingens, -tis
migrate, mīgro, l
mildness, lēnitas, -ātis, f.
mile, a, mille pāssus; *three miles*, tria mīlia passuum
Miletus, Mīlētus, -i, f.
military, mīlitāris, -e
milk, lāc, -tis, n.
Milo, Mīlo, -ōnis, m.
mind, mens, -tis, f., ānīmus, -i, m.
mindful, mēmōr, -ōris (*g. gen.*)
mine, meus, -a, -um
mine, a, mētallum, -i, n.: *he was condemned to the mines*, in mētalla damnātus est
minge, misceo, -ui, -xtum, 2
mirth, laetitia, -ae, f.
misbecome, *it misbecomes*, dēdēcet, -uit, 2, *impers.* (220)
miserable, miser, -ēra, -ērum

misfortune, mǎlum, -i, n. ; cǎlǎmī-tās, -ātis, f.

mistake, error, -ōris, m.

mix, see *mingle*

mob, turba, -ae, f.

mock, lūdo, -si, -sum, 3

mockery, lūdibrium, -i, n.

modest, mōdestus, -a, -um

modesty, mōdestia, -ae, f.

moist, hūmīdus, -a, -um

moisture, hūmor, -ōris, m.

money, sum of money, pecūnia, -ae, f.

monster, monstrum, -i, n.

monstrous, nefās (indecl.); (used in apposition to statements) the woman (monstrous to relate!) slew her son, mūlier (nefās dictu) filiū suum interfēcit

month, mensis, -is, m.

monument, mōnūmentum, -i, n.

moon, lūna, -ae, f.

morals, mōres, -um, m. pl.

more, (adj.) plūs, plūris (72); he said no more, nec plūra dixit; (adv.) māgis with adj. (to a greater degree), plūs with verbs (to a greater extent); more than, plūsquam (adv.); it was not divided into more than three parts, non plusquam in tres partes divīsum est; let no ship have more than thirty oars, nulla nāvis plusquam trīginta rēmis āgātūr; suprā (prep.); more than twenty thousand fell that day, caesa eo die suprā milia vīginti

moreover, practēreā

morning, in the, mǎnē, (adv. indecl.)

mortal, mortālis, -e.

most, most men, plērique; most of the sheep, plēraequē ovium

mother, māter, -tris, f.

motion, mōtus, -ūs, m.

mound, agger, -ēris, m.

mount, ascendo, -di, -sum, 3; con-scendo, -di, -sum, 3

mountain, mons, -tis, m.

mourn, lūgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2

mournful, maestus, -a, -m.

mourning, luctus, -ūs, m.

mouse, mus, mūris, c.

mouth, ōs, ōris, n.

move, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

much, multus, -a, -um; (adv.)

multum, sometimes used as a noun, Par. 71; much, very much, as (or so) much, money, multum, plūrimum, tantum, pecūniae; for how much did you buy it? quanti id ēmistī? with comp. e.g. (by) much better, multo melior (274)

Mucius, Mūcius, -i, m.

multitude, multitūdo, -īnis, f.

Mummius, Mummius, -i, m.

munificence, mūnīficientia, -ae, f.

murder, caedēs, -is, f.; to murder, interficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; truecīdo, 1

murmur, murmur, -ūris, n.; to

murmur, frēmo, -uī, -ītum, 3;

let them murmur, licet frēmant

music, mūsica, -ae, f.

must (163), and see *necessē*, oportet

my, meus, -a, -um; *voc. mi*

myrrh, myrrha, -ae, f.

myrtle, myrtus, -i, f.

Naked, nūdus, -a, -um

name, nōmen, -īnis, n.; to name,

nōnīno, 1; vōco, 1

narrate, narro, 1

narrow, angustus, -a, -um

nation, gens, -tis, f.; pōpulus, -i, m.

native, a, incōla, -ae, m.; native-

land, patria, -ae, f.

nature, nātūra, -ae, f.

naval, nāvālis, -e

near, prōpinquus, -a, -um; (prep.)

prōpē (g. acc.); ād (g. acc.);

nearer, nearest, see Par. 69

nearly, fērē, paenē

necessary, nēcessārius, -a, -um; it is n. see *necesse* and *opus*

necessity, nēcessitas, -ātis, f.
neck, collum, -i, n.
need, to, ēgeo, -ui, 2 (*abl.*); *there is no need of words*, non ōpus est verbis
needle, ācus, -ūs, f.
neglect, neglēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
negligence, incūria, -ae, f.
neighbour, neighbouring, vicīnus, -a, -um; finitīmus, -a, -um
neither, (*pron.*) neuter, -tra, -trum, Par. 85; (*conj.*) nēc, nēque
nephew, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
Nero, Nēro, -ōnis, m.
nest, nidus, -i, m.
net, rēte, -is, n.
never, nunquam; *nevertheless*, tāmen (*at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word*).
new, nōvus, -a, -um; *news*, nuntius, -i, m.
next, proxīmus, -a, -um; *on the next day*, postēro (*more rarely proxīmo*) diē; *we shall know all within the next five hours*, his quinquē hōris omnia comperta hābebīmus
night, nox, nōctis, f.; *by n.* noctu
nightingale, philōmēla, -ae, f.
Nile, Nilus, -i, m.
nine, nōvem, incl.
no (*adj.*), (*with things*) nullus, -a, -um; (*with persons*) nēmo; *no poet*, nēmo pōēta; *no one*, nēmo (Par. 92); *and no...* nēque ullus; *and no one*, nēc quisquam; *there is no need of words*, nōn ōpus est verbis; *by no means all came*, nēquāquam omnes vērērunt
no (*adv.*), *no longer*, nōn jam; *no better i.e. better by nothing*, nīhilo, or nēquāquam melior; *he said no more*, nēc plūra dixit
nobility, nōbilitas, -ātis, f.

noble, nōbīlis, -e
noise, sōnus, -i, m.; clāmor, -ōris, m.
nor, nēquē, nēc
nose, nāsus, -i, m.
not, nōn; *not even*, (141); *see also* 129, 143; *if... not*, nīsi; *not yet*, nōndum
nothing, nīhil or nīl, n. incl.
notice, ānīmadverto, -ti, -sum, 3
notwithstanding, tāmen
nourish, nūtrio, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4
novelty, nōvītās, -ātis, f.
now, nunc; *meaning already or by this time*, jam.
nowhere, nusquam
Numa, Nūma, -ae, m.
number, nūmērus, -i, m.
nurse, nūtrix, -icis, f.
nut, nux, nūcis, f.
nymph, nympha, -ae, f.

O! O! (*fol. by Acc.*, 205); O that! ūtīnam (330)
oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
oar, rēmus, -i, m.
oath, jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, n.; (*military*) sacrāmentum, -i, n.
obedient, ōbēdiens, -tis (*g. dat.*)
obey, pāreo, -ui, 2, (*g. dat.*)
obtain, pāro, 1; compāro, 1; ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3, (*by entreaty*), impetro, 1; (*by lot*), sortior, -ītus, 4.
occasion, tempus, -ōris, n.
ocean, ōcēānus, -i, m.
odour, ōdor, ōris, m.
of (282-90); *the town (of) Corioli*, Cōriōli oppīdum; *both of us wept*, ambo flēvīmus; *the top of the mountain*, summus mons
offer, offēro, obtūli, oblātum, offerre (238); *offering*, dōnum, -i, n.
office, mūnus, -ēris, n.
offspring, prōlēs, -is, f.
often, saepē; *how often*, quōtiēns
old, antiquus, -a, -um; vētus, -ēris; *an old soldier*, vētus milēs (61);

old age, sēnectūs, -ūtis, f.; *old man*, sēnex, sēnis, m.; *old woman*, ānus, -ūs, f.; *older men*, sēniōres, or māiōres nātu; *older, oldest*, māior, maximus nātu
omen, ōmen, -inis, n.
omit, ōmitto, -misi, -misum, 3
on, in (g. abl.); (upon) sūper; *on account of*, ōb, propter (g. acc.)
once, (meaning "once for all") sēmel; (formerly) ōlim, quondam; (once upon a time) fortē; *at once*, stātim
one (only one), ūnus, -a, -um; *one by one*, singūli, -ae, -a; *a certain one*, quidam (310a); *one...another*, ālius...ālius; *the one...the other*, alter...alter (86)
only, (adj.) sōlus, -a, -um; *only Tullius dissented*, ūni Tullio āliter vīsum est; *not only...but also*, non sōlum...sed etiam, or cum...tum; *he lived only ten years*, sōlos dēcem annos vixit; *if only*, sī mōdo
onset, impētus, -ūs, m.
open, to, āpērio, -ui, -rtum, 4
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
opponent, adversārius, -i, m.
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, f.
oppose, obsisto, -stiti, -stītum, 3 (g. dat.); *if oppōno is used, note that it means "I place against"*; *he opposed the enemy*, oppōsuit sēsē hosti [sum, 3]
oppress, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-
or, (i) in statements and commands, vėl, aut (157a); (ii) in alternative questions (171), ān, preceded by utrum or -nē; (a) (Whether) do you prefer this or that? Utrum hoc (or hocnē) ān illud mavultis? (b) I asked whether...or, interrōgāvi utrum...ān; whether ... or not ... annōn, or necnē
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, m.
order (a command), mandatum, -i,

n.; *jussum*, -i, n.; *to give orders (in war)*, impēro, 1, with dat., ut, and subjunctive; *to order*, jūbeo, jussi, jussum, 2 (acc. and inf.); impēro, 1 (g. dat. and ut.); *order (a rank)*, ordo, -inis, m.; *the order of the knights*, ēquestris ordo; *in order to*, ūt
ornament, ornātus, -ūs, m.
other, ālius, -a, -ud; *the other*, alter (86); *the wealth of-others*, āliēnae divītiaē
ought, dēbeo, -ui, -itum, 2; *you ought to fight*, pugnāre dēbes; *you ought to have fought*, pugnāre dēbuisti (223)
our (87) noster; *our men* (34) nostri
out of, ē, ex (g. abl.); (meaning "outside") extrā; *out of shot*, extrā jactum; *outer, adj.* extērior, neut. -ius (69); *outside*, prep. extrā (g. acc.)
over, sūper; *across*, trans (g. acc.)
overcome, sūpero, 1
overthrow, see overcome
overturn, subverto, -verti, -ver-sum, 3 [sum, 3]
overwhelm, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-
owe, dēbeo, -ui, -itum, 2
own (see Par. 98); *your or my own name*, tuum or meum, ipsius, nōmen (where ipsius agrees with the gen. tui or mei implied in tuum or meum)
owner, dōmīnus, -i, m.
ox, bōs, bōvis, c. See Par. 311
Pace, passus, -ūs, m.
pain, dōlor, -ōris, m.
paint, pingo, -nxi, -ctum, 3
painter, pictor, -ōris, m.
painting, pictūra, -ae, f.
palace, palātium, -i, n.
Pallas, Pallās, -ādis, f.
palm, palma, -ae, f.; *to carry off the palm*, palmam ferre

panic, pavor, -ōris, m.
parched, aridus, -a, -um; tostus, -a, -um
pardon, vēnia, -ae, f.; *I grant him pardon*, do ei veniam; *to pardon*, ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3, g. dat.
parent, pārens, -tis, c.
Paris (of Troy), Pāris, -īdis, m.
parricide, parricida, -ae, m.
part, pars, -tis, f.; *it is the p. of an orator*, oratoris est (289); *to take part in a battle*, interesse praelio; *for my part*, equidem (139)
partner, socius, -i, m.
pass, pass by, pass on, praetereo, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
path, callis, -is, m.
past, praetēritus, -a, -um
patience, patiētia, -ae, f.
patient, patiēns, -ntis (g. gen.)
patiently, patienter
patrician, patricius, -a, -um
pay, stipendium, -i, n.; *to pay*, solvo, -vi, -ūtum, 3; *pendo*, pēpendi, pensum, 3; *pay attention*, operam dare; *pay penalty*, poenas dare; *pay tribute*, tributum pendere; *able to pay*, par (gen. pāris) solvendo, i.e. equal to paying
peace, pax, pācis, f.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.; *to pay penalty*, poenas dare
penetrate, pēnetro, 1
penitence, poenitentia, -ae, f. [m.
penny, dēnārius, -i, m.; as, assis, people, pōpulus, -i, m.
perfidy, perfidia, -ae, f.
perform, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3
perfume, odor, -ōris, m.
perhaps, fortasse, forsitan (forsitan gen. takes the subjunctive)
peril, pēricūlum, -i, n.
perish, pereo, -īvi or -ii, 4
permission, pōtestas, -ātis, f.

permit, pātior, passus, 3, dep.
perseverance, persēverantia, -ae, f.
persevere, persēvero, 1
Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
person, hōmo, -īnis, m.
persuade, persuādeo, -si, -sum (g. dat. of person) (i) *I p. him to come*, p. ei ut vēniat; (ii) *I p. him (or am persuaded) that this is true*, p. ei (or persuāsum est mīhi) hōc vērū esse
Philip, Philippus, -i, m.
Philoctetes, Philoctētes, -ae, m.
philosopher, philōsōphus, -i, m.
philosophy, philōsōphia, ae, f.
physician, mēdicus, -i, m.
picture, tābula, -ae, f.
pierce, transfigo, -xi, -xum, 3
pig, porcus, -i, m.
pigeon, cōlumba, -ae, f.
pile up, exstruo, -struxi, -strutum, 3
plot, gubernātor, -ōris, m.
pine tree, pīnus, -ūs, f.
pious, pius, -a, -um, no superl.
pirate, praedo, -ōnis, m.
pitch (a camp), pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3
pitiful, mīserīcors, -cordis
pity, mīserīcordia, -ae, f.; *feel pity for*, mīserēor, -sērītus or -sertus, 2, dep. (g. gen.); *shew pity to*, mīseror, 1 (g. acc.)
place, lōcus, -i, m.; *plural*, loca, n. pl.; *place, to*, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3; *place before*, antēpono, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3; *virtutem voluptāti antēpōno*, *I p. virtue before pleasure*
plain, campus, -i, m.
plan, consilium, -i, n.
plant, planta, -ae, f.; *plant, to*, see sow
Plataea, Plātaeae, ārum, f. pl.
Plato, Plāto, -ōnis, m.
play, lūdus, -i, m.; *play, to*, lūdo, -si, -sum, 3

plead, a cause, *ăgĕre causam*
pleasant or pleasing, *grātus*, -a, -um;
jūcundus, -a, -um; *dulcis*, -e
please, *plāceo*, -ui, -itum 2 (*g. dat.*)
pleasure, *vōluptas*, -ātis, f.
pledge oneself, to, I p. myself to
pay, *spondeo* (*spōpondi*, *spon-*
sum, 2) *me solūtūrum esse*
plot, *dōlus*, -i, m.
plough, *ārātrum*, -i, n.; *plough, to*,
āro, 1
ploughman, *ārātor*, -ōris, m.
ploughshare, *vōmer*, -ēris, m.
pluck, *carpo*, -psi, -ptum, 3
plunder, *praeda*, -ae, f.; *plunder,*
to, *dīrīpio*, -rīpui, -reptum, 3
plunge, v. trans. merge, -si, -sum,
 3; *he plunged into the water, in*
āquam (or aquā) sē mersit
Pluto, *Plūto*, -ōnis, m.
poem, *carmen*, -īnis, n.
poet, *pōēta*, -ae, m.
point, on the point of, in eo ūt,
see Par. 166
point out, *monstro*, 1
poison, *vēnēnum*, -i, n.
pollute, *polluo*, -ui, -ūtum, 3
pomp, *pompa*, -ae, f.
Pompeius, *Pompeius*, -i, m.
Pontius, *Pontius*, -i, m.
poor, (i.e. not rich) pauper, -ēris (61)
poppy, *pāpāver*, -ēris, n.
populace, *vulgus*, -i, n. or m.
populous, *frēquens*, -tis
porch, *portīcus*, -ūs, f.
Porsena, *Porsēna*, -ae, m.
port, *portus*, -ūs, m.
portent, *prōdīgium*, -i, n.
portion, *pars*, -tis, f.
portrait, *effigies*, -ēi, f.
Porus, *Pōrus*, -i, m.
position, *lōcus*, -i, m.
possess, *hābeo*, -ui, -itum, 2; (*land*)
possideo, *possēdi*, *possessionem*, 2
possession of, to take, *occūpo*, 1; *to*
gain possession of, *pōtior*, *pōtitus*,
 4, dep. (*g. abl.*) *see Par. 207*

possible, it is p. that, fieri pōtest ut
 (299); *as great as possible, quam*
maximū; *as well as possible;*
quam optimē
posterity, *postēri*, -ōrum, m. pl.
pour, *fundo*, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, 3
poverty, *paupertas*, -ātis, f.
power, *pōtestas*, -ātis, f.; *in the*
power of, pēnēs (g. acc.)
powerful, *pōtens*, -tis
practice, *usus*, -ūs, m.
practise, *exerceo*, -ui, -itum, 2
praetor, *praetor*, -ōris, m.
praise, *laus*, -dis, f.; *praise, to,*
laudo, 1
pray, *ōro*, 1; *prēcor*, 1, dep. (*fol.*
by ut)
prayers, *prēces*, -um, f.
precept, *praeceptum*, -i, n.
precious, *prētiōsus*, -a, -um
predict, *praedīco*, -dixi, -dictum, 3
prefer, *mālo*, -ui, -malle, *fol. by*
quam, page 230; *antēpono*,
-pōsui, *-pōsitum*, 3 (*g. acc. and*
dat.)
preparation; I have made every p.,
omnia pārāvi
prepare, *pāro*, 1
presence of, in the, cōram (g. abl.)
present, to be, *adsum*, -fui, -esse (*g.*
dat.)
present, a, *dōnum*, -i, n.; *mūnus*,
-ēris, n.; *present, to*, *dōno*, 1
 (*g. acc. and dat. or abl. and*
acc.); *I p. you with a horse,*
ēquo tē dōno
preserve, *servo*, 1
press, *prēmo*, *pressi*, *pressum*, 3
pretence, *spēcies*, -ei, f.; *simulatio*,
-ōnis, f.
pretend, *simūlo*, 1
prevent, *prōhibeo*, -ui, -itum, 2;
impēdiō, -īvi or -ii, *itum*, 4;
obsto, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, *g.*
dat.; *what prevents you from*
coming? *quid obstat (or prōhi-*
bet) quōmīnus vēnias?

previously, antē, antea
prey, praeda, -ae, f.
Priam, Priāmus, -i, m.
price, prētium, -i, n.; *at a great*,
small price, &c., see Par. 284
pride, sūperbia, -ae, f.
priest, *priestess*, sacerdos, -ōtis, c.
prison, carcer, -ēris, m.
prisoner, captivus, -i, m.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um
prize, praemium, -i, n.
proceed, prōgredior, -gressus, 3,
 dep.
proclaim, prōnuntio, 1; ēdico,
 -dixi, -dictum, 3
proconsul, prōconsul, -ūlis, m.
procure, pāro, 1
prodigal, prōdīgus, -a, -um
produce, pārio, pēpēri, partum, 3
profit, quaestus, -ūs, m.
profuse, see *prodigal*
promise, prōmissum, -i, n.; *to make*
many, large, false, &c., *promises*,
 multa, magna, falsa, &c., prō-
 mittere; *promise, to*, polliceor,
 -citus, 2, dep.; prōmitto, -misi,
 -missum, 3; *I p. to come*, p.
 me ventūrum esse (280); *I pro-*
mise (in marriage), spondeo,
 spōpon-di, sponsum, 2
prone, prōnus, -a, -um
property, rēs, rei, f.; bōna, -ōrum,
 n. pl.
prophet, vātēs, -is, m.
propitious, prōpītius, -a, -um
propose, (a law) rōgo, 1 [3
proscribe, proscribo, -psi, -ptum,
prosperity, rēs sēcundae
prosperous, (of winds, &c.) sēcun-
 dus, -a, -um; *a prosperous city*,
 urbs florentissima
prosperously, fēliciter; *very pros-*
perously, fēlicissimē
protection, praesidium, -i, n.
protest, to, rēclāmo, 1
proud, sūperbus, -a, -um
prove, dēmonstro, 1

provided that, dum mōdo, or dum-
 mōdo (all g. subj.)
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
provisions, commeātus, -ūs, m.
provoke, lācesso, -īvi, -itum, 3
prudence, prudentia, -ae, f.
prudent, prūdēns, -tis
public, publicus, -a, -um
Publius, Publius, -i, m.
pull, trāho, -xi, -ctum, 3
punish, castigo, 1; pūnio, -īvi or
 -ii, itum, 4; *punishment*, sup-
 plicium, -i, n.; poena, -ae, f.
pure, pūrus, -a, -um
purple, purpūreus, -a, -um
purpose, to, habēre in animo
pursue, sēquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
push down, dētrūdo, -si, -sum, 3
put, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3; *put*
over, prae-ficio, -fēci, -fectum,
 3 (g. dat.); *put to death*, inter-
 ficere, morte afficere; *put to*
flight, fūgo, 1; *in fugam* verto,
 see *verto*
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -i, m.

Quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, m.
quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; vīs, vim,
 vī, f. [n.
quarters, winter, hiberna, -ōrum,
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quench (thirst), restinguo, -stinxi,
 -stinctum, 3
question, to, interrōgo, 1; rōgo, 1
quick, cēler, -ēris, -e; *quickly*, cē-
 lēriter; *very quickly*, cēlerrimē;
quickness, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.
quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um; quiētus,
 -a, -um
quite, omnīno
Quirinus, Quīrīnus, -i, m.

Race, gēnus, ēris, n.
rage, ira, -ae, f.; fūror, -ōris, m.;
rage, to, saevio, -ii, -itum, 4
rain, imber, -bris, m.; plūvia,
 -ae, f.

raise, tollo, sustūli, sublātum, 3
rampart, vallum, -i, n.
rank, ordo, -īnis, m.
rapacious, rāpāx, -ācis [-is, -e
rapid, rāpidus, -a, -um; cēler,
rapidity, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.
rare, rārus, -a, -um
rashly, tēmērē
rashness, tēmērītās, -ātis, f.
rate, to value at a very high rate,
 permagni aestimāre
rather, pōtius; *rather slow, quick*,
 &c., tardior, cēlērior; (Par. 65)
ravage, vasto, 1
raven, corvus, -i, m.
raw, crūdus, -a, -um
ray, rādus, -i, m.
reach, attingo, -tīgi, -tactum, 3 (g.
 acc.); pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum,
 4 (foll. by ad)
read, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3
readily, libenter
ready, pārātus, -a, -um; *ready to*
fight, ad pugnandum; *I am*
ready to die, nōn rēcūso mōri
real, vērus, -a, -um
reality, vērītās, -ātis, f.
really, vērē
reap, mēto, messui, messum, 3
rear, ālo, ālui, altum, 3
reason (cause), causa, -ae, f.; *by*
reason of, ōb, propter (both g.
 acc.)
rebuke, incrēpo, -ui, -itum, 1
recall, rēvōco, 1
receive, accīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum,
 3 [not rēcīpio]
recent, rēcens, -tis; nōvus, -a,
 -um
recently, nūper
reckon, nūmēro, 1
recline (at meals) discumbo, -cū-
 bui, -cūbitum, 3 [3
recognise, agnosco, -nōvi, -nītūm,
recollect, rēcorder, rēcorderātus, 1,
 dep.; mēmīni, see Appendix II.,
 p. 215

recollection, mēmōria, -ae, f.
recover, rēcūpēro, 1; rēcīpio, -cēpi,
 -ceptum, 3
recount, narro, 1
refrain (oneself) from, abstīneo,
 -ui, -tentum, 2; *I abstained*
from food, cībo mē abstīnēbam
refer, rēfēro, rettuli, rēlātum (238);
I referred the subject of the host-
ages to the senate, de obsīdibus
 ad Patres rettūli
refuge, perfūgium, -i, n.
refuse, rēcūso, 1; g. acc.; or inf.;
 or foll. by quīn with subjunctive
regard, have regard to, respīcio,
 -spexi, -spectrum, 3 (g. acc.)
region, rēgio, -ōnis, f.
regret, dēsīdērūm, -i, n.; *regret*,
 to, dēsīdēro, 1
Regulus, Rēgūlus, -i, m.
reign, regnum, -i, n.; *during his*
reign, eo regnante or rēge (197);
reign, to, regno, 1 (intr.); impēro
 (g. dat.)
rein, hābēna, -ae, f.
reinforcement, subsidium, -i, n.
reject, rējicio, rējēcī, rējectum, 3
rejoice, gaudeo, gāvīsus, 2, dep.
relate, narro, 1; *horrible to relate!*
 nēfās dictu!
relation, prōpinquus, -i, m.
relieve, the city was relieved from
 the siege, obsīdīōne urbs lēvā-
 ta est (279)
religion, relīgio, -ōnis, f.
relying, frētus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
remain, māneo, -mansī, -nsum, 2;
remain over, sūpersum, -fui, -esse
remaining, relīquus, -a, -um
remarkable, insignis, -e; to a r.
 degree, ūnicē
remedy, rēmēdium, -i, n.
remember, (1) rēcorder, -ātus, 1,
 dep.; reminiscor, -i (g. acc.,
 but sometimes gen.); (2) mēmīni
 (def.), see p. 215
remembrance, mēmōria, -ae, f.

remind, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2
remove, amōveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2
remorse, dōlor, -ōris, m.; poenitentia, -ae, f.
render, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
renew, rēnovo, 1
renown, fāma, -ae, f.
renowned, clārus, -a, -um
repair, rēficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3
repeat, itero, 1
repel, repello, -pulsum, reppūli, 3
repent, poenitet, -uit, 2, impers.
 (see Par. 219 and foll.)
repentance, poenitentia, -ae, f.
reply, responsum, -i, n.; *reply*, to, respondeo, -di, -sum, 2
report, fāma, -ae, f.; rŭmor, -ōris, m.; *report*, to, nuntio, 1; *it is reported that Tullius said*, fertur Tullius dixisse
repose, quies, -ētis, f.
republic, rēspublīca, reipublīcae, f.
repulse, prōpulso, 1
reputation, fāma, -ae, f. [dat.]
resist, rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g.)
resolve, constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
resources, ōpes, -um, f.
response, responsum, -i, n.
rest, quies, -ētis, f.; *rest*, the, [cēter] -ēra, -ērūm, mostly pl.; (residue) rēliquus, -a, -um; *rest*, to, quiesco, -evi, -ētum, 3
restore, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3; restituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
restrain, coerceo, 2
result, ēventus, -ūs, m.
retain, rētīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2
retake, rēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3
retire, rēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3; *the soldiers retire*, milītēs sē rēcīpiunt
retreat, rēceptus, -ūs, m.; *retreat*, to, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3
return, rēditus, -ūs, m.; *return*, to, rēdeo, -ii, -itum, 4; *revertor*, -versus, 3, dep.; *to return thanks*, grātiās āgere

reveal, pātēfācio, -fēcī, -factum, 3
revenge, ultio, -ōnis, f.; *revenge*, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.
revenue, vectigal, -ālis, n.
reverence, rēvērentia, -ae, f.
revere, *reverence*, vēnēror, -atus, 1, dep.; vēreor, -ītus, 2, dep.
rerolt, sēditio, -ōnis, f.; *revolt*, to, dēficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3
reward, praemium, -i, n.; mercēs, -ēdis, f.
Rhodes (island), Rhōdus, -i, f. (265)
rich, divēs, -ītis, reg. comp. (not ditior, dītissimus, except in poetry)
riches, divītiāe, -arum, f.; ōpes, -um, f.
ride, ēquīto, 1; vēhor, vectus, 3
rider, ēquēs, -ītis, m.
ridiculous, rīdīcūlus, -a, -um
right, rectus, -a, -um; *right*, jūs, jūris, n.; fās, indel.
right-hand, dexter, -tra, -trum, (noun), dextra or dextēra, -ae, f.
rightly, jure (Par. 182)
ring, anulū, -i, m.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um
rise (from bed), surgo, surrexi, -rectum, 3; ōrior, ortus, 4 dep.
risk, pēricūlum, -i, n.
rite, ritūs, -ūs, m.
rival, aemūlus, -a, -um (used as a n.); *he had many rivals*, multos sibi aemūlos hābuit
rivalry, aemulatio, -ōnis, f.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.; amnis, -is, m.; flūvius, -i, m.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itinēris, n.
rob, spōlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl. of thing)
robber, latro, -ōnis, m.
rock, scōpūlus, -i, m.; rūpēs, -is, f.
roll, volvo, -vi, volūtum, 3 (trans.); *the stone is rolling*, lāpis volvitur
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Romulus, Rōmūlus, -i, m.

roof, tectum, -i, n.
root, rādix, -icis, f.
rope, fūnis, -is, m.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -ēra, -ērūm
round, rōtundus, -a, -um; tērēs, -ētis
round (prep.), circum (*g. acc.*)
rouse, excito, 1
rout, fūgo, 1; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3
royal, rēgālis, -e; rēgius, -a, -um
rude, rūdis, -e; incultus, -a, um
rugged, asper, -ēra, -ērūm
ruin (destruction), exītium, -i, n.
rule, to, rēgo, -xi, -ctum (*g. acc.*); impēro, 1 (*g. dat.*)
rule, impērium, -i, n.
rumour, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.
run, curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3
run up, accurro, -curri, -cursum, 3
run away, aufūgio, -fūgi, 3
running, cursus, -ūs, m.
rush, impētus, -ūs, m.
rush, to, rūo, -ui, 3 [3]
rush forth, ērumpto, -rūpi, -ruptum,
rustic, rusticus, -a, -um

Sabine, Sābīnus, -a, -um
sacred, sācer, -era, -crum
sacrifice, sācrificium, -i, n.
sacrifice, to, sacrifico, 1
sad, tristis, -e
safe, tūtūs, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um; incōlūmis, -e
safely, tūto
safety, sālūs, -ūtis, f.
sagacious, sāgax, -ācis
sail, a, vēlum, -i, n.
sail, to, nāvigo, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the, causā (*adverbial abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive*)
salt, sal, sālis, m.
salutation, sālūtātiō, -ōnis, f.
salute, sālūto, 1

same, īdem, ēādem, īdem (103)
Samos, Sāmos, -i, f.
Sannites, Sannītes, -ium, m.
sand, ārena, -ae, f.
sate, satiate, sātio, 1; expleo, -plēvi, -pletum, 2
satisfy, sātisfācio, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (*g. dat.*)
savage, saevus, -a, -um; fērus, -a, -um
savageness, fērītās, -ātis, f.
save (i.e. preserve), servo, 1
say, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; *say...not*, nēgo, 1; *do you say it is not so?* nēgasnē ita esse? *I say I cannot come*, nēgo mē venīre posse; *said he, I say (used parenthetically)* inquit, inquam; *see page 315; it is said that Balbus lies*, dicitur Balbus mentīri (Par. 177).
saying, dictum, -i, -n
scanty, exīguus, -a, -um
scarcely, vix
scarcity, inōpia, -ae, f.
scatter, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3
scent, ōdor, -ōris, m.
science, scientia, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scīpio, -ōnis, m.
scorch, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3; torreo, -ui, tostum, 2
scorn, aspernor, 1, *dep.*; sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3
scourge, to, virgis caedēre, lit. *to strike with rods*; (virga, -ae, f.)
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sculptor, sculptor, -ōris, m.
sculpture, sculptūra, -ae, f.
Scythian, Scythā, -ae, m.
sea, māre, -is, n.; pēlāgus, -i, -n. (*adj.*) mārīnus, -a, -um; nāvālis, -e
search, explōro, 1; quaero, -sīvi, -sītum, 3
season, tempus, -ōris, n.; tempestās, -ātis, f.

seasonable, opportūnus, -a, -um
 seat, sēdēs, -is, f.
 second (in ordinary numeration),
 sēcundus, -a, -um; (a, or the
 second, where only two are contem-
 plated), alter, -ēra, -ērūm; a
 second time, itērum; a friend is
 a second self, amīcus est alter
 ego
 secret, secrētus, -a, -um
 secretary, scriba, -ae, m.
 secretly, clam
 secure, sēcūrus, -a, -um; see safe
 security, see safety
 sedition, sēditio, -ōnis, f.
 see, vīdeo, vīdi, visum, 2; to see-to
 this being done, cūrāre hōc faci-
 endum
 seed, sēmen, -inis, n.
 seek, quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum,
 3; (peace) pēto, -īvi or -ii,
 -ītum, 3
 seem, vīdeo, vīsus, 2 dep.
 seize, occūpo, 1; corripio, -ripui,
 -reptum, 3
 seldom, rāro
 self, ipsē, -a, -um, (105, 308); sē
 (94, 218, 305-8)
 sell, vendo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
 seller, venditor, -ōris, m.
 senate, sēnātus, -ūs, m.; also
 Patres, -rum; it was referred to
 the s., ad Patres relātum est
 senate-house, cūria, -ae, f.
 senator, sēnātor, -ōris, m.
 send, mitto, mīsi, missum, 3 (to, ad)
 send away, dimitto, mīsi, missum,
 3
 send for, arcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 [3
 send on, praemitto, -mīsi, -missum,
 sentinel, vīgil, -ilis, m.
 separate, sēpāro, 1
 serious, grāvis, -e
 serpent, serpens, -tis, c.
 servant (slave), servus, -i, m.;
 (attendant) mīnister, -ri, m.
 serve, servio, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4

(g. dat.); to s. (as a soldier),
 stipendium mērere
 service, (benefit), bēnēficiūm, -i, n.;
 to perform military service, sti-
 pendium mērere
 servile, servīlis, -e
 servitude, servitium, -i, n.; (but in
 Cicero) servītūs, -ūtis, f.
 set, (of the sun) occīdo, -cīdi,
 -cāsūm, 3; set out, prōficiscor,
 -fectus, 3, dep. ("for" after this
 v. must be rendered ad; but see
 Par. 249); set an example, ex-
 emplum praebēre; set on fire,
 incendio, -cendi, -censum, 3
 setting, occāsus, -ūs, m.
 seven, septem, indecl.; see Par. 81
 several, plūres, -a (72)
 severe, grāvis, -e; severely, grāviter
 severity, sēvēritās, -ātis, f.
 shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.
 shady, umbrōsus, -a, -um
 shake, quātio, quassum, 3; I shake
 off sleep, somnūm excūtio, -cussi,
 -cussum, 3
 shame, pūdor, -oris, m.
 shameful, turpis, -e
 shameless, impūdēns, -tis
 shamelessness, impudentia, -ae, f.
 shape, forma, -ae, f.
 share, pars, -tis, f.
 share, to, dīvidō, -si, -sum, 3
 sharp, acūtus, -a, -um; ācer, acris,
 acre
 sharpen, ācuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
 shave, rādo, -si, -sum, 3
 she, see he
 shear, tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, 2
 sheep, ōvis, -is, f.
 shepherd, pastor, -ōris, m.
 shield, scūtum, -i, n.; clipeūs, -i, m.
 shine, lūceo, -xi, 2; (of a meadow)
 nīteo, -ui, 2 [ga
 ship, nāvis, -is, f.; (of war) n. lon-
 shipwreck, naufrāgium, -i, n.
 shirt, tūnica, -ae, f.
 shock, impētus, -ūs, m.

shore, litus, -ōris, n.; ōra, -ae, f.
short, brēvis, -e; *for a short time*
 paulisper
shoulder, (h)ūmērus, -i, m.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
shout, to, clāmo, 1
show, to, moustro, 1
shower, imber, -bris, m.
shrub, frūtex, -icis, m.
shun, fūgio, fūgi, 3; vīto, 1
shut, shut in, claudo, -si, -sum, 3
Sicily, Sicīlia, -ae, f.
sick, sickly, aeger, -gra, -grum;
 infirmus, -a, -um
side, lātus, -ēris, n.; *on this side*,
 citrā, cis (*g. acc.*); *on one side...*
on the other side, hinc...illinc;
sides, on all, passim; *sides, from*
all, undīque
sight, vīsus, -ūs, m.; conspectus,
 -ūs, m.; *in the sight of the*
people, pālam pōpulo
sign, signal, signum, -i, n.
silence, sīlentium, -i, n.
silent, sīlens, -tis; tācītus, -a, -um;
 sīlently, tācītē
silent, to be, tāceo, -uī, -itum, 2;
 sīleo, -ui, 2
silver, argentum, -i, n.; (*adj.*)
 argenteus, -a, -um
simple, simplex, -icis
sin, peccātum, -i, n.; scēlus, -ēris, n.
sin, to, pecco, 1
since, quōniān (*with indic.*); cum
 (*with subj.*); *since this is so*, quae
 cum itā sint (151)
sing, canto, 1; cāno, eccīni, can-
 tum, 3
single, ūnus, -a, -um
sink, mergo, -rsi, -rsum, 3 (*trans.*);
 mergor (*intrans.*)
sister, sōror, -ōris, f.
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 3
sit down, consīdo, -sēdi, -sessum, 3
six, sixty, &c. See Par. 81
size, magnitūdo, -inis, f.
skilful, skilled, pēritus, -a, -um

skill, pēritia, -ae, f.
skin, cūtis, -is, f.; pellis, -is, f.
sky, caelum, -i, n.
slander, mālēdico, -xi, -ctum, 3 (*g.*
dat.)
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -i, m.; *to be a slave*,
 servīre
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
slay, interficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3;
 occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, 3
sleep, somnus, -i, m. [4
sleep, to, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -itum,
slender, grācilis, -e (60); tēnuis, -e
slight, lēvis, -e
slip, lābor, lapsus, 3 dep.
slip down, dēlābor, -lapsus, 3, dep.
sloth, ignāvia, -ae, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
slowly, tardē
slumber, somnus, -i, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um
smear, oblīno, -lēvi, -lītum, 3
smell, ōdor, -ōris, m.
smile, rideo, -sī, -sum, 2
snake, cōlūber, -bri, m. (*rare*);
 anguis, -is, m.
snare, insīdiae, -ārum, f.
snatch, rāpio, -uī, -ptum, 3; *snatch*
from, erīpio, -rīpui, -eptum, *g.*
dat. of pers. (192) [3
snatch away, abrīpio, -ui, -reptum,
snow, nix, nīvis, f.
so, (with adj.) tam; *so good*, tam
 bōnus; itā; *and so, i.e. there-*
upon, itāquē; (*in this way*) sīc
 (*to such an extent*) tam
so great, large, tantus, -a, -um
so many, tōt, *indel.*
so much (money, &c.), tantum
 (pēcūniae, &c.).
Socrates, Sōcrātes, -is, m.
soft, mollis, -e
soften, mollio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4
soil, solum, -i, n.; hūmus, -i, f.
soldier, milēs, -ītis, m.
sole, ūnus, -a, -um; ānīcus, -a, -um

some, nonnullus, -a, -um; *some...*
others, alii...alii; *there is some-*
thing after death, est aliquid
 post mortem; *I fear something*
has happened, vereor nē quid
 accidērit; *some poet says*, pōeta
 quidam dicit; *there is some* (i.e.
something of) *art in writing*, est
 aliquid artis in scribendo; *there*
are (some) who say, sunt qui
 dicant

sometimes, interdum, aliquando
somewhat (with adj.) see Par. 65
son, filius, -i, m.; *listen, my son*,
 audi, mi fili (13)

son-in-law, gēner, -ēri, m.

song, carmen, -inis, n.; *cantus*, -ūs,
 m.

soon, mox

soothsayer, hāruspex, -icis, m.

sorrow, dōlor, -ōris, m.

sort, gēnus, -ēris, n.

soul, ānīma, -ae, f.

sound, a, sōnus, -i, m; sōnitus, -ūs,
 m.

sound, to, sōno, -uī, -ītum, 1; *the*
trumpet sounds, tūba cānit

sour, ācerbus, -a, -um

source, fons, -ntis, m.

sow, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.

space, spātium, -i, n.

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.

spare, parco, pēperci, parsuī, 3
 (g. dat.)

Sparta, Sparta, -ae, f.

speak, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; lōquor,
 -cūtus, 3 dep.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

spectacle, spectācūlum, -i, n.

spectre, spectrum, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.

speech, ōrātio, -ōnis, f.; contio,

speed, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.; *with*

speed, speedily, cēlērīter

spend, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sump-
 tum, 3 [m.]

spirit, spīritus, -ūs, m.; ānīmus, -i,

splendid, splēndīdus, -a, -um

splendour, splendor, -ōris, m.

spoil, spōlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl.
 of thing)

spoils, spōlia, -ōrum, n.

sport, lūdus, -i, m.

spot, lōcus, -i, m.; plur. lōca

spring, vēr, vēris, n.

spring forward, prōsīlio, -sīlūi,
 -sultum, 4

spur, calcar, -āris, n. (39)

spurn, sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3

spy, explōrātor, -ōris, m.

squander, dissīpo, 1.

stab, confōdio, -fōdi, -fossūm, 3

stag, cervus, -i, m.

stand, sto, stēti, statum, 1

stand up, consurgo, -surrexi, 3

standard, signum, -i, n.

star, stella, -ae, f.; sīdus, -ēris, n.

state, civītās, -ātis, f.; republica,
 reipublicae, f.

station, to, lōco, 1

statue, stātua, -ae, f.

stay, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; mōror,
 -ātus, 1 dep.

steadily, constanter [-ōcis

stern, sēvērus, -a, -um; atrox,

sternness, sēvērītās, -ātis, f.

stick, bācūlus, -i, m.

still (i. e. yet), adhūc

stir, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

stomach, venter, -tris, m.

stone, lāpis, -īdis, m.; saxum, -i,
 n.

stop, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3

stop, (trans.) mōror, 1, dep.

storm, prōcella, -ae, f.; tempestās,
 -ātis, f.

storm, to, expugno, 1

story, fābūla, -ae, f.

straight, rectus, -a, -um

strange, mīrus, -a, -um

stranger, hospēs, -ītis, m.; advēna,
 -ae, m.

stratagem, dōlus, -i, m.

stream, flūmen, -īnis, n.; rīvus, -i,
 m.

street, vicus, -i, m.
 strength, vires, -ium, f. pl.
 strengthen, firmo, 1
 stretch out, extendo, -di, -sum, 3
 strew, sterno, strāvi, strātum, 3
 strike, strike down, caedo, cēcidi, caesum, 3; *having been struck by lightning*, fulmine ictus (-a, -um)
 strive, (i.e. endeavour) nītor, nīsus or nixus, 3, dep. (with ut and subjunctive); (i.e. fight) certo, 1; *we strive for mastery with the Roman people*, de impērio cum pōpūlo Rōmāno armis certāmus (constr. with inf., and with dat. for cum, is mostly poetical)
 strong, vālidus, -a, -um
 struggle, certāmen, -inis, n.
 struggle, to, luctor, 1 dep.
 study, stūdiū, -i, n.
 study, to, stūdeo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)
 stuff, to, farcio, farsī, fartum, 4
 stupid, stultus, -a, -um
 subdue, subjugate, sūbīgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3
 subtle, callidus, -a, -um
 subtract, dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 (foll. by de; or dat. of pers., acc. of thing)
 succeed, I succeed, i.e. I prosper, rēs mīhī bēnē succēdit, or rem bēnē gēro. N.B. *not, in this sense*, succēdo, -ssi, -ssum, 3, which is only used for "take the place of," and g. dat.; *fresh men succeeded the wearied*, integri dē-fātīgātis successērunt
 success, victōria, -ae, f.; *they returned without s.*, rē infectā rē-dīerunt
 successfully, fēliciter; *more successfully*, fēlicius
 succumb, succumbo, succūbui, succūbitum, 3 (g. dat.)
 such, tālis, -e
 sudden, sūbitus, -a, -um

suddenly, rēpentē, sūbito, stātim
 Suevi, Suēvi, -ōrum, m.
 suffer, pātor, passus, 3 dep.
 sufficient, sātis, incl.; idōneus, -a, -um; *sufficiently good*, sātis bōnus
 suited for, suitable, aptus, -a, -um, idōneus, -a, -um (with dat. or ad; aptus, with persons, dat.)
 sum of money, pēcūnia, -ae, f.
 summer, aestas, -ātis, f.
 summit, culmen, -inis, n.
 summon, vōco, 1; convōco, 1
 sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
 sunrise, lūx, lūcis, f.; sōlis ortus
 sunset, sōlis occāsus
 sup, cēno, 1
 superstition, sūperstītio, -ōnis, f.
 supper, cēna, -ae, f.
 suppliant, supplex, -īcis
 supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.; *we are hindered from getting s.*, prōhibēmur commeātu
 support (nourish), nūtrio, -īvi, -itum, 4; sustīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2; sustento, 1
 suppose, pūto, 1
 supreme, suprēmus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
 sure, certus, -a, -um
 surname, cognōmen, -inis, n.
 surrender, trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3; also (but most frequ. of s. persons) dēdo, dēdidi, dēditum, 3
 surround, circumdo, -dēdi, -dātum, dāre (acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. LXII.) [dat.]
 survive, sūpersum, -fui, -esse (g. suspicion, suspicio, -ōnis, f.
 sustain, sustīneo, 2; (nourish), nutrio, -īvi, -itum, 4
 swallow, hīrundo, -inis, f.
 swan, cycnus, -i, m.
 swear, jūro, 1; *I swear to come*, j. me ventūrum esse; *I s. to obey a law*, j. in lēgem.
 sweat, sūdor, -ōris, m.

sweet, dulcis, -e ; suāvis, -e
swift, cēler, -is, -e
swiftly, celēritēr
swiftness, celēritās, -ātis, f.
swim, to, no, nāvi, nātum, 1
sword, glādius, -i, m. ; *with fire*
and sword, ferro atque igni
Syracuse, Sŷrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl.
Syria, Sŷria, -ae, f.

Table, mensa, -ae, f.

tail, cauda, -ae, f.

take, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3 ; *take*
away, adīmo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3 ;
aufēro, abstūli, ablātum, auferre ;
take by storm, expugno, 1 ; *take*
care of, cūro, 1 (*g. acc.*) ; *take*
care to, cūrā ut ; *take place*, see
happen

talk, lōquor, lōcūtus, 3 dep.

talkative, lōquāx, -ācis [-um

tall, prōcērus, -a, -um ; *altus*, -a,

tame, mansuētus, -a, -um ; *to tame*,

dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1

Tarquin, Tarquīnius, -i, m.

task, ōpus, -ēris, n.

taste, gusto, 1

tasteful, ēlēgans, -ntis ; *tastefully*,
 ēlēganter

Tatius, Tātius, -i, m.

Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.

tax, tribūtum, -i, n. ; *vectīgal*,
 -ālis, n.

teach, doceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (*g. two*
acc.) See Par. 312

teacher, māgister, -tri, m.

tear, lācrima, -ae, f.

tear, to, scindo, scidi, scissum, 3 ;

tear away, āvello, -velli, -vulsum,

3 ; *tear out*, ēvello, -velli, -vulsum,

3 ; *to tear away from one's em-*
brace, āvellere de amplexu

tell, dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *dat. & acc.*

temerity, tēmērītās, -ātis, f.

temper, ānīmus, -i, m.

tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f. ; *prō-*
cella, -ae, f.

temple, templum, -i, n. ; *aedes*, -is
 f.

ten, dēcem, *indecl.* : (*distr.*) dēnus
 -a, -um ; see Par. 314

tender, tēner, -ēra, ērum (61)

tent, tentōrium, -i, n.

tenth, dēcimus, -a, -um

terminate, finio, 4

terrible, dīrus, -a, -um

terrify, terreo, -ui, -itum, 2

territories, fines, -ium, m.

terror, terror, -ōris, m.

Thames, Tāmēsis, -is, m.

than, (62, 63) quam

thanks, grātiae, -ārum, f. ; *I return*
t., grātias āgo

that (*dem. pron.*), illē, -a, -ud ; *is*,
 ēa, id ; *that of yours*, istē, -a,
 -ud (*if used with adj. and nouns*
the position of illē, is, istē is like
that of hic ; see "this")

that (*rel. pron.*) qui ; *that* (*nom. or*
abl.) . . . not, quīn (145, 300) ;
there was no one that did not hate
you, nēmo ērat quīn tē ōdisset

that (*conj.*) ut ; *that not*, nē (131) ;
(with comp.) quo (303) ; *that*
they might the more easily go, quo
 fācilius irent. N.B. *Unless "that"*
denotes purpose or consequence, it
must not be rendered by ut

theatre, theātrum, -i, n.

Theban, Thēbānus, -i, m.

Thebes, Thēbae, -ārum, f.

theft, furtum, -i, n.

their, eōrum, cārum, cōrum ; (*own*)
 suus, -a, -um

Themistocles, Thēmistoclēs, -is, m.

then, tum ; *tunc* ; *deinde* ; see tum,
 tunc in L. Vocab.

thence, indē

there, ibi, illīc ; *often not trans. in*
Lat., e.g. there are some who say
sunt qui dicant [Vocab.]

therefore, igitur, itāquē ; see Lat.
Thermopylae, Thiermōpŷlae, -ārūm,
 f.

Thetis, Thētis, -īdis, f.
thick, (of garments) *crassus*, -a, -um; *densus*, -a, -um
thicket, dūmētūm, -i, n.
thief, fūr, -is, m.
thin, mācer, -cra, -crum; *tenuis*, -e
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, pūto, 1; *existō*, 1; *cōgito*, 1; *reor*, rātus, rēri; *thinking that the enemy were at hand*, rātus hostes ādesse; *I thought to myself*, mēcum cōgītābam
third, tertius, -a, -um
thirst, sītis, -is, f. *acc.* -im, *abl.* -i; *to die of thirst*, sītī mōri
thirteen, trēdecim, *indecl.*
thirty, trīgintā, *indecl.*
this, hic, haec, hōc (if used with *Adj.* and *Noun*, mostly comes between the two; *this sad calamity*, tristis haec cālāmītās; or else tam, "so" is inserted, haec tam tristis c.; *this great army*, hic tantus exercītus). N.B. the same rule applies to the *pron. adj.* generally, illē, istē, meus, tuus, &c.
thither, eo, illūc
thou, tū, see p. 45
though, quamvis (*g. subj.*); quamquam (*g. ind.*), see Par. 323
thousand, see Par. 80
threat, mīna, -ae, f.
threaten, mīnor, 1, *dep.* (*g. acc. of thing and dat. of person*); *I threaten you with death*, mīnor tībī mortem
three, trēs, tria (78); *three hundred*, trēcenti, -ae, -a; *three hundred apiece*, trēcēni, -ae, -a (314); *three times*, thrice, ter; *three days*, trīdūm, -i, n.; *three years*, triennium, -i, n.
thrift, parcus, -a, -um
throat, guttur, -ūris, n.
throne, sōlium, -i, n.

through, pēr (*g. acc.*)
throw, cōjicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3
thrush, turdus, -i, m.
thumb, pollex, -icis, m.
thunder, to, tōno, -ui, -ītum, 1
thunderbolt, fulmen, -inis, n.
thus, sic, itā
thy, tuus, -a, -um
Tiber, Tībēris, -is, m.
tide, aestus, -ūs, m.
tiger, tigris, -is or -īdis, c.
till, dōnec, dum, quoad; *to till*, cōlo, -ui, cultum, 3
time, tempus, -ōris, n.; *a second time*, itērūm; *by this time*, jam; *four times*, see "four"
timely, opportūnus, -a, -um
timid, tīmīdus, -a, -um
Titus, Titus, -i, m.
to, in, ād (*g. acc.*). N.B. (1) "to" before a verb is never to be rend. by the *Lat. inf.* unless the *inf.* is the *subj.* or *obj.* of another verb; (2) nor by the *supine* except after a verb of motion; (3) it is rendered by the *subjunctive* when meaning "in order to," and also after verbs of asking, &c. (143); (4) see also ād and gerundive (186)
to-day, hōdiē
together, sīmul, ūna; *having conversed*, inter sēsē collōcūtī
toil, lābor, -ōris, m.
token, indīcium; -i, n.; *pledge*, pignus, -ōris, n.
tolerate, pātior, passus, 3 *dep.*
tomb, sēpulerum, -i, n.; tūmūlus, -i, m.
to-morrow, crās
tongue, lingua, -ae, f.
too, too much, (*adv.*) nīmīs, nīmīum; *too little*, pārūm (*adv.* used also as a *noun*); *he has too little strength*, pārūm vīrium hābet; *this task is too difficult for you to accomplish*, hōc ōpus difficīlius est quam quod (or ut

hōc) perficiās; *see also* Par. 64, 149

tooth, dens, -tis, m.

top, vertex, -icis, m.; *the top of the mountain*, mons summus

torch, taeda, -ae, f.; fax, -facis, f.

torn, lacer, -ēra, -ērūm

torture, crūciātus, -ūs, m.

touch, tango, tetigi, tactum, 3

towards, versus (of places); ergā (of conduct towards persons); ad (all g. acc.), *see* Par. 183

tower, turris, -is, f.

town, oppidum, -i, n.

trace, vestigium, -i, n.

train, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2; (educate) ērūdio, -ivi, -itum, 4

traitor, proditor, -ōris, m.

tranquil, tranquillū, -a, -um

tranquillity, tranquillitas, -ātis, f.

transact, ago, ēgi, actum, 3

transfer, transport, transfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre

travel, iter facere

traveller, viātor, -ōris, m.

treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um;

treacherously, per dōlum

treachery, perfidia, -ae, f.; dōlus, -i, m.

treason, (military) prōditio, -ōnis, f.; (civil) mājestas, -atis, f.

treasure, thēsaurus, -i, m.

treasury, aerārium, -i, n.

treaty, foedus, -ēris, n.

tree, arbor, -ōris, f.

tremble, trēmo, -ui, 3; (from top to toe) contrēmo, -ui, 3

tribe, tribus, -ūs, f.

tribunal, tribūnal, -ālis, n.

tribune, tribūnus, -i, m.

tribuneship, tribūnātus, -ūs, m.

tribute, tribūtum, -i, n.

trick, dōlus, -i, m.

trifles, nūgae, -ārum, f. pl.

triumph, triumphus, -i, m.; to triumph, triumpho, 1

Trojan, Trojānus, -i, m.

troop (of horse), turma, -ae, f.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f.

trophy, trōpaeum, -i, n.

trouble, ōpēra, -ae, f.; to trouble, turbo, 1

troublesome, mōlestus, -a, -um

Troy, Troja, -ae, f.

true, vērū, -a, -um; truly, i.e.

truthfully, vērē

trumpet, tūba, -ae, f.

trunk, truncus, -i, m.;

trust, to, crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3

(dat.); confido, -fisis sum, 3

(dat. of pers., abl. of thing);

trusting in the nature of their

position, naturā lōci confisi;

trust, fides, -ei, f.

trusty, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um

truth, (abstract) vērītās, -ātis, f.;

(what is true, fact) vērū, -i,

n.; if you will have the truth, si

vērū andire vīs; you have

spoken the truth, vērā dixisti

try, cōnor, 1, dep. (with inf.); make

proof of, tento, 1; we have tried

this danger, tēntāvimus hoc pēri-

cūlum

Tullius, Tullius, -i, m. (13)

Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.

Tulliola, Tulliola, -ae, f., i.e. the

little Tullia (a child's name)

Tullus, Tullus, -i, m.

tumult, tūmultus, -ūs, m.

turn, vērto, -ti, -sum, 3; he turned

to (in speak.ing), se convertit

ad; the enemy turned their backs,

i.e. fled, terga dēderunt; turn

out, ēvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4;

in turn, invicem

twelve, *see* Par. 81; distrib. 314

twenty, twentieth, *see* Pars. 81, 314

twice, bis

twist, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2

two, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); two

hundred, dūcenti, -ae, -a; two

days, bīdium, -i, n.

tyrant, tŷrannus, -i, n.

Ugliness, dēformitas, -ātis, f.

ugly, turpis, -e

Ulysses, Ūlysses, -is, m.

unable, I am, nēqueo, -quīvi, 4;

imperf. nequibam; *see* L. Vocab.

unaccustomed, insōlītus, -a, -um

unarmed, īnērmis, -e

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)

uncultivated, incultus, -a, -um

under, sūb, Par. 180 (*g. abl. or acc.*); *under Caesar (as general)*,

Caesāre dūce (197)

undergo, sūbeo, -īvi or -ii, 4

understand, intellēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3

undertake, suscipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; *to undertake politics*,

cāpēssere rem-publicam

undeserving, indignus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*)

unequal, impār, -pāris

unfair, inīquus, -a, -um

unfortunate, infēlix, -īcis

unfriendly, inīmīcus, -a, -um

ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um

unhappy, infēlix, -īcis

unity, concordia, -ae, f.

universal, ūnīversus, -a, -um

unjust, inīustus, -a, -um

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um

unlearned, indoctus, -a, -um

unless, nīsi (*same construction as si*, *see* Par. 125, 295)

unlike, dissīmīlis, -e

unlucky, infēlix, -īcis; infaustus, -a, um [*gen.*]

unmindful, immēmor, -ōris, (*g.*)

unpleasant, ingrātus, -a, -um

unseasonable, īnoppōrtūnus, -a, -um

unsuccessfully, infēliciter

until, dum; dōnēc; quoad; *not until*, nōn antēquam; *he did not answer until I twice questioned him*, nōn antē respondit quam bīs cum interrōgāvī

unwarlike, imbellis, -e

unwilling, I am u. to come, nōlo (nōlui, nolle, 234) vēnīre; *she came unwillingly*, invīta (-a, -um) vēnit. N.B. *This adj. agrees with its noun, but is only used adverbially*; invītus est is not Latin [*abl.*]

uncorthy, indignus, -a, -um (*g.*)

uphold, sustīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2

upon, sūper (180)

uprightness, prōbitās, -ātis, f.

up to, tēnus (178)

urge, urgeo, ursi, 2

us, *see* Par. 90, 93

use, to, ūtor, usus, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*)

used, he, they, used to, &c. (*turn by imperf. indic. or by sōleo, sōlītus*, 2, dep.)

useful, ūtīlis, -e

useless, inūtilis, e

usual, sōlītus, -a, -um

usually, fērē, plērumquē

utter, ēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3

utterly, omnīno; *utterly destroy*, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (*for other verbs used with "utterly," see the verbs themselves*)

Vain, vānus, -a, -um; inānis, -e

rainily, in rain, frustrā; nēquīquam

valley, vallis, -is, f.

valour, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

value, prētium, -i, n.; *to estimate at a high value*, magni aestīmāre;

to value, aestīmo, 1 (283, 284)

valuable, prētiōsus, -a, -um

vanish, ēvānesco, ēvānui, 3

vanquish, vīneo, vīci, victum, 3

variety, vāriētās, -ātis, f.

various, vāriūg, vārius, -a, -um

vast, ingens, -tis

venerate (worship), vēnēror, 1, dep.

venom, vīrus, -ī, n.

venture, audeo, ausus, 2, dep.

Venus, Vēnus, -ēris, f.

verse, versus, -ūs, m.

very, ipsē, -a, -um; *your very life*,
vīta tua ipsa; *very small*, par-
vūlus, -a, -um; *very great, very*
many, &c., permagnus, per-
multi, &c.

vessel, nāvis, -is, f.; nāvīgium, -i,
n.

Vesta, Vesta, -ae, f.

vice, vītium, -i, n.

vicious, prāvus, -a, -um

victim, victīma, -ae, f.

victor, victor, -ōris, m.

victorious, victor, -ōris, m.; victrīx,
-icis, f.

victory, victōria, -ae, f.

vigour, vīgor, -ōris, m.; vīres, -ium,
f.

village, vīcus, -i, m.

villain, scēlestus, -a, -um

vine, vītis, -is, f.

vineyard, vīnea, -ae, f.

violate, viōlo, 1

violence, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vī, f.;
by v., per vim, or vī

violent, viōlentus, -a, -um

violently, viōlenter, or vī

Virgil, Vergīlius, -i, m.

virgin, virgo, -inis, f.

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

virtuous, prōbus, -a, -um

vision, vīsus, -ūs, m.; *dream*, som-
nium, -i, n.

visit, vīso, -si, 3; *visit (with punish-*
ment), afficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

void, expers, -tis

vomit forth, ēvōmo, -ui, -itum, 3;
(against any one, in with acc.)

row, vōtum, -i, n.; *row, to*, vōveo,
vōvi, vōtum, 2

Vulcan, Vulcānus, -i, m.

vulture, vultur, -ūris, m.

wait, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; *wait*
for, expecto, 1

walk, ambūlo, 1

wall, mūrūs, -i, m.; *town walls*,
moenia, -ium, n. pl.

wander, erro, 1; vāgor, pālor, 1,
dep.

wandering, error, -ōris, m.

want, inōpia, -ae, f.

wanting, to be, dēsum, -fui, -esse

war, bellum, -i, n.; *in war and in*
peace, dōmi bellique, or (more
commonly) mīlitiaeque (265); *a*
ship of war, nāvis longa

warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um

warm, cālīdus, -a, -um; *warm, to*
grow, cālesco, 3

warmth, cālor, -ōris, m.

warn, mōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)

wash, lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, 1

waste, lay waste, vasto, 1; *to waste*
time, tempus tēre, -trīvi, -trī-
tum, 3; *waste (adj.)*, a w. district,
rēgio inculta

watch, vīgīlia, -ae, f.; *watch, to*,
vīgīlo, 1

water, āqua, -ae, f.; *water, to*,
rīgo, 1; *a river waters this*
valley, amnis hanc vallem rīgat

wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.

way, via, -ae, f.: iter, itinēris, n.:
manner, mōdus, -i, m.; *in what*
way? quōmōdo?

we, see page 45

weak, infirmus, -a, -um

weaken, mīnuo, -ni, ūtum, 3

weakness, debilitās, -ātis, f.

wealth, divītia, -arum, f.; ōpes,
-um, f.

wealthy, divēs, -ītis

weapon, tēlum, -i, n.

weary, fessus, -a, -um; *I am weary*
of, taedet mē (g. gen.) Par. 222
and foll.

weave, texo, -ui, -xtum, 3

web, tēla, -ae, f.

weep, fleo, flēvi, flērum, 2

Wage, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3; *I*
wage war, bellum gēro

weight, pondus, -ēris, n.

weighty, grāvis, -e

well, a, pūteus, -i, m.; (*adv.*) bēnē;

well, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2; *well*

known, it is, constat, 1, impers.

west, occīdens, -tis, m.

wet, mādīdus, -a, -um

whale, bālaena, -ae, f.

what? quīd? (*that which*) quod;

what was good for one was bad

for another, quod ālii prōfuit,

ālii obfuit; *what deed?* see

Par. 111

what (in order of number)? quōtus,

-a, -um? *what o'clock?* quōta

hōra?

whatever, quisquīs, quicūquē;

w. he said, was false, quodcum-

quē dixit, falsum ērat; (*oft. used*

partitively) *whate'er arms we*

had, were given up to the enemy,

quidquīd (*or quodcumquē*) armō-

rum hābuīmus, hostībūs trādī-

tum est

when, (1) cum,¹ ūbi; (2) (*inter-*

rogative), quando? (*also used*

dependently); *tell me when you*

will come, dīc mīlī quando

ventūrus sīs

whence, undē

[ūbi?

where, quā, ūbi; (*interrogative*)

whether, conj. (1) (*in dep. quest.*)

num, nōnnē (135); *whether...or*,

(a) utrum...ān, (b) -nē...ān (171);

I do not know w., nescio ān (302)

whether, conj. (2) (*in alternative-sup-*

positions), *whether...or* (a) sive...

sive, (b) seu...seu; *whether this*

is true or false, I shall go to

Rome, ēquīdem, sive haec vēra

sunt, sive falsa, Rōmam ībo

whether (*archaic pron.*) *whether of*

the two? ūter? utra? utrum?

which, qui, quae, quod; (*of the*

two) ūter, utra, utrum, see Par.

85

while, dum (272), foll. by indic.

white, candidus, -a, -um

whither, quō; *whither in the world?*

quonam terrārum?

who, qui, quae, quod; *T. was the*

first who did this, T. primus hōc

fēcīt; (*interrogative*) quis, quīd

whole, tōtus, -a, -um (85); *the whole*

of the valley, vallis tōta

why, cūr?

wicked, imprōbus, -a, -um

wickedness, scēlus, -ēris, n.

wide, lātus, -a, -um

wife, uxor, -ōris, f.

wild, fērus, -a, -um; *w. beast*, fēra,

-ae, f.; *wild boar*, āper, -pri, m.

will, vōluntas, -ātis, f.

willing, to be, vōlo, vōlui, velle

willingly, libenter

wind, ventus, -i, m.

wine, vīnum, -i, n.

wing, āla, -ae, f.; *of an army*,

cornū, -ūs, n.

winter, hiemps, -ēmis, f.; *winter*

quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n.

wisdom, sāpientia, -ae, f.; (*military*)

as distinct from "valour," consi-

lium, -i, n.

wise, sāpiens, -tis

wish, vōluntās, -ātis, f.; stūdiū,

-i, n.; *wish, to, or wish for*, vōlo,

velle, vōlui; pp. 128, 129

with, cum (*g. abl.*); (*in-the-house-*

of) āpūd (178)

withdraw (*trans.*), dētrāho, -traxi,

-tractum, 3; (*intrans.*) recēdo,

-cessi, -cessum, 3

¹ The form *quum*, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions of classical authors, has no authority. It is "of the rarest possible occurrence even in late MSS." and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as "dead and buried."

within, intrā (g. acc.); (adv.) intus; *w. three days*, tribus hīs diēbus (263a)

without, sine (g. abl.); (outside), extrā (g. acc.), (adv.) extrā; *without accomplishing anything*, rē infectā; *without the knowledge of*, clam (g. abl.)

withstand, rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g. dat.)

witness, testis, -is, m.; *witness, call to*, testor, 1, dep.

witty, lepīdus, -a, -um

woe! vae! (interjection)

wolf, lūpus, -i, m.

woman, mūlier, -ēris, f.; fēmina, -ae, f.

womanish, mūliebris, -e

wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1, dep.

wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um

wont, to be, sōleo, sōlītus, 2; (also *rend. by imperf. indic.*) *the land was wont to be laid waste*, āger vastābātur

wood, a, silva, -ae, f.; *wood*, mātēries, ēi, f.

wooden, ligneus, -a, -um

wool, lāna, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -i, n.; *to keep one's word*, fidem praestāre; *to bring word*, rēnuntiāre

work, ōpus, -ēris, n.

workman, fāber, -ri, m.

world, where, whither, &c., in the world? ubī, quonam, &c., terrārum? *the world*, (terrārum) orbis, -is, m.; N.B. mundus, -i, m. means "universe" incl. the stars; *the Campanian country is the most beautiful in the world*, āger Campānus orbis (gen.) terrārum pulcherrīmus est

worm, vermis, -is, m.

worn out, confectus, -a, -um

worse, pējor, -ōris (68)

worship, cōlo, -ui, -cultum, 3

worst, pessīmus, -a, -um (69)

worth, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2

worthless (of men), nēquam, indecl.; *more w., most w., see Par. 68*

worthy, dignus, -a, -um (g. abl.); *the worthy Tullius, T., vīr optimus*; *worthy, to deem*, dignor, 1, dep. (g. abl.)

would, he would not (i.e. wished not to) come, nōluit venīre; *he would (i.e. he was determined to) come*, vōluit venīre

would that, ūtīnam (g. pres. subj. of possible, imperf. subj. of impossible wishes; see Par. 295)

wound, vulnus, -ēris, n.; *wound, to*, vulnēro, 1

wrath, ira, -ae, f.

wreck, naufrāgium, -i, n.

wreath, sertum, -i, n.

wrest, to, extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum, 2 (dat. of pers. or abl. with a)

wretched, miser, -ēra, -ērūm

write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3

writer, scriptor, -ōris, m.

wrong, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

Xenophon, Xēnōphon, -phontis, m.

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, m.

Year, annus, -i, m.

yearly, every year, quōtānnis

yesterday, hēri; *yesterday night*, nox hesterna

yet, as yet, adhūc; *nevertheless*, tāmen (at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word); *not yet*, nōndum

yield, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (g. dat.)

yoke, iūgum, -i, n; *to scud under the yoke*, sub jūgum mittēre

you, vōs; see page 45

young (man), jūvēnis, -is, -m.; *adulescens*, -tis, m.; (*boys*), puēri

parvūli; *young (ones)*, pulli,
-ōrum, m.; '*the young*' may be
transl. jūniōres, or pūēri
younger, jūnior, -iōris (69); *young-*
est, mīnimus nātu
your, vester, -tra, -trum

yourself, see Par. 105 (*not sē*)
youth, iūvēntūs, -ūtis, f.; *youth*, a
juvēnis, -is, m.

Zeal, stūdium, -i, n.; *with zeal*,
cum (or summo) stūdio, 181

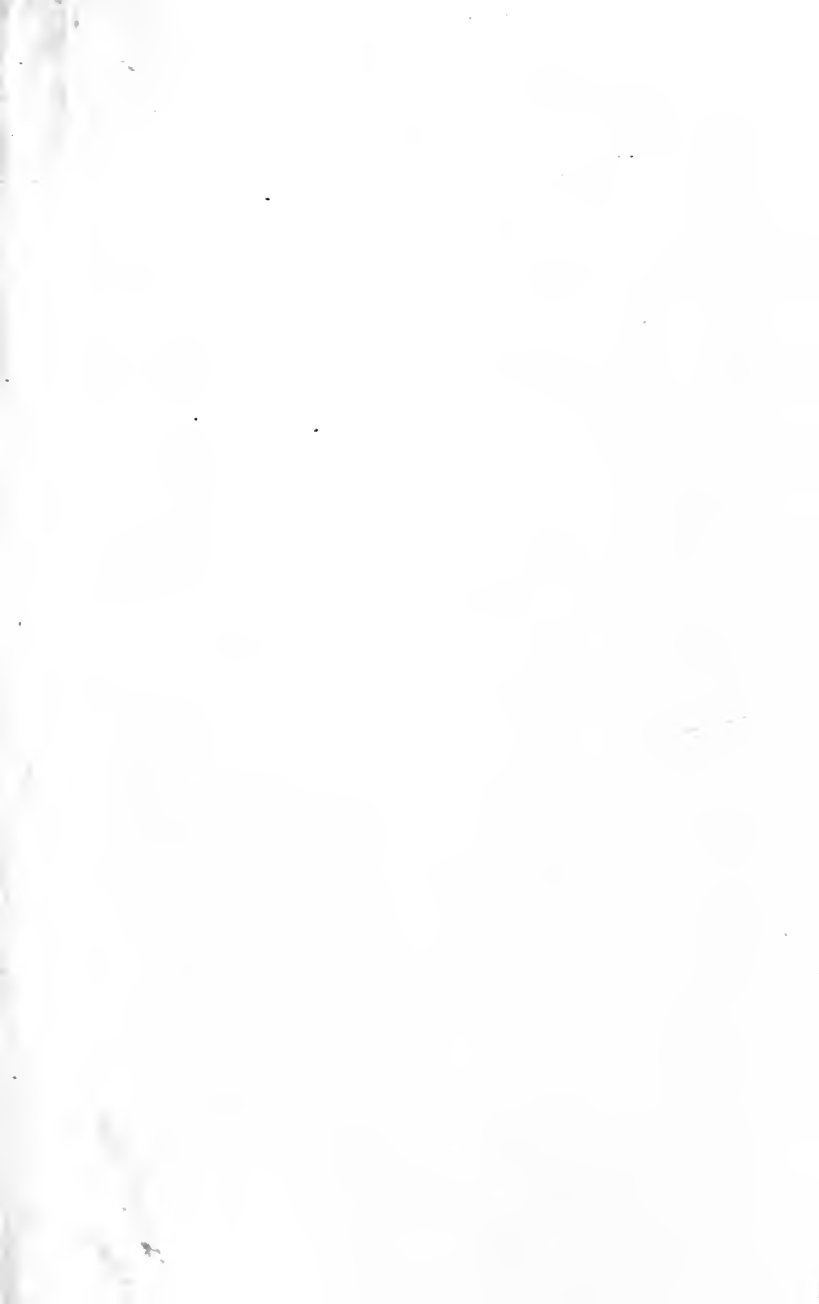
NOTE ON se, suus, &c.

Sē, suus are used (*not eum, eius*) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless *both* these conditions are satisfied, **sē, suus** must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not:
(a) *T. thanks me, for I helped him*, T. grātiās mīhi agit, nam **ei** subvēni;
(b) *T. loves me, and I forgive him*, T. mē amat, et **ei** ignosco; (c) *T. and his brother came*, T. et frāter **eius** vērērunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not: (a) *I know that he rejoices*; Scio **eum** gaudere; (b) *I said that his brother had come*, Dixi frātre**m eius** vērēsse.

III. In the following, *both* conditions are satisfied: (a) *He begs me to pardon him (i.e. himself)*, Orat ut **sibi** ignoscā; (b) *He asks whether you saw his brother*, Quāerit num frātre**m suum** vidēris.



B.B.W. Dec. 1st 28

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

**Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**

